

College Pliny and Vergil

Latin Text with Facing Vocabulary and
Commentary

Geoffrey Steadman

College Pliny and Vergil
Latin Text with Facing Vocabulary and Commentary

First Edition

© 2023 by Geoffrey Steadman

All rights reserved. Subject to the exception immediately following, this book may not be reproduced, in whole or in part, in any form (beyond that copying permitted by Sections 107 and 108 of the U.S. Copyright Law and except by reviewers for the public press), without written permission from the publisher.

The author has made an online version of this work available under a Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-Share Alike 3.0 License. The terms of the license can be accessed at creativecommons.org.

Accordingly, you are free to copy, alter, and distribute this work under the following conditions:

- (1) You must attribute the work to the author (but not in any way that suggests that the author endorses your alterations to the work).
- (2) You may not use this work for commercial purposes.
- (3) If you alter, transform, or build upon this work, you may distribute the resulting work only under the same or similar license as this one.

The Latin text for Pliny is in the Loeb Classical Library edited by W. Hutchinson in 1915.
The Latin text for Vergil is the Oxford Classical Text edited by J. B. Greenough in 1900.

Figure 1 by Nicholas Hartman (https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:2002_Rome_umbrella_pine_on_Palatine.jpg) under CC-BY 4.0

Figure 2 by MapMaster (https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Mt_Vesuvius_79_AD_eruption.svg) under CC-BY 3.0

Figure 3 by Mileniuscuro (https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Roman_Empire_-_Bythinia_et_Pontus_%28125_AD%29.svg) under CC-BY 4.0

Figure 4/6 by Thurs (https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Illustrerad_Verldshistoria_band_I_III_086.jpg) under Public Domain

Figure 5 by Robert C. Grabowski et al. (https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Cross-section_of_a_river_channel_and_its_valley.webp) under CC-BY 4.0

ISBN-13: 979-8-9874884-1-6

Published by Geoffrey Steadman
Cover Design: David Steadman

geoffreysteadman@gmail.com

Table of Contents

	Pages
Preface to the Series.....	v-vi
How to Use this Commentary.....	vii
Running Core Vocabulary.....	viii-xi
Introduction to Pliny's Letters.....	xii-xiii
Abbreviations.....	xvii

Selections from Pliny's *Epistulae* and Vergil's *Aeneid* in 70 Lessons

Lessons 1-32	Pliny's <i>Epistulae</i>	2-65
	Book 6.16 (Eruption of Vesuvius, Pliny the Elder)	2-19
	Book 6.20 (Eruption of Vesuvius, Pliny the Younger)	20-35
	Book 7.27 (Ghosts and Visions).....	36-51
	Book 10.37, 90 (to Trajan on Aqueducts)	52-55
	Book 10.5-7 (to Trajan on Citizenship)	56-61
	Book 6.4 and 6.7 (to his wife Calpurnia)	62-65
Lessons 33-70	Vergil's <i>Aeneid</i>	66-141
	Short Introduction to Vergil's <i>Aeneid</i>	66-67
	Book 1: lines 1-33, 88-107, 496-512.....	68-79
	Book 2: lines 40-56, 201-249.....	80-89
	Book 4: lines 74-89, 165-197, 305-361.....	90-107
	Book 6: lines 450-476, 788-800, 847-853.....	108-15
	Book 7: lines 46-58, 783-92, 803-817.....	116-21
	Book 11: lines 532-594.....	122-31
	Book 12: lines 791-6, 803-12, 818-828, 919-952.....	132-41
	Nouns, Pronouns, Adjectives	144-46
	Verb Synopses.....	147-52
	Uses of the Subjunctive.....	153-54
	Rhetorical Devices.....	155-56
	Alphabetized Core Vocabulary.....	157-60

Preface to the Series

This commentary includes all selected passages from Pliny the Younger's *Epistulae* and Vergil's *Aeneid* for the College Board's Advanced Placement course divided into 70 Lessons:

Pliny's *Epistulae*

Book 6.4 and 6.7 (to wife Calpurnia)
 Book 6.16 (Eruption of Vesuvius)
 Book 6.20 (Eruption of Vesuvius)
 Book 7.27 (Ghosts and Visions)
 Book 10.37, 90 (to Trajan, on Aqueducts)
 Book 10.5-7 (to Trajan, on Citizenship)

Vergil's *Aeneid*

Book 1: lines 1-33, 88-107, 496-512
 Book 2: lines 40-56, 201-249
 Book 4: lines 74-89, 165-197, 305-361
 Book 6: lines 450-476, 788-800, 847-853
 Book 7: lines 46-58, 783-92, 803-817
 Book 11: lines 532-594
 Book 12: lines 791-6, 803-12, 818-28, 919-52

Each lesson is two facing pages long. Each even page includes 10-15 lines of Latin text with all corresponding vocabulary and grammar notes below the Latin on the same page. The corresponding vocabulary contains all words occurring 3 or fewer times, arranged alphabetically in two columns. The grammatical notes are organized according to line numbers and likewise arranged in two columns. On the facing odd page there are running high frequency word lists (occurring 4 or more times), and information boxes which include literary, historical, grammatical, and word-building explanations.

To complement the corresponding vocabulary in each lesson, I have added a core running list of words occurring 4 or more times in the introduction and recommend that readers review this list before they read each lesson. An alphabetized list of the same core words is found in the glossary. Together, this book has been designed in such a way that, once readers have mastered the core vocabulary list, they will be able to rely solely on the Latin text and commentary and not need to turn a page or consult dictionaries as they read.

The grammatical notes are designed to help intermediate readers read the text, and so I have passed over literary and historical explanations in favor of short, concise, and frequent entries that focus on grammar and morphology. Detailed literary and historical explanations are included in information boxes on the facing page. Assuming that readers complete their initial study of Latin with varying levels of ability, I draw attention to all subjunctive and accusative-infinitive constructions, identify unusual verb forms and noun constructions, and in general explain aspects of the Latin that they should have encountered in their initial review.

One of the virtues of this commentary is that it eliminates time-consuming dictionary work. While there are occasions where a dictionary is necessary for developing a nuanced reading of the Latin, in most instances any advantage that may come from looking up a word is outweighed by the time and effort spent in the process.

As an alternative to dictionary work, I recommend that readers (1) review the running core word list (4 or more times) before they begin each lesson and continue to review the relevant core words daily until they are thoroughly learned. Then, readers should (2) review and master the Word-Building information boxes throughout the commentary. Many of the remaining, less frequent words can be learned in context by reading and rereading the lessons. Altogether, I am confident that readers who follow this regimen will learn the vocabulary more efficiently and develop fluency more quickly than with traditional dictionary work.

I wish to thank Matthew Horrell and Alan Fleming for numerous improvements throughout the commentary.

If you would like to suggest changes or download a free pdf copy of this commentary and ancillaries, please see the website below. All criticisms are welcome, and I would be very grateful for your help.

Geoffrey Steadman, Ph.D.
geoffreysteadman@gmail.com
<http://www.geoffreysteadman.com>

How to Use this Commentary

1. Skim and familiarize yourself with the introduction, glossary, and all information boxes.

Familiarity with the book will help relieve anxiety and enhance your enjoyment as you read.

2. Download free pdf copies of the commentary, translation sheets, and useful ancillaries.

The translation sheets correspond to the 70 lessons in this book and include the formatted text and lined spaces for you to take notes or scan lines as you read and review. You are encouraged to download and print out these pages as needed. The pdf of the book offers an accessible alternative to the paperback edition. The website is www.geoffreysteadman.com.

3. Review and master the core vocabulary in the shaded box before you read each lesson.

High frequency core words that occur 4 or more times are found in only three places in the commentary: (1) in a running list in the introduction, (2) in an alphabetized list in the glossary, and (3) in a shaded box in the lesson where the core word first occurs. For each lesson, review the core words in the shaded box before you read the Latin text. Ideally, you should use digital flashcards and review the core words daily before your read until they are mastered.

All non-core words (3 or fewer times) are included in two columns below the Latin text in each lesson. If you have to look up a Latin word and it is not found in the non-core list, then the word is either a new core word in the shaded box or a previously reviewed core word that you must now look up in the alphabetized vocabulary list in the glossary.

4. Review the titles of the information boxes before you read each lesson.

Initial information boxes, for example, usually include literary and historical context necessary to understand the lesson reading. Skimming the titles will let you know whether you will want to read the information boxes before you read the Latin reading or after you read the Latin.

5. Review Word-Building information boxes thoroughly.

These boxes group high and low frequency words by their stems (e.g. compound verbs, cognates) or semantic relationship (e.g. synonyms) to encourage mastery beyond the core vocabulary list.

6. Develop the habit of making educated guesses as you read the Latin.

As you read, make an educated guess before you consult the vocabulary entries or grammar notes below the text. If you guess correctly, the commentary will confirm your knowledge of the Latin. If you guess incorrectly, you will become more aware of your weaknesses and more likely to remember the correct answer when you review the passage later.

7. After you complete a lesson, read through any unread information boxes.

8. Repetition works: Reread a lesson after it is completed (or just before reading a new lesson).

Resist the temptation to shut down immediately and rush off to another task. The extra 5 minutes of repetition will strengthen your ability to recognize vocabulary and forms quickly, bolster your confidence, and most importantly offer you the pleasure of reading that is often missed during the initial reading. Since the Latin in the lesson is still fresh in your mind, the repetition will take just a few extra minutes but will make future review much, much easier. Repetition works.

9. Have fun.

Through the miracle of writing, you are reading the same words arranged in the same order and in the same rhythm as they were composed by another human being two millennia ago in a different language and in a different part of the world. It is only through your effort that Pliny and Vergil can speak to you today. Approach each reading with joy and wonder, and you will be rewarded.

Running Core Vocabulary (4 or more times)

The following list includes all 334 words in the Pliny and Vergil selections that occur four or more times arranged in a running vocabulary list. The number on the left of the dictionary entry indicates the **lesson** in which the word first appears. The number on the end of the entry indicates how many times the word occurs in the commentary. These same dictionary entries are found in an alphabetized list in the glossary.

- 1 **ā, ab, abs:** from, away from, by (*abl.*), 21
 1 **agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum:** drive, lead, do; give, 10
 1 **aut:** or; **aut...aut:** either...or, 29
 1 **avunculus, -ī m.:** uncle, 8
 1 **C.:** G(aius), 9
 1 **cāsus, -ūs m.:** misfortune; chance, 6
 1 **condō, -ere, condidī, -ditum:** found; hide, 7
 1 **deus, -ī m.:** god, 12
 1 **dō, dare, dedī, datum:** give; grant, 18
 1 **enim:** for, indeed, 16
 1 **equidem:** indeed, I for my part, 6
 1 **et:** and; also, even, too, 186
 1 **etiam:** also, even, 20
 1 **faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum:** do, make, 9
 1 **hic, haec, hoc:** this, these, 54
 1 **in:** in, on, among (*abl.*); into, against (*acc.*), 68
 1 **ipse, -a, -um:** himself, herself, itself; very, 23
 1 **is, ea, id:** he, she, it, they; this, that, these, those, 31
 1 **legō, -ere, lēgī, lectum:** read; pick out, 7
 1 **liber, -brī m.:** book; bark, 4
 1 **maneō, -ēre, mānsī:** stay, remain, 5
 1 **meus, -a, -um:** my (own), mine, 27
 1 **mors, -rtis f.:** death, 7
 1 **multus, -a, -um:** much, many, 16
 1 **nam:** for; indeed, truly, 11
 1 **opus, -eris n.:** work, project; *opus est*, is a need, 13
 1 **petō, -ere, -īvi:** seek, ask, head for, 11
 1 **Plīnius, -ī m.:** Plinius, Pliny, 10
 1 **populus, -ī m.:** people, 4
 1 **possum, posse, potuī:** be able, can, 16
 1 **pulcher, -chra, -chrum:** beautiful, 5
 1 **putō (1):** think, 4
 1 **quasi:** as if, 8
 1 **quī, quae, quod (quis?quid?):** who, which, what, that, 138
 1 **salutō, s. (1):** greet, 5
 1 **scribō, -ere, scripsī, scriptum:** write, 13
 1 **sī:** if, 26
 1 **sum, esse, fuī, futūrum:** be, 96
 1 **suus, -a, -um:** his, her, its, their own, 17
 1 **tamen:** however, nevertheless, 15
 1 **terra, -ae f.:** land, ground, earth, 19
 1 **tū, tuī, tibi, tē, tē:** you, 47
 1 **tuus, -a, -um:** your(s), your own, 26
 1 **urbs, urbis f.:** city, 15
 1 **ut:** that, so that; how; as (+ indic.), 38
 1 **uterque, utraque, utrumque:** each (of two), 4
 1 **vērō:** in truth, actually, in fact, 5
 1 **vērus, -a, -um:** true, real, 10
 1 **videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum:** see, 23
 2 **alius, -a, -ud :** other, another, else, 22
 2 **crēdō, -ere, -didī:** believe, trust (dat.), 13
 2 **ē, ex:** out of, from (*abl.*), 21
 2 **iaceō, -ēre, iacuī:** lie (down), 4
 2 **ille, illa, illud:** that, those, 54
 2 **imperium, -ī n.:** power, command, 5
 2 **incertus, -a, -um:** uncertain, unsure, unreliable, 5
 2 **locus, -ī m. (pl. locī, loca):** place, 9
 2 **magis:** more, rather, 10
 2 **māter, mātris f.:** mother, 8
 2 **maximē:** very greatly, especially, 4
 2 **Misēnum, -ī:** Misenum, 6
 2 **mōns, montis m.:** mountain, 6
 2 **mox:** soon, 6
 2 **nōn:** not, 37
 2 **nūbēs, -is f.:** cloud, 9
 2 **poscō, -ere, poposcī:** ask, request, demand, 4
 2 **-que:** and, 185
 2 **regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum:** rule, lead, 4
 2 **vel, -ve:** or, and even; **vel...vel,** either...or, 12
 3 **accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum:** receive, 6
 3 **altus, -a, -um:** high, tall; deep; the sea (the deep), 18
 3 **cinis, cineris m.:** ashes, 6
 3 **domus, -ūs f.:** house(hold), home, 14
 3 **ego, meī, mihi, mē, mē:** I, 62
 3 **ēgredior, -ī, -gressus sum:** go out, disembark, 4
 3 **ēripiō, -ere, -uī:** rescue, snatch from, 4
 3 **fuga, -ae f. :** flight; haste, 6

- 3 **iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum**: order, 11
 3 **longus, -a, -um**: long, distant; far, 13
 3 **magnus, -a, -um**: great, large, 17
 3 **nāvis, -is f.**: ship, 4
 3 **nec**: nor, and not; **nec...nec**, neither...nor, 20
 3 **nisī**: if not, unless, 4
 3 **nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtum**: learn; *pf.* know, 5
 3 **ōrō (1)**: plead, beg; pray for, 6
 3 **perīculum, -ī n.**: danger, risk, 10
 3 **quia**: because, 6
 3 **respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -nsum**: answer, 4
 3 **sē, suī, sibi (sēsē)**: him-, her-, it-, themselves, 22
 3 **solvō, -ere, -vī, solūtum**: loosen; set sail, break up, 4
 3 **spīritus, -ūs m.**: breath, exhalation, spirit, 4
 3 **tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum**: raise; destroy, 9
 3 **ūllus, -a, -um**: any, any one, 5
 3 **veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum**: come, go, 14
 3 **vīncō, -ere, vīcī, victum**: conquer, 6
 3 **vir, -ī m.**: man, husband, 12
 3 **volō, velle, voluī**: want, wish, be willing, 7
 4 **an**: or (in questions), 6
 4 **animus, -ī m.**: mind; spirit, courage; anger, 10
 4 **cursus, -ūs m.**: course, running; haste, 6
 4 **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum**: carry, bring; endure, 10
 4 **figūra, -ae f.**: figure, shape, form, 5
 4 **fortis, -e**: strong, brave, 7
 4 **fugiō, -ere, fūgī**: flee, escape, 9
 4 **iam**: now, already, 34
 4 **ignis, -is m.**: fire; lightning, 8
 4 **inquam, inquis, inquit**: say, 4
 4 **ita**: so, thus, 6
 4 **lītus, -oris n.**: shore, coast, beach, 8
 4 **malus, -a, -um**: bad, wicked, 6
 4 **metus, -ūs m.**: dread, fear, 10
 4 **oculus, ī m.**: eye, 14
 4 **omnis, -e**: all, every, whole, 24
 4 **ōra, -ae f.**: shore, coast, border, 4
 4 **retrō**: back, backward, 1
 4 **sed**: but, 19
 4 **tantus, -a, -um**: so great, so much, 16
 4 **teneō, -ēre, -uī, -tum**: hold, 10
 4 **ūnus, -a, -um**: one, alone; **ūnā**, together, 8
 4 **vertō, -ere, vētī, versum**: turn; change, 6
 5 **certus, -a, -um**: sure, reliable, 5
 5 **cum**: with; when, since, although, 23
 5 **ibi**: there, in that place, 5
 5 **mare, -is n.**: sea, 8
 5 **medius, -a, -um**: middle of, middle, 15
 5 **paulus, -a, -um**: little, small; *adv.* -um, 4
 5 **proximus, -a, -um**: nearest, very close, 4
 5 **quamquam**: although, 7
 5 **residō, -ere, -sēdī**: sit back, settle, 5
 5 **similis, -e**: like, similar, (*dat., gen.*), 6
 5 **timor, -ōris m.**: fear, dread, 6
 5 **tum, tunc**: then, at that time, 16
 6 **ardeō, -ēre, arsī, arsum**: burn, be eager, 7
 6 **audiō, -īre, -ivī, -ītum**: hear, listen to, 11
 6 **corpus, -oris n.**: body, 14
 6 **dēserō, -ere, -ruī, -rtum**: desert, abandon, 6
 6 **excitō (1)**: wake up, rouse up, raise, 4
 6 **flamma, -ae f.**: flame, 6
 6 **gravis, -e**: heavy, serious, severe, 5
 6 **lātus, -a, -um**: wide, 5
 6 **līmen, -inis n.**: threshold, doorway, 4
 6 **nox, noctis f.**: night, 14
 6 **per**: through, over, 36
 6 **quidem**: indeed, certainly, 16
 6 **quiescō, -ere, -ēvī, -ētum**: rest, 5
 6 **relinquō, -ere, -liqūī, -lictum**: leave, abandon, 7
 6 **somnus, -ī m.**: sleep, 5
 7 **abeō, -īre, -īī, itum**: go away, 4
 7 **adversus, -a, -um**: facing, opposing, unfavorable;
 against + acc., 5
 7 **aperiō, -īre, -uī, apertum**: open, 4
 7 **caput, -itis n.**: head, 9
 7 **diēs, diēī m./f.**: day(light), 14
 7 **dīvus, -a, -um (dīus)**: divine; god(dess); sky, 9
 7 **nunc**: now, 16
 7 **referō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum**: report; say, 8
 7 **rūrsus**: again, 10
 7 **sēdēs, -is f.**: seat, home, settlement, foundation, 5
 7 **sub**: under, 12
 7 **surgō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum**: rise, surge, 5
 7 **tēctum, -ī n.**: roof, shelter; house, 9
 7 **tremor, -ōris m.**: tremor, shaking, 4
 8 **adhūc**: still, yet, so far, 8
 8 **aqua, -ae f.**: water, 6
 8 **atque**: and, 16
 8 **lūmen, -inis n.**: light, lamp; *pl.* eyes, 9
 8 **novus, -a, -um**: new, recent; **novissimum**, last, 6

- 8 **statim**: immediately, 4
 8 **super**: above, over, on top; upon (*acc.*), 5
 9 **ad**: to, toward, at, near, about (*acc.*), 24
 9 **amīcus, -ī**: friend, 4
 9 **dē**: (down) from, about, concerning, 16
 9 **epistula, -ae f.**: letter, 5
 9 **nihil**: nothing, 7
 9 **sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum**: know (how), 5
 9 **ubi**: where, when, 10
 9 **valeō, -ēre, -uī**: fare well, be strong, 6
 10 **horreō, -ēre, -uī**: shudder, stand on end, bristle, 4
 10 **incipiō, -ere, incēpī, inceptum**: begin, take on, 4
 10 **minor, minus**: smaller, less, 5
 10 **moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum**: move, motivate, 5
 10 **sōlus, -a, -um**: alone, only, sole, lonely, 10
 11 **annus, -ī m.**: year, 8
 11 **coepī, coepisse, coeptum**: begin, 4
 11 **corripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptum**: snatch (up), 5
 11 **dēbeō, -ēre, dēbuī**: ought, owe, 5
 11 **intendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum**: stretch out, aim, 4
 11 **vocō (1)**: call, 6
 12 **ac**: and, 5
 12 **īdem, eadem, idem**: same, 10
 12 **ingēns, -entis**: huge, immense, 10
 12 **nē**: lest, that not, 15
 12 **pars, -tis f.**: part, side, direction; floor, 7
 12 **patior, -ī, passus sum**: suffer, endure; allow, 7
 12 **premō, -ere, pressī, -sum**: press, repress/hide, 4
 12 **prīmus, -a, -um**: first; leading, as leader, 20
 12 **sequor, -ī, secūtus sum**: follow, pursue, 8
 12 **vestigium, -ī n.**: footprint, tracks, 4
 13 **āter, ātra, ātrum**: dark, black, 5
 13 **nōs, nōbis, nōs, nōbis**: we, 8
 13 **noster, -ra, -rum**: our (own), ours, 7
 13 **torqueō, -ēre, torsi, tortum**: twist; torture, 4
 14 **causa, -ae f.**: reason, cause; for the sake of (*gen.*), 9
 14 **contrā**: opposite, facing (*acc.*), 4
 14 **dum**: while, as long as, until, 6
 14 **effundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum**: pour/spread out, 4
 14 **manus, -ūs f.**: hand, 14
 14 **moror, -ārī, -ātus sum**: delay, linger, 5
 14 **post**: after, behind (*acc.*), 4
 14 **sternō, -ere, strāvī, strātum**: lay (low), 4
 14 **tergum, -ī n.**: back (of body), rear; hide, 4
 15 **coniūnx, -iugis m./f.**: spouse, husband, wife, 7
 15 **fēmina, -ae f.**: woman, 4
 15 **fiŋō, -ere, fiŋxī, fictum**: make up, imagine, 6
 15 **īnfāns, -ntis m./f.**: infant, 4
 15 **parēns, -entis m/f**: parent, 4
 15 **quālis, -e**: which sort, just as, 7
 15 **vōx, vocis f.**: voice, word, 9
 16 **gemitus, -ūs m.**: groan, sob, lament, 4
 16 **miser, -era, -rum**: miserable, wretched, 6
 16 **mūtō (1)**: change, mutate, 4
 16 **tandem**: finally, at length, pray, 4
 17 **dignus, -a, -um**: worthy, worthy of (*abl.*), 5
 17 **suspendō, -ere, -pendī, -pensum**: hang up, 5
 18 **comes, -itis m/f**: comrade, companion, 4
 18 **dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum**: say, speak, tell, 8
 18 **dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum**: lead, draw, 7
 18 **eō, īre, nī, itum**: go, come, 7
 18 **gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum**: carry on, wear, wage, 6
 18 **habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum**: have, hold; consider, 5
 18 **imāgō, -inis f.**: image, ghost, 5
 18 **summus, -a, -um**: top of, highest, 8
 19 **capillus, -ī m.**: hair, 6
 19 **ferrum, -ī n.**: iron; sword, 5
 19 **implicō, -āre, -uī, -itum**: enfold, entwine, 4
 19 **narrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**: narrate, 4
 19 **vinculum, -ī n.**: chain, 5
 20 **quoque**: also, 6
 20 **tōtus, -a, -um**: total, entire, whole, 6
 21 **auris, -is f.**: ear, 4
 21 **mēns, mentis f.**: mind; intent, purpose, 4
 22 **stō, -āre, steti, statum**: stand, stop, 8
 23 **libertus, -ī m.**: freedman, 4
 23 **vertex, -icis m.**: head, peak, top, 4
 24 **puer, -ī m.**: boy, child, 4
 25 **rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**: ask, question, 5
 26 **cīvītās, -ātis f.**: city-state; citizenship, 7
 26 **dominus, -ī m.**: master, sir, 5
 26 **Imperātor, -ōris m.**: Emperor; commander, 4
 26 **mittō, -ere, misi, missum**: send, 4
 26 **Traianus, -ī m.**: Trajan, 5
 27 **genus, -eris n.**: birth, lineage; people, kind, 4
 28 **peregrīnus, -ī m.**: foreigner, non-citizen, 4
 28 **Rōmānus, -a, -um**: Roman, 9
 29 **ante**: before, in front of (*acc.*), 6
 29 **inter**: between, among (*acc.*), 9
 29 **prō**: before; for, in behalf of (*abl.*), 8

- 31 **cūra, -ae f.**: care, concern, anxiety, worry, 5
 31 **vīs, vīs f.**: force, power; *pl.* **vīrēs**, strength, 5
 32 **accendō, -ere, -ī, ēnsum**: kindle, enflame, enrage, 4
 32 **sermō, -mōnis m.**: conversation, talk, 4
 34 **arma, -ōrum n.**: arms; weapons; tools, 10
 34 **bellum, -ī n.**: war, 9
 34 **fātum, -ī n.**: fate, 11
 34 **īra, -ae f.**: anger, rage; passion, 6
 34 **Ītalia, -ae f.**: Italy, 5
 34 **Iūnō, Iūnōnis f.**: Juno, 4
 34 **Latium, -ī n.**: Latium, 6
 34 **moenia, -ium n.**: walls; city-walls, 7
 34 **pater, -tris m.**: father; ancestor, 6
 34 **rēgīna, -ae f.**: queen, 4
 34 **saevus, -a, -um**: savage, fierce, 6
 34 **tot**: so many, 6
 34 **Troia, ae f.**: Troy, 7
 34 **volvō, -ere, -ī, volūtum**: revolve, roll, churn, 4
 35 **arx, arcis f.**: citadel, (fortified) hilltop, 6
 35 **dea, -ae f.**: goddess, 5
 35 **gēns, gentis f.**: people, clan, 6
 35 **hīc**: here, in this place, 4
 35 **hinc**: hence, from this place, 4
 35 **rēgnum, -ī n.**: kingdom, kingship, rule, 7
 35 **rēx, rēgis m.**: king, 5
 35 **sanguis, -inis m.**: blood, 7
 35 **sic**: thus, so, in this way, 6
 35 **tendō, -ere, -dī, tentum**: stretch; extend, strive, 6
 35 **Troiānus, -a, -um**: Trojan, 5
 36 **aequor, -oris n.**: sea, the level (sea), 4
 36 **cārus, -a, -um**: dear, 5
 36 **circum**: around, about (*acc.*), 5
 36 **Danaus, -a, -um**: Danaan, Greek, 4
 37 **Aenēās, -ae, acc. ān m.**: Aeneas, 10
 37 **caelum, -ī n.**: sky, 6
 37 **dexter, -tra, -trum**: right (hand), 6
 37 **Ō**: O! oh! ah!, 6
 37 **ōs, ōris n.**: mouth; face, 10
 37 **sīdus, -eris n.**: star, constellation, 10
 37 **tālis, -e**: such, 9
 37 **tēlum, -ī n.**: spear, arrow, projectile, 8
 37 **Teucus, -a, -um**: Teucrian, Trojan, 8
 37 **unda, -ae f.**: wave, 6
 38 **caterva, -ae f.**: group, retinue, band, troop, 5
 38 **Dīdō, -ōnis f.**: Dido, 8
 38 **flūctus, -ūs m.**: wave, 5
 38 **pectus, -oris n.**: chest, breast; heart, 4
 38 **pendeō, -ēre, pependī**: hang, hang down, 4
 38 **strīdēns, -ntis**: whirring, hissing, screeching, 4
 38 **umerus, -ī m.**: shoulder, 6
 39 **lēx, lēgis f.**: law, decree, 4
 39 **sors, sortis f.**: lot, luck, 4
 40 **hasta, -ae f.**: spear, 5
 40 **Lāocoōn m.** Grk. acc. **-onta**: Laocoon, 4
 40 **mūrus, ī m.**: wall, 5
 41 **arvum, -ī n.**: field, arable/cultivated field, 5
 43 **at, ast**: but; at least, 4
 43 **pēs, pedis m.**: foot, 5
 43 **sacer, -cra, -crum**: sacred, holy; sacrifice, rite, 4
 44 **īnfēlix, -īcis**: unlucky, unfortunate, 4
 45 **amor, -ōris m.**: love, 10
 45 **capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum**: take, seize, catch, 5
 46 **fāma, -ae f.**: fame, rumor, reputation, 4
 46 **neque**: nor, and not: **neque...neque**, neither...nor, 4
 46 **nōmen, -inis n.**: name, 5
 46 **tellūs, -ūris f.**: land, earth (~terra), 4
 47 **dulcis, -e**: sweet, pleasant, 4
 47 **extrēmus, -a, -um**: farthest, outermost, 4
 47 **umbra, -ae f.**: shade, shadow; ghost, 5
 50 **lacrima, -ae f.**: tear, 4
 51 **Iuppiter, Iovis m.**: Jupiter, 4
 54 **vulnus (volnus), -eris n.**: wound, 4
 55 **nemus, -oris n.**: wood, forest, grove, 4
 58 **Turnus, -ī m.**: Turnus, 5
 59 **pugna, -ae f.**: fight, 4
 59 **virgō, virginis f.**: maiden, unmarried woman, 6
 60 **Camilla, -ae f.**: Camilla, 4

A Short Introduction to Pliny's *Epistulae*

Who is Pliny the Younger (AD 61 - 113)?

- AD 61 born in Novum Comum in northern Italy
- while young, his father Lucius Caecilius Cilo dies
- 79 witnesses eruption of Mt. Vesuvius with mother, adopted in uncle's will
- 81 Tribunus Militum (military staff) in Syria for 6 months
- 88/89 Quaestor, attached to Emperor's staff, becomes senator
- 91/93 Tribune of the People, Praetor
- 94-96 Prefect of the the Military Treasury
- 98-100 Prefect of the the Treasury of Saturn (general treasury)
- 100 Consul Suffectus (appointed after the death of consul in office)
- 111-13 Imperial governor of Bithynia and Pontus, dies

Our author was born **Gaius Caecilius** to **Lucius Caecilius Clio** and mother **Plinia Marcella** in the equestrian class. His father died when he was young, and so, when his maternal uncle adopted **Gaius Caecilius** posthumously in his will in 79 (a common practice to ensure the transfer of an inheritance), Gaius, according to tradition, took his uncle's name "Gaius Plinius Secundus" and made his own nomen **Caecilius** a cognomen that was inserted after the nomen Plinius: **Gaius Plinius Caecilius Secundus**. Today, we use the names **Pliny the Younger** and **Pliny the Elder** to distinguish the two men.

Pliny was an orator in Rome who focused on inheritance law. His talent in the lawcourts allowed him to gain senatorial rank and rise through many political offices under Domitian, Nerva, and Trajan.

We assume that Pliny died while governor around AD 113, since we have no letters after this time.

Who is Pliny the Elder (23/4 - 79)? Who is Plinia Marcella?

- AD 23/4 born in Novum Comum in northern Italy, equestrian class
- 46-56? enters army and rises to Military Tribune near Germania
- 56-69 practices law in Rome under Nero and writes numerous works
- 69-79 procuratorships under Vespasian (various: Gallia, Hispania, Africa, etc.)
- 79 Commander of the Imperial Fleet at Misenum, dies during the eruption

Pliny the Elder, maternal uncle to the author of these letters, was born **Gaius Plinius Secundus** to **Gaius Plinius Celer** and **Marcella** in the equestrian class. He chose not to adopt his father's cognomen and took **Secundus** instead. He served in the army near Germania through his 20s, where he formed political connections that would serve him later in life. While Nero was emperor (58-68), Pliny turned to a private law practice in Rome and wrote numerous works. Under the emperor Vespasian (AD 69-79), Pliny resumed public service and was offered various senior positions as procurator in Gallia, Hispania, and possibly Africa. He was Commander of the Imperial Fleet at Misenum when Mt. Vesuvius erupted.

Most of Pliny's writings—including works on military strategies, rhetoric, and *Germania*—are lost, but his *Naturalis Historia*, "Natural History," a vast work about the natural world that was published in part in AD 77 and in part after his death, survives. Pliny's work inspired the modern encyclopedia.

Little unfortunately is known about **Plinia Marcella**, the Elder's sister and Younger's mother, apart from her depiction in the letters. Note that her name includes both her father's and her mother's nomen.

Where do Pliny's *Epistulae* fit in the Imperial Period?

BC 31-AD 476 Imperial Period: Emperor controls army, oversees government with a senate, officials

BC 27-AD 14 Caesar Augustus, First Emperor

AD 14-37 Tiberius

37-41 Caligula

41-54 Claudius

54-68 Nero

68-69 Year of Four Emperors: Galba, Otho, Vitellius, and Vespasian

69-79 Vespasian

79-81 Titus, Vespasian's son

79 MOUNT VESUVIUS ERUPTS

81-96 Domitian, Vespasian's son

96-98 Nerva

98-117 Trajan

After the fall of the Roman Republic (509-31 BC), **Caesar Augustus** consolidated the loyalty of all legions and all real decision-making under himself as *Imperator*, "Commander" or more commonly "Emperor." Thus began the **Julio-Claudian dynasty**, as successive emperors were selected from Romans joined by kinship or by marriage to the same family of Julii and Claudiani. After the **Year of the Four Emperors**, the Roman general Vespasian (Titus Flavius Vespasianus) seized power, and the **Flavian Dynasty** began. He was succeeded by his sons Titus and Domitian respectively. After Domitian was assassinated in 96, Nerva ruled briefly and wisely adopted the general Trajan as his successor. Nerva and Trajan were the first two of what is now called the **Five Good Emperors**.

Pliny the Younger (AD 61-113) flourished during the reigns of Domitian, Nerva, and Trajan.

When do Pliny's *Epistulae* take place? When were they published?

<u>Book #</u>	<u>Date of events</u>	<u>Publication date</u>
1	96-98	103/104
2	97-100	103/104
3	101-3/4	105
4	104-5	107
5	105-6	107
6	106-7	107
7	end of 107	108/9
8	107-8	109-10
9	106-108	109-10
10	varia, 110-113	posthumously?—Pliny's correspondence as governor with Trajan

Above is A.N. Sherwin-White's 1966 reconstruction for the dating of Pliny's *Letters*. There continue to be disagreements about the dating, but many agree that (a) Pliny himself arranged and published most of the letters during his lifetime and (b) they were published sequentially in ten books.

Books 1-9 include letters from ca. 96 to 108, while Book 10 is devoted to Pliny's letters with Trajan—both during Pliny's governorship in Bithynia and Pontus (111-13) and much earlier.

We can estimate that Pliny's two letters to Tacitus about Vesuvius (6.16, 6.20) and two love letters to Calpurnia (6.4, 6.7) were published in **107** (almost 30 years after the eruption!). The letter on ghosts (7.27) was published in **108/9**. The letters to Trajan about citizenship (10.5-7) were written in **98** and about aqueducts (10.37, 10.90) in **111-13** but were likely published after his presumed death in **113**.

Abbreviations

abs.	absolute	imper.	imperative	pf.	perfect
acc.	accusative	impers.	impersonal	pfw	place from which
act.	active	impf.	imperfect	plpf.	pluperfect
adj.	adjective	ind.	indirect	pred.	predicate
adv.	adverb	indic.	indicative	pres.	present
app.	appositive	inf.	infinitive	PPP	perfect passive pple.
comp.	comparative	inter.	interrogative	pple.	participle
dat.	dative	l. (ll.)	line (lines)	ptw	place to which
dep.	deponent	m.	masculine	s. sg.	singular
dir.	direct	n.	neuter	seq.	sequence
disc.	discourse	nom.	nominative	subj.	subject, subjunctive
f.	feminine	obj.	object	superl.	superlative
fut.	future	p. pl.	plural	voc.	vocative
gen.	genitive	pass	passive		
1s, 2s, 3s	1 st , 2 nd , 3 rd person singular		1p, 2p, 3p	1 st , 2 nd , 3 rd person plural	

Citing Pliny's *Epistulae*: Pliny's *Epistulae* or *Letters* consists of 10 books of varying length. Since a Roman *liber*, "book," is the length of a single scroll, each book is equivalent of a long chapter today. Each letter is identified by the book number and letter number. And so, 6.4 refers to the 4th letter in Book 6 and 10.4 refers to the 4th letter in Book 10. A reader can pick up any Latin edition or translation and use this system to find the same letter. Latin editions—including this book—also include uniform section numbers embedded in each letter for greater accuracy in citation: 6.4.2, therefore, refers to Book 6, letter 4, section 2. English translations, however, often do not include section numbers.

When citing a passage in the *Epistulae*, it is common to include the book as a Roman or Arabic numeral, the letter as an Arabic numeral, and, if necessary, the section as a Arabic number: e.g. VI.4.2 or 6.4.2. If you cite a passage over multiple sections, add a hyphen: e.g. 6.4.2-4. Finally, if it is unclear whether you are referring to Pliny's *Epistulae* or other works, add the title in italics before the book number: e.g. *Epistulae* 6.4 or *Ep.* 6.4.

Citing Vergil's *Aeneid*: The *Aeneid* consists of 9,896 lines of epic verse (dactylic hexameter) divided among 12 books that vary between 705 and 952 lines each. The 12 books of the *Aeneid*, therefore, are equivalent to 12 long chapters in a single modern book. All of the selections in this commentary come from Books 1, 2, 4, 6, 7, 11, and 12.

These 12 books do not have titles. Instead, when we refer to a specific book in the *Aeneid*, we capitalize the word "book" and add the number as a Roman or Arabic numeral: Book III or Book 3.

When citing a passage in the *Aeneid*, include the book as a Roman or Arabic numeral and the line number as an Arabic numeral: e.g. II.42 or 2.42. If you cite an extended passage, add a hyphen: 2.42-49. If it is unclear that you are referring to the *Aeneid* or other works, add the title in italics before the book number: e.g. *Aeneid* 2.42-49.

Finally, when you include an accurate English translation, it is common to include the translation in quotation marks and immediately follow the translation with the original Latin and citation in parentheses. A comma separates the Latin text from the book and line number. If the Latin is more than three words, often you may include the first and last Latin word and use ellipses (...) in between:

The first words of the epic are "I sing of arms and a man" (*Arma virumque cano*, 1.1).

Aeolus "sits on the high citadel, holding his scepter" (*celsā...tenēns*, 1.55-6).

There is properly no history, only biography.

- Ralph Waldo Emerson

To make the ancients speak, we must feed them with our own blood.

- von Wilamowitz-Moellendorff

C. Plīnius Tacitō suō s.

1

Petis ut tibi avunculī meī exitum scrībam, quō vērius trādere posterīs possīs. Grātiās agō; nam videō mortī eius, sī celebrētur ā tē, immortalē glōriam esse prōpositam. 2. Quamvīs enim pulcherrimārum clāde terrārum, ut populī ut urbēs memorābilī cāsū, quasi semper vīctūrus occiderit, quamvīs ipse plūrima opera et mānsūra condiderit, multum tamen perpetuitātī eius scrīptōrum tuōrum aeternitās addet. 3. Equidem beātōs putō, quibus deōrum mūnere datum est aut facere scrībenda aut scrībere legenda, beātissimōs vērō quibus utrumque. Hōrum in numerō avunculus meus et suīs librīs et tuīs erit. Quō libentius suscipiō, dēposcō etiam quod iniungis. 10

addō, -ere, -didī, -ditum: add, give in addition, 2

aeternitās, -tātis f.: eternity

beātus, -a, -um: blessed, happy, 3

celebrō (1): celebrate, visit frequently

clādes, -is f.: disaster, destruction, loss

dēposcō, -ere, poposcī: ask, request, demand

exitus, -ūs m.: exit, destruction, death; result, 3

glōria, -ae f.: glory, fame

grātia, -ae f.: thanks, gratitude, favor, 3

immortālis, -e: immortal

iniungō, -ere, -xī, -ctum: enjoin, impose, join on

libenter: gladly, willingly (*comp.* libentius)

memorābilis, -e: memorable, remarkable

mūnus, -eris n.: gift, duty; function

numerus, -ī m.: number

occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cāsū m.: fall, die, perish, 3

perpetuitās, -tātis f.: perpetuity

plūrimus, -a, -um: very many, most, 2

posterus, -a, -um: following, next, 2

prōpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum: propose, 2

quamvīs: although, as much as you wish, 2

semper: always, forever

suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī: undertake, take up, 2

Tacitus, -ī m.: Tacitus, 2

trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum: hand over

vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctum: live, 3

1 **C. Plīnius Tacitō suō s(alutat):** *Gaius Plinius (gives greetings) to his Tacitus;* letters usually begin with a nom. and dat. ind. object. The verb ‘salutat’ is often abbreviated.

2 **ut...scrībam:** *that I...;* ind. command with 1s pres. subj. governed by 2s petō, ‘ask’ or ‘seek’
tibi: *to..., for...;* dat. of ind. obj. or interest
quō...possīs: *so that more truly...you may...;* purpose clause with 2s pres. subj. possum; quō (=ut eō, ‘so that by this’) often replaces ut in a purpose clause containing a comparative (adv.)
posterīs: *to posterity;* i.e. the future; dat. i.o.

3 **Grātiās agō:** *I give thanks;* a common idiom
mortī eius immortalē glōriam esse prōpositam: *that...;* ind. disc. with glōriam as acc. subject with pf. pass. inf. prōpōnō
mortī eius: *for...;* dat. of interest or ind. obj.; eius, ‘his,’ is a gen. sg. of pronoun is, ea, id
sī celebrētur ā tē: *if he is...;* pres. pass. subj. of subordinate verb in ind. disc.

4 **Quamvīs...occiderit:** *although he fell...;* concessive clause with pf. subj. occidō
(in) clāde terrārum pulcherrimārum ut populī (occidērunt) ut urbēs (occidērunt):

just as...(and) just as...; ut introduces a clause of comparison: supply the missing verb

5 **(in) memorābilī cāsū:** abl. place where with an i-stem 3rd decl. adj.

quasi...vīctūrus: *as if going to live forever;* conditional clause of comparison; fut. pple vīvō
(et) quamvīs...condiderit: *and although...;* 2nd concessive clause with pf. subj. condō (cum + do = ‘put together’); translate as pf.

ipse: *he himself;* i.e. the uncle

6 **mānsūra:** *going to remain;* i.e. enduring; fut. pple manēō with opera, neut. pl. acc. of opus
multum: *much;* acc. obj.

tamen: *nevertheless;* begins the main clause following the two concessive clauses

perpetuitātī eius: dat. ind. obj. with fut. addet eius, ‘his,’ is gen. sg. and refers to the uncle
scrīptōrum tuōrum: *of your writings;* ‘of things written’ neut. PPP scrībō used as a noun

7 **aeternitās:** fut. addō (ad + dō)

addet: fut. addō (ad + dō)

Equidem: *I for my part;* = ‘e(go) quidem’
beātōs putō, quibus...datum est: *I think blessed (those) to whom...it is granted;* putō

governs a double acc. (acc. obj. and acc. pred.)
 the second accusative is missing and must be
 supplied as antecedent of quibus (dat. of
 interest); pf. pass. dō here means ‘grant,’
 ‘allow,’ or ‘give (power)’ instead of ‘give’
deōrum mūnere: *by...*; abl. of means
 8 **aut facere...aut scribere...:** *either...or*; subject
 infs. of impersonal datum esse, ‘it was granted’
scribenda: (*things*)...; a neut. acc. pl. obj.; this
 gerundive of scribō can be translated as
 ‘(worthy) to be Xed’ or as ‘Xable’
legenda: (*things*)...; see note above

beātissimōs vērō (putō) quibus: *but (I think)*
most blessed (those) to whom...; ellipsis: add
 putō from above, see note for line 7 about
 the double acc. and dative of interest
 9 **utrumque (datum est):** *both (were given)*
et (in) suis librīs et (in) tuis (librīs)
erit: fut. sum.
quō: *because of which, by which...*; abl. cause
 10 **libentius:** comparative adv. libenter
(id) quod iniungis: *what you enjoin*; ‘(that)
 which you enjoin,’ relative clause, the missing
 antecedent is object of dēposcō

Core vocabulary words for this lesson are so numerous that they cannot be listed on this page. Please review the running core vocabulary in the introduction for p. 2 before reading this lesson.

Concessive Clauses (ll. 4-7)

Pliny uses **quamvis**², **quamquam**⁷, and **licet**²—all meaning “although”—in concessive clauses with the subjunctive and often adds **tamen**, “nevertheless,” in the main clause. In lines 4-7 outlined below, Pliny introduces two **quamvis** + pf. subj. clauses before he adds the main clause with **tamen**:

- | | |
|---|------|
| (1) Quamvis enim pulcherrimārum (in) clāde terrārum,
ut populī ut urbēs (in) memorābilī cāsū,
quasi semper vīctūrus
occiderit, | 1. 4 |
| (2) quamvis ipse plūrima opera et mānsūra condiderit, | 1. 5 |
| multum tamen perpetuitātī eius scrīptōrum tuōrum aeternitās addet. | 1. 6 |

Clauses of Comparison are introduced by **ut, quam, quasi, velut, sicut, prout, quālis, & tamquam**. Since these clauses repeat the same verb as the main clause, the verb is often missing but understood.

- | | | |
|--|---|------|
| (1) ut populī (occidērunt) | <i>as the people fell (perished)</i> | 1. 8 |
| (2) ut urbēs (occidērunt) | <i>as the cities fell</i> | 1. 8 |
| (3) quasi semper vīctūrus (occiderit) | <i>as if he, always going to be alive, fell</i> | 1. 8 |

Double Accusatives (ll. 7-9):

(1) Acc. direct object + (2) Acc. predicate

Some verbs, such as putō in line 7, govern two accusatives. Note the two examples in the reading:

- | | | |
|--|--|------|
| (1) beātōs putō (illōs) quibus... | <i>I think blessed (those) to whom...</i> | 1. 7 |
| (2) (putō) beātissimōs (illōs) quibus... | <i>I think most blessed (those) to whom...</i> | 1. 8 |

The best way to think about double accusatives is to imagine that there is a missing linking verb such as the infinitive esse: “I think those blessed” (putō illōs beātōs) is equivalent to “I think that those (are) blessed” (putō illōs esse beātōs). Beātōs and beātissimōs above function as acc. predicates.

Gerundives (Future Passive Participles) (going) to be Xed

There are several ways to translate gerundives. In line 8, translate them as “(worthy) to be Xed.” Since these particular gerundives are neuter pl. substantives (i.e. used as nouns), add “things.”

- | | | | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|---|------------------------------------|------|
| (1) scribenda | <i>things to be written</i> | → | <i>things worthy to be written</i> | 1. 8 |
| (2) legenda | <i>things to be read</i> | → | <i>things worthy to be read</i> | 1. 8 |

4. Erat Mīsēnī classemque imperiō praesēns regēbat. Nōnum Kal. Septembrēs hōrā ferē septimā māter mea indicat eī appārēre nūbem inūsītātā et magnitūdine et speciē. 5. Ūsus ille sōle, mox frīgidā, gustāverat iacēns studēbatque; poscit soleās, ascendit locum ex quō maximē mīrāculum illud cōnspici poterat. Nūbēs, incertum procul intuentibus ex quō monte; 15 —Vesuvium fuisse posteā cognitum est—oriēbātur, cuius similitūdinem et fōrmam nōn alia magis arbor quam pīnus expresserit.

- ^b
appareō, -ēre, -uī, -itum: appear, 3
arbor, -oris: tree
ascendō, -ere, -ī, -ēnsum: ascend, board, 2
classis, -is f.: fleet, 3
cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum: learn, know, 2
cōnspiciō, -ere, -spexī: catch sight of, see
exprimō, -ere, -pressī: express; represent, depict
ferē: almost, nearly, closely
forma, -ae f.: form, shape; beauty, 3
frīgidus, -a, -um: cool, cold, 2
gustō (1): taste, eat
hōra, -ae f.: hour, 2
incidō, -ere, -cīdī: fall into, fall upon, 3
interdum: sometimes, occasionally, 3
intueor, -tuērī, -tuitus sum: look upon
inūsītātus, -a, -um: unusual
Kal.: Kalendae
- 11 **Erat:** *he was...*; i.e. the uncle
Mīsēnī: *at Misenum*; locative, place where
imperiō: *with the power (to command)*; abl. means
praesēns: *presently*; make nom. pred. an adv.
(ante) Nōnum (diem) Kal(endae) Septembrēs: *the ninth (day before) the Kalends of September*; i.e. August 24th, 79
- 12 **hōrā septimā:** *at...*; abl. time when; this is the 7th hour since dawn: around 1 p.m.
eī appārēre nūbem...: *that...*; ind. disc. with nūbem as acc. subject
eī: *to her*; dat. sg. of reference (point of view)
inūsītātā et magnitūdine et speciē: *of both... and...*; abl. of quality modifying nūbem
- 13 **Ūsus:** dep. PPP ūtor: translate as ‘having Xed’ ūtor can mean ‘enjoy’ as well as ‘experience’
ille: *that one*; i.e. the uncle
sōle: abl. object of ūsus est
mox frīgidā (aquā): *(and) soonafter...*; 2nd abl. obj. of ūsus; **asyndeton** (a lack of conjunction) is common throughout this letter
iacēns: *(while)...*; pres. pple iaceō
- 14 **maximē:** *especially*; ‘very greatly’ superl. adv.
- magnitūdō, -inis f.:** magnitude, size, greatness
mīrāculum, -ī n.: miracle, wondrous
nōnus, -a, -um: ninth
orior, -irī, ortus sum: rise; be born, 2
pīnus, -ūs f.: pine tree
posteā: afterwards, later, 2
praesēns, -ntis: present, be in person, 2
procul: from afar, far, at a distance, 2
September, -bris m.: September
septimus, -a, -um: seventh
similitūdō, -inis f.: similarity
sōl, sōlis m.: sun, 3
solea, -ae f.: sandal
species, -ei f.: appearance, sight, 2
studeō, -ēre: study, be eager/enthusiastic for, 2
ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum: use; enjoy, employ (*abl.*), 3
Vesuvius, -ī m.: Mt. Vesuvius, 2
- mīrāculum illud:** nom. subject; i.e. what the mother had pointed out above
- 15 **incertum (erat):** *(it was) uncertain*
procul intuentibus: *for (those) watching from afar*; dat. of reference and pres. pple intueor
ex quō monte (orirētur): *from... (it was arising)*. ind. question with verb missing but understood: assume impf. dep. subj. orior
- 16 **Vesūvium fuisse:** *that (it) had been...*; pf. *sum cognitum est:* *it was...*; impersonal pf. pass. cognōscō, ‘learn, recognize;’ pf. pass. *sum oriēbātur:* impf. dep. orior: translate as active; nūbēs is the nom. sg. subject
cuius...expresserit: *whose...*; relative clause of characteristic with 3s pf. subj. exprimō (translate as pf.)
- 17 **nōn alia...arbor:** nom. subj.
magis...quam pīnus: *more than a pine tree*; *quam* introduces a clause of comparison after comparative adv. *magis*; Today we would describe the cloud as a mushroom cloud. The umbrella pine tree, to which Pliny is referring, is not cone-shaped as many species of pine tree but is broad—like a mushroom or umbrella!

alius, -a, -ud: other, another, else, 22	maximē: very greatly, especially, 4
crēdō, -ere, -didī: believe, trust (dat.), 13	Misēnum, -ī: Misenum, 6
ē, ex: out of, from (<i>abl.</i>), 21	mōns, montis m.: mountain, 6
iaceō, -ēre, iacuī: lie (down), 4	mox: soon, 6
ille, illa, illud: that, those, 54	nōn: not, 37
imperium, -ī n.: power, command, 5	nūbēs, -is f.: cloud, 9
incertus, -a, -um: uncertain, unsure, unreliable, 5	poscō, -ere, poposcī: ask, request, demand, 4
locus, -ī m. (pl. locī, loca): place, 9	que: and, 185
magis: more, rather, 10	regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum: rule, lead, 4
māter, mātris f.: mother, 8	vel, -ve: or; vel...vel, either...or, 12

The purpose of history for Pliny is to reveal moral character—specifically, how his uncle reacts heroically in response to the eruption. Yes, we learn much about the eruption itself, but Pliny’s real task is to answer the historian Tacitus’ question and describe the final moments (*exitum*) of his uncle. Note how Pliny elevates his uncle’s courage and moral character in every possible way in the letter.

The Locative Case ⁶ is an old case used by towns, cities, small islands, and words such as *domus* and *rūs* to express place where without a preposition. Note that the locative sg. resembles the genitive sg. (e.g. *Misēnī, Campaniae*) while locative pl. resembles the ablative pl. (e.g. *Stabiīs, Athēnīs*).

(1) Misēnī	<i>at Misenum</i>	<i>p. 4, 18, 20</i>	Locatives are used only 6 times in this book. Nouns that take the locative also express acc. place to which in the accusative without a preposition.
(2) Stabiīs	<i>at Stabiae</i>	<i>p. 10</i>	
(3) Campaniae	<i>at Campania</i>	<i>p. 20</i>	
(4) Athēnīs	<i>at Athens</i>	<i>p. 38</i>	

Word Building DA-/DIDI- “give” or “put”

dō, dare, dedī, datum: give; grant, 18	in compound verbs, dare means “put”
addō, -ere, -didī, -ditum: add, give in addition, 2	put + toward
condō, -ere, condidī, -ditum: found; hide, 7	+ together, below
crēdō, -ere, -didī: believe, trust (dat.), 13	+ trust in
edō, -ere, -didī: give out, put forth, 1	+ out
perdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum: lose, destroy, ruin, 1	+ through (to the end)
reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditum: give back, 3	+ back
trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum: hand over, 1	+ across



Fig. 1 Umbrella Pine Tree

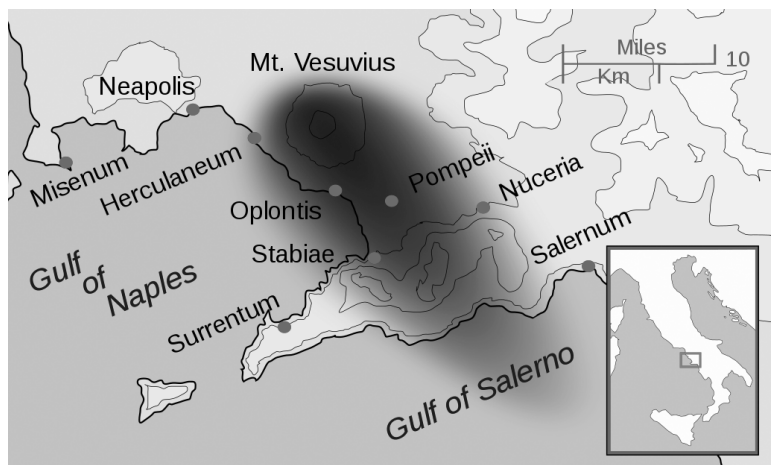


Fig. 2 Eruption of Mt. Vesuvius in the Bay of Naples

6. Nam longissimō velut truncō ēlāta in altum quibusdam rāmīs diffundēbātur, crēdō quia recentī spīritū ēvecta, dein senēscēte eō dēstitūta aut etiam pondere suō victa in lātītūdinem vānēscēbat, candida interdum, interdum 20 sordida et maculōsa prout terram cineremve sustulerat. 7. Magnum propiusque nōscendum ut ērudītissimō virō vīsum. Iubet liburnicam aptārī; mihi sī venīre ūnā vellem facit cōpiam; respondī studēre mē mälle, et forte ipse quod scrīberem dederat. 8. Ēgrediēbātur domō; accipit cōdicillōs Rectīnae Tascī imminentī perīculō exterritae - nam villa eius subiacēbat, nec 25 ūlla nisī nāvibus fuga—ut sē tantō discrīminī ēriperet ōrābat.

aptō (1): fit, fit out, equip, adapt

candidus, -a, -um: bright white

cōdicillī, -ōrum m.: a letter, writing; tablet

cōpia, -ae f.: abundance, supply; opportunity, 2

dein (deinde): then, next, 3

dēstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum: leave, abandon

diffundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum: pour/spread out, 2

discrīmen, -crīminis n.: crisis, peril

efferō, -ferre, -tulī, ēlātum: raise, lift up

ērudītus, -a, -um: educated

ēvehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum: carry out

exterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum: terrify, 2

forte: by chance, 3

immineō, -ēre: tower over, threaten; be imminent, 3

interdum: sometimes, occasionally, 3

lātītūdo, -dinis f.: breadth, width

liburnica, -ae f.: light ship

18 **(nūbēs)...ēlāta:** (*the cloud*) *having been carried up...*; ellipsis, PPP efferō

longissimō velut truncō: *just as by...*; clause of comparison with an abl. of means

in altum: *on high*; lit. ‘into the height’

quibusdam rāmīs: *with...*; abl. means

19 **quia (nūbēs)...vānēscēbat:** *because (the cloud)...*; Pliny suggests that the shape was caused by a loss of energy as the cloud rose

recentī spīritū: abl. of means, i-stem abl. sg.

(nūbēs) ēvecta...dein...dēstitūta...aut...victa:

(the cloud) lifted up...then...or...; three PPP

ēvehō, dēstituō, vincō modifying fem. sg. nūbēs

senēscēte eō: *by it...*; i.e. by the masc. sg.

spīritus, abl. of means and pres. pple senēscō

aut etiam pondere suō victa: *or even...*; PPP

vincō with abl. means; reflexive suō, ‘its own’

20 **candida interdum, interdum...maculōsa:**

sometimes...sometimes...; correlatives, the fem. adjs. modify fem. sg. nūbēs

maculōsus, -a, -um: spotted

mālō, mälle, mālū: prefer, 2

pondus, ponderis n.: weight, 2

propius: nearer, closer (*comp.* prope), 3

prout: just as, accordingly as

quīdam, quae-, quod-: certain, one, someone, 3

rāmus, -ī m.: branch

recēns, -ntis: fresh, recent, 2

Rectīna, -ae f.: Rectina, 2

senēscō, -ere, -uī: grow old

sordidus, -a, -um: dirty

studeō, -ēre: study, be eager/enthusiastic for, 2

subiaceō, -ēre: lie under, lie at the foot of (dat.)

Tascus, -ī m.: Tascus

truncus, -ī m.: trunk (of a tree)

vānēscō, -ere, -uī: vanish, disappear

velut: just as

villa, -ae f.: villa, country-house, 2

21 **prout (nūbēs)...sustulerat:** *just as...*; clause of comparison and plpf. tollō

cineremve: *or ash*; enclitic -ve

(hoc erat) magnum propiusque (erat)

nōscendum: (*this was*) *important and had to be learned of more closely*; ‘was to be...’ past passive periphrastic (gerundive nōscō, ‘learn,’ + erat) expressing necessity; comparative adv.

22 **ut...vīsum (est):** *as it seemed...*; clause of comparison; pass. videor often means, ‘seem’
ērudītissimō virō: *to (that)...*; i.e. the uncle; dat. of reference (point of view)

sī...vellem: *if I wanted...*; 1s impf. subj. volō;

subj. of subordinate verb in implied ind. disc.

ūnā: *as one, together*; abl. adj. as adverb

23 **facit cōpiam:** *he makes/gives an opportunity*
studēre mē mälle: *that I...*; ind. disc., mälle is irreg. pres. inf. of mālō (māgis + volō)

forte: *by chance*; abl. fors is a common adv.

24 **ipse:** *he himself*; i.e. the uncle

(id) quod scrīberem: *what...*; ‘(that) which,’ relative of characteristic with 1s impf. subj.: translate as impf.; the uncle had given the younger Pliny a homework assignment
Ēgrediēbātur: impf. dep.: translate as active
domō: *from...*; place from which (separation)
 25 **Rectinae (uxoris) Tasci:** *of Rectina, (wife) of Tascus;* gen. sg.
subiacēbat (monti): add ‘mountain’ as dat. of

compound; likely near the city Herculaneum
imminentī periculō: *by...*; i-stem abl. means
 26 **(erat) ūlla...fūga:** *there was...*
nisī nāvibus: *except...*; abl. of means
ut sē...ēriperet: *that he...*; ind. command governed by *ōrābat;* *ēripiō,* ‘snatch away’ often, as here, means ‘rescue;’ *sē* refers to *Rectina*
tantō discrimīni: *from...*; dat. of compound verb *ēripiō*

accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: receive, 6

altus, -a, -um: high, tall; deep; sea (the deep), 18

cinis, cineris m.: ashes, 6

domus, -ūs f.: house(hold), home, 14

ego, meī, mihi, mē, mē: I, 62

ēgredior, -ī, -gressus sum: go out, disembark, 4

ēripiō, -ere, -uī: rescue, snatch from, 4

fuga, -ae f.: flight; haste, 6

iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum: order, 11

longus, -a, -um: long, distant; far, 13

magnus, -a, -um: great, large, 17

nāvis, -is f.: ship, 4

nec: nor, and not: **nec...nec,** neither...nor, 20

nisī: if not, unless, 4

nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtum: learn; *pf.* know, 5

ōrō (1): plead, beg; pray for, 6

periculum, -ī n.: danger, risk, 10

quia: because, 6

respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -nsum: answer, 4

sē, suī, sibi (sēsē): him-, her-, it-, themselves, 22

spīritus, -ūs m.: breath, exhalation, spirit, 4

tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum: raise; destroy, 9

ūllus, -a, -um: any, any one, 5

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum: come, go, 14

vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum: conquer, 6

vir, -ī m.: man, husband, 12

volō, velle, voluī: will, wish, be willing, 7

Clauses of Comparison II: Velut¹, Prout¹ and Sicut²

Compound words of **ut** introduce clauses of comparison, just as **ut** does. They are very rare in this book but easy to master. There are subtle differences between these words, but for simplification translate all three the same way as **ut** with the indicative: “as” or “just as.”

vel-ut “(even) as”	longissimō velut truncō	<i>just as with a very long tree trunk</i>	p. 6
pro-ut “(accordingly) as”:	prout terram cineremve sustulerat	<i>as it had carried up earth and ash</i>	p. 6
sic-ut “(in this way) as”	sicut initiō temptātum erat	<i>just as it had been attempted...</i>	p. 52
	sicut praecēperās	<i>just as you had instructed...</i>	p. 58

Passive Periphrastic ⁴ (**gerundive + sum**) expresses necessity and governs a dative of agent. This construction is used only four times in this book: twice by Pliny and twice by Vergil. Note the raw and polished (must/has to) translations below. In the past and future, use “had to” and “will have to.”

	raw		polished	
nōscendum erat	<i>it was to be learned</i>	→	<i>it had to be learned</i>	p. 6
pars agenda erit	<i>part will be to be carried out</i>	→	<i>will have to be carried out</i>	p. 52
simulācrum ducendum est	<i>the likeness is to be led</i>	→	<i>the likeness must be led</i>	p. 58
nūmina ōranda sunt	<i>the gods are to be prayed to</i>	→	<i>the gods must be prayed to</i>	p. 58

Three Possible Translations for Superlative Adjectives

Note that “very X” is the best translation for **longissimō** and **ērudītissimō** on the facing page.

longissimus, -a, -um	(1) longest
	(2) most long
	(3) very long

9. Vertit ille cōnsilium et quod studiōsō animō incohāverat obit maximō. Dēdūcit quadrirēmēs, ascendit ipse nōn Rectīnae modō sed multīs—erat enim frequēns amoenitās ōrae—lātūrus auxilium. 10. Properat illūc unde alīi fugiunt, rēctumque cursum rēcta gubernācula in perīculum tenet adeō solūtus 30 metū, ut omnēs illīus malī mōtūs omnēs figurās ut dēprēnderat oculīs dictāret ēnotāretque.

11. Iam nāvibus cinis incidēbat, quō propius accēderent, calidior et dēnsior; iam pūmicēs etiam nigrīque et ambustī et frāctī igne lapidēs; iam vadum subitum ruīnāque montis lītora obstantia. Cūntātus paulum an retrō flecteret, 35 mox gubernātōrī ut ita faceret monentī ‘Fortēs,’ inquit, ‘fortūna iuvat: Pomponiānum pete.’

accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum: approach, 3

adeō: so, to such a degree/extent

amburō, -ere, -ussī, -ustum: burn around, scorch

amoenitās, -tātis f.: pleasantness, charm, 2

ascendō, -ere, -ī, -ēnsūm: ascend, board, 2

auxilium, -ī n.: help, aid, assistance, 2

calidus, -a, -um: hot

conferō, -ferre, -tulī: bring together, gather

cōnsilium, -ī: plan, idea, 3

cūntor, -ārī, -ātus sum: delay, hesitate, 3

dēdūcō, -ere: draw down, lead

dēnsus, -a, -um: thick, 3

dēprēhendō, -ere, -ndī: seize, grasp

dictō (1): dictate

ēnotō (1): note, mark out

flectō, -ere, -xī, -ctum: bend, turn, 3

fortūna, -ae f.: fortune, chance, luck, 2

frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum: break, 2

frequēns, frequentis: crowded, 3

gubernāculum, -ī n.: helm, rudder; *pl.* direction

gubernātor, -ōris m.: helmsman, steersman

illūc: to there, thither, 2 driver

incidō, -ere, -cīdī: fall, fall upon, 3

27 **vertit ille:** *that one changed;* i.e. the uncle
quod studiōsō animō...obit maximō (animō):
and what he had begun with a studious/eager heart, he goes to with the greatest (heart); i.e. courage, a common translation for animus; animō is abl. of manner; the missing antecedent of *quod...incohāverat* is the object of obit

28 **nōn...modō sed:** *not only...but (also)...*

Rectīnae...multīs: *to...to...;* dat. ind. obj.

29 **erat...frequēns:** *was crowded;* i.e. populated
amoenitās ōrae: *the pleasantness of the shore*
lātūrus auxilium: *intending to bring...;* fut. act.

incohō (1): begin

iuvō, -āre, iūvī: help, please

lapis, -idis m.: stone, 3

modo: only, just now, 2

moneō, -ēre, -uī: warn, advise, admonish, 2

mōtus, -ūs m.: movement, motion, 1

niger, nigra, nigrum: black, 2

obeō, -īre, -īī, -itum: go to/against, meet; die, end

obstō, -āre: stand in the way, oppose, 2

Pomponiānus, -ī m.: Pomponianus, 2

properō (1): hasten, hurry, 3

propius: nearer, closer (*comp.* prope), 3

pūmex, -icis m.: pumice stone, 3

quadrirēmīs, -is f.: quadreme, ship (with four banks of oars)

Rectīna, -ae f.: Rectina, 2

rēctus, -a, -um: straight, direct, correct, 2

retrō: back, backward

ruīna, -ae f.: downfall, fall, 2

studiōsus, -a, -um: eager, enthusiastic

subitus, -a, -um: sudden, 2

unde: from which, whence, 2

vadum, -ī n.: shallow water, shallows

pplē ferō expressing purpose with dat. ind. obj.

30 **unde...fugiunt:** *from where...;* relative clause

rēctumque cursum (et) rēcta gubernācula:
 both acc. obj. of tenet: assume Pliny as subject

solūtus: *freed, detached;* PPP solvō

31 **metū:** *from...;* abl. of separation with solūtus

ut...dictāret ēnotāretque: *that...;* result clause

with impf. subj.: translate as impf. indicative

omnēs...mōtūs (et) omnēs figurās

illīus malī: *of that evil;* i.e. the eruption

ut dēprēnderat oculīs: *as (he)...;* clause of comparison with plpf. ind. and abl. of means

- 33 **nāvibus**: *on...*; dat. of compound verb incidō
quō propius accēderent calidior et dēnsior:
the closer they approached, (the ash fell)...;
 ‘by however much more closely,’ quō may be
 adv. ‘to where’ or, as I suggest, is abl. degree
 of difference with comparative adv. propius
calidior, dēnsior: nom. pred. modifying cinis
 34 **iam pūmicēs etiam -que...lapidēs**: *now*
pumice also and stones...; add verb incidēbant
nigrī, ambustī, frāctī: all modifying lapidēs
iam (erat) vadum subitum: *Now (there*
was)...; vadum subitum is nom. subject; the
 tremors created tidal waves which caused the
 water to recede from the shore (the trough of
 the tidal wave struck before the crest).
 35 **ruināque montis**: *and because of...*; or ‘and
 with...’ abl. of cause; i.e. ash and pumice; the -

- que joins nominatives vadum and litora
litora (erant) obstantia: *the shores (were)*
obstructing; neut. pl. pres. pple obstō; i.e. the
 shoreline was filled with ash and pumice
Cūctātus: i.e. having wavered in thought; dep
 PPP cūctor (translate ‘having Xed’)
paulum an retrō flecteret: *whether he*
would...or...; ind. question with impf. subj.
 36 **gubernātōrī...monentī**: *to the helmsman...*;
 dat. ind. obj. with inquit and dat. pres. pple
ut ita faceret: *that...*; ind. command with impf.
 subj. governed by monentī; ita, ‘thus,’ refers to
 the instructions that the uncle gives below
Fortēs...iuvat *Fortune favors the brave*; a well
 known expression; fortēs is a substantive
 37 **Pomponiānum**: *Pomponianus*; i.e. his home
pete: sg. imperative

an: or (in questions), 6

animus, -ī m.: mind; spirit, courage; anger, 10

cursus, -ūs m.: course, running; haste, 6

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum: bear, carry; endure, 10

figūra, -ae f.: figure, shape, form, 5

fortis, -e: strong, brave, 7

fugiō, -ere, fugī: flee, escape, 9

iam: now, already, 34

ignis, -is m.: fire; lightning, 8

inquam, inquis, inquit: say, 4

ita: so, thus, 6

lītus, -oris n.: shore, coast, beach, 8

malus, -a, -um: bad, wicked, 6

metus, -ūs f.: dread, fear, 10

oculus, ī m.: eye, 14

omnis, -e: all, every, whole, 24

ōra, -ae f.: shore, coast, border, 4

paulus, -a, -um: little, small; *adv.* -um, 4

retrō: back, backward, 1

solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum: loosen; set sail, break up, 4

sed: but, 19

tantus, -a, -um: so great, so much, 16

teneō, -ēre, -uī, -tum: hold, 10

ūnus, -a, -um: one, alone; **ūnā**, together, 8

vertō, -ere, vertī, versum: turn; change, 6

Pliny the Elder turns the fleet to the house of Pomponianus in the town of Stabiae.

Heavy ash prevents Pliny and the fleet from sailing to their destination at the base of Mt. Vesuvius on the eastern coast of the Bay of Naples, and prevailing winds are moving eastward across the bay toward Vesuvius, so Pliny and the fleet cannot turn back to Misenum in the west.

Pliny therefore uses the wind to turn to the southeastern coast of the Bay of Naples and the home of a friend Pomponianus in the town of Stabiae.

The Purpose of History for Pliny is to reveal Moral Character (II)

Note all the ways Pliny highlights his uncle’s good intentions and courage in the face of adversity. The main character in this story is not Mt. Vesuvius but the uncle and his response to the eruption.

- | | | |
|--|--|-------|
| 1. quod studiōsō animō incohāverat obit maximō | <i>what he had begun with an eager heart, he ends with the greatest heart (i.e. courage)</i> | 1. 27 |
| 2. lātūrus auxilium | <i>intending to bring help</i> | 1. 29 |
| 3. Properat illūc unde aliī fugiunt | <i>he hurries to there where others flee</i> | 1. 29 |
| 4. rēctumque cursum...in perīculum tenet | <i>he holds a straight course into danger</i> | 1. 30 |
| 5. solūtus metū | <i>freed from fear</i> | 1. 30 |
| 6. ‘Fortēs,’ inquit, ‘fortūna iuvat.’ | <i>He says, “Fortune favors the brave”</i> | 1. 31 |

12. Stabiīs erat dirēptus sinū mediō—nam sēnsim circumāctīs curvātisque litoribus mare īfunditur—ibi quamquam nōndum perīculō appropinquante, cōspicuō tamen et cum crēsceret proximō, sarcinās contulerat in nāvēs, 40 certus fugae sī contrārius ventus resēdisset. Quō tunc avunculus meus secundissimō invectus, complectitur trepidantem cōnsōlātur hortātur, utque timōrem eius suā sēcūritāte lēnīret, dēferri in balineum iubet; lōtus accubat cēnat, aut hilaris aut—quod aequē magnum—similis hilarī.

accubō (1): lie at or beside

aequus, -a, -um: equal

appropinquō (1): approach, draw near

balineum, -ī n.: bath, 2

cēnō (1): dine

circumagō, -ere: drive or carry around

complexor, -ī, complexus sum: embrace

cōnsolor, -ārī, -ātus sum: console

cōspicuus, -a, -um: conspicuous, visible

contrārius, -a, -um: opposite, contrary, 2

crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētum: grow, 3

curvō (1): curve, bend, bow

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum: report, offer, 3

dirimō, -ere, -ēmī, -emptum: separate, divide

hilaris, -e: cheerful, merry, 2

38 **Stabiīs:** at *Stabiae*; locative, place where
erat dirēptus: (*Pomponianus*) had been separated (from the eruption); the author is noting that *Stabiae* is distant from the eruption;
sinū mediō: by the the bay in the middle; i.e. by the intervening bay; abl. of means

39 **nam sēnsim circumāctīs curvātisque litoribus mare īfunditur:** for the sea is spread on gradually rounded and curved shores; Pliny here describes the Bay of Naples; *litoribus* is dat. of compound verb *īfunditur* and is modified by PPP *circum-agō* and *curvō*
ibi: there; i.e. in *Stabiae*

quamquam...perīculō appropinquante: although the danger (is) not yet...; an abl. abs. concessive in sense with pres. pple
cōspicuō tamen et...proximō: but nevertheless (being)...; a continuation of the extended abl. abs.; add the pple 'being,' *cōspiciō* et *proximō* are abl. predicates modifying *perīculō*

40 **cum (perīculum) crēsceret:** when it...; cum clause with impf. subj.: translate as an impf.
contulerat: plpf. *cōnferō*; the uncle is subject
in nāvēs: into...

41 **certus fugae:** certain of flight; *certus* + gen.
Sī...resēdisset: if...had settled in; plpf. subj. in a

hortor, -ārī, hortātus sum: encourage, urge, 2

īfundō, -ere, -dī, -fūsus: pour/spread on, 2

invehō, -ere, -ēxī, ectum: carry in, convey

lavō, -āre, lāvī, lōtus: wash, bathe

lēniō, -īre, -ivī: soothe, soften, 2

nōndum: not yet

sarcina, -ae f.: pack, baggage; burden

secundus, -a, -um: following; favorable, 2

sēcūritās, -tātis f.: lack of concern or care, 2

sēnsim: gradually slowly; gently

sinus, -ūs m.: bay, curve; bosom, lap, 2

Stabiae, -ārum m.: *Stabiae*

trepidō (1): tremble, 2

ventus, -ī m.: wind, 2

past contrary to fact with the apodosis missing
contrārius ventus: i.e. blowing away from the mountain back to *Misenum* and open sea

Quō (ventō) secundissimō; by which most favorable wine; a connecting relative and abl. of means with PPP *invehō*

42 **complectitur, cōnsōlātur (et) hortātur:** three pres. dep.: translate active; asyndeton (add 'et')
trepidantem: (the one)...; i.e. *Pomponiānus*; acc. pres. pple and object of all three verbs
utque...lēnīret: and so that...might...; purpose clause with impf. subj.

43 **timōrem eius:** i.e. *Pomponiānus*'s, gen. sg.
suā sēcūritāte: with his own...; i.e. Pliny's; abl. means; *sua* (*suus*) is a reflexive possessive adj.
(sē) dēferri in balineum: that (he) be...; ind. disc. with prs. pass. inf. governed by *iubet*
lōtus: (after)...; irregular PPP of *lavō*: *la(v)atus*
accubat (et) cēnat: the uncle lies down when he eats; asyndeton
aut...aut...: either...or...

44 **quod (est) aequē magnum:** what (is) equally great; a relative clause, the phrase *similis hilarī* that follows is the antecedent; *aequē* is an adv.
hilarī: to (someone)...; dat. of special adj.

certus, -a, -um: sure, reliable, 5
cum: with; when, since, although, 23
ibi: there, in that place, 5
mare, -is n.: sea, 8
medius, -a, -um: middle of, middle, 15
proximus, -a, -um: nearest, very close, 4

quamquam: although, 7
resīdō, -ere, -sēdī: sit back, settle, 5
similis, -e: like, similar, (*dat., gen.*), 6
tīmor, -ōris m.: fear, dread, 6
tum, tunc: then, at that time, 16

How does Pliny the Younger know what Happened?

Pliny did not witness what his uncle experienced. There must have been at least one survivor who observed the events on the ship and later at the house of Pomponianus at Stabiae and reported them to the author at some time after the eruption.

The Uncle's Calm Response to Pomponianus' Trembling

Note the many ways Pliny contrasts his uncle's calm demeanor to Pomponianus' fearful trembling in lines 5-7. The frequent use of asyndeton (omission of a conjunction) emphasizes the long list of actions that the uncle undertakes to comfort his friend and maintain as normal a routine as possible:

1. complectitur
2. cōnsōlātur
3. hortātur
4. ut timōrem eius suā sēcūritāte lēnīret,
5. dēferri in balineum iubet;
6. lōtus accubat cēnat,
7. aut hilaris aut—quod aequē magnum—similis hilarī.

The uncle's behavior may seem foolish from our own point of view, but remember that the Romans were not familiar with the dangers of volcanic eruptions. They knew about earthquakes, forest fires, and even lava flows (Pliny the Elder documents lava flows on Mt. Etna in Sicily in his own writings), but the idea that a mountain could explode and endanger people far away was not imaginable.

In the final line Pliny acknowledges that his uncle may be pretending to be "cheerful" (*hilaris*), but Pliny praises this behavior as "equally great" (*aequē magnum*). Pliny thinks that it is admirable that the uncle may have private doubts but wishes to avoid adding to the fear of his friend Pomponianus.

Word Building: FUND-, FUD-, FUS- "pour" or "spread"

fundō, -ere, -fūdī, fūsum: pour (out), lay low, 1	pour
circumfundō -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum: spread around, 1	+ around
diffundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum: pour/spread out, 2	+ in different directions, out
effundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum: pour/spread out, 4	+ out
īfundō, -ere, -dī, -fūsum: pour/spread on, 2	+ in/on/into
perfundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum: pour/shed over, 1	+ over, through

13. Interim ē Vesuviō monte plūribus locīs lātissimae flammae altaque 45
 incendia relucēbant, quōrum fulgor et clāritās tenebrīs noctis excitābātur. Ille
 agrestium trepidātiōne ignēs relictōs dēsertāsque vīllās per sōlitūdinem ārdēre
 in remedium formīdinis dictitābat. Tum sē quiētī dedit et quiēvit vērissimō
 quidem somnō; nam meātus animae, quī illī propter amplitūdinem corporis
 gravior et sonantior erat, ab eīs quī līminī obversābantur audiēbātur. 50

agrestis, -is m.: farmer, field worker

amplitudō, -inis f.: amplitude, magnitude, size

anima, -ae f.: breath, life; soul, 2

clāritās, -ātis f.: brightness, clarity

dictō (1): say often, keep saying

formīdō, -inis f.: dread, fear, 3

fulgor (fulgur) m.: flash (lightning), lightning, 2

incendium, -ī n.: fire, conflagration, 1

interim: meanwhile, in the meantime, 3

meātus, -ūs m.: motion, course, path, 2

obversor, -ārī, -ātus sum: turn about before

45 **(in) plūribus locīs:** abl. place where; the fire
 is growing on the mountain

46 **quōrum...:** *whose...*

fulgor et clāritās: *the brightness of the flash
 lightning; 'lightning flash and brightness,'*
 hendiadys (two terms denoting a single object)
 with a 3s verb

tenebrīs noctis: *by...*; abl. of means and gen.
 sg. the night enhances the bright light

excitābātur: *was increased*

Ille: *that one;* i.e. the uncle

47 **agrestium...ignēs...-que...vīllās...ārdēre:** *that*

fires...; ind. disc. with ignēs and vīllās as acc.
 subjects (joined by -que) of pres. inf. ārdēre;
 the construction is governed by dictitābat;

Pliny suggests there are forest fires on the
 mountain started by agitated farmworkers

agrestium trepidātiōne: *by...*; abl. of cause and
 gen. pl. agrestis all governed by relictōs;

relictōs: PPP relinquo with acc. subj. ignēs

dēsertās: PPP dēsērō with 2nd acc. subj. vīllās

plūs, plūris: more, 3

propter: on account of, because of, 3

quiēs, quiētis f.: rest, sleep

reluceō, -ēre, -lūxī: shine out, shine back, 2

remedium, -ī n.: remedy

sōlitūdō, -inis f.: wilderness, solitude, 2

sonāns, -ntis: resounding, echoing

tenebrae, -ārum f.: darkness, gloom, 3

trepidātiō, -tiōnis f.: alarm, trepidation

Vesuvius, -ī m.: Mt. Vesuvius, 2

villa, -ae f.: villa, country-house, 2

48 **in remedium formīdinis:** *in...*; here, the
 author suggests in his own voice the purpose
 for the uncle's comments; this prepositional
 phrase is not part of the ind. disc.

dictitābat: *kept saying;* i.e. said repeatedly

sē: *himself;* i.e. the uncle; reflexive acc. obj.

quiētī: *to...*; dat. ind. obj.; this is a periphrastic
 way to say that Pliny went to sleep

vērissimō...sommō: *with...*; abl. of manner;
 Pliny emphasizes that it was genuine sleep and
 not an something he pretended to do

quidem: *indeed;* emphatic modifying vērissimō

49 **meātus animae...audiēbātur:** *the motion of
 his breathing...*; i.e. the uncle's snoring

illī: *for that one;* dat. of interest or possession;

50 **ab eīs:** *by those (people);* abl. of agent with
 audiēbātur

quī līminī obversābantur: *who were turning
 about before the doorway;* i.e. those passing by
 the door; dat. of compound verb;

obversābantur is impf. dep. (translate as active)

ārdeō, -ēre, arsī, arsum: burn, be eager, 7
audiō, -īre, -ivī, -ītum: hear, listen to, 11
corpus, -oris n.: body, 14
dēserō, -ere, -ruī, -rtum: desert, abandon, 6
excitō (1): wake up, rouse up, raise, 4
flamma, -ae f.: flame, 6
gravis, -e: heavy, serious, severe, 5
lātus, -a, -um: wide, 5

līmen, -inis n.: threshold, doorway, 4
nox, noctis f.: night, 14
per: through, over, 36
quidem: indeed, certainly, 16
quiēscō, -ere, -ēvī, -ētum: rest, 5
relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum: leave, abandon, 7
somnus, -ī m.: sleep, 5

Remedies for Fear: Forest Fires and Deep Sleep

1. To comfort others, the uncle suggests the flames are man-made forest fires. There were many farms on the slopes of Vesuvius. The uncle suggests to Pomponianus that farm workers had started fires, perhaps to clear brush, and simply lost control of those fires. Pliny says the uncle kept saying this to address their fear (*in remedium formīdinis*).

2. The uncle slept soundly, while Pomponianus and others stayed awake all night. Once again, the contrast between the uncle's tranquility and Pomponianus' fear is emphasized. The fact that others hear the uncle snore tells us that his sleep was genuine, and others were too anxious to sleep.

Quick Review: Vocabulary describing the Eruption

Below are words about the eruption in Pliny's first letter. Synonyms are grouped together.

ignis, -is m.: fire; lightning, 8

flamma, -ae f.: flame, 6

fulgor (fulgur) m.: flash (lightning), lightning, 2

incendium, -ī n.: fire, conflagration, 1

pūmex, -icis m.: pumice stone, 3

exedō, -ēsse, -ēdī, exēsus: eat up, consume, 2

levis, -e: light, 3

cinis, cineris m.: ashes, 6

odor, odōris m.: smell, scent

sulpur, -is n.: sulfur

spīritus, -ūs m.: breath, exhalation, spirit, 4

tenebrae, -ārum f.: darkness, gloom, 3

nox, noctis, f.: night, 14

cālīgō, -inis f.: mist, vapor, 3

tremor, -ōris m.: tremor, shaking, 4

Quick Review: Vocabulary describing the House

Below are words about houses in Pliny's first letter. Synonyms are grouped together.

domus, -ūs f.: house(hold), home, 14

villa, -ae f.: villa, country-house, 2

tēctum, -ī n.: roof, shelter; house, 9

sēdēs, -is f.: seat, home, settlement, foundation, 5

ārea, -ae f.: courtyard, open space, 3

cubiculum, -ī n.: bedroom, 2

diaeta, -ae f.: room, chamber, apartment; diet, 1

līmen, -inis n.: threshold, doorway, 4

Ārea and **diaeta** are Greek terms and likely synonyms for the Roman **peristylum**, 'colonnade' or 'peristyle,' and Roman **cubiculum**, 'bedroom,' respectively.

14. Sed ārea ex quā diaeta adībātur ita iam cinere mixtisque pūmicibus opplēta surrēxerat, ut sī longior in cubiculō mora, exitus negārētur. Excitātus prōcēdit, sēque Pomponiānō cēterisque quī pervigilāverant reddit. 15. In commūne cōnsultant, intrā tēcta subsistant an in apertō vagentur. Nam crēbrīs vastisque tremōribus tēcta nūtābant, et quasi ēmōta sēdibus suīs nunc hūc nunc 55 illūc abire aut referrī vidēbantur. 16. Sub dīō rūsus quamquam levium exēsōrumque pūmicum cāsus metuēbātur, quod tamen periculōrum collatio ēlēgit; et apud illum quidem ratiō ratiōnem, apud aliōs timōrem timor vīcit. Cervīcālia capitibus imposita linteīs cōnstringunt; id mūnīmentum adversus 60 incidentia fuit.

abeō, -īre, -ī, itum: go away, 3
apud: with, among, at the house of, 2
ārea, -ae f.: courtyard, open space, 3
cervīcal, -is n.: pillow, cushion
cēterī, -ae, -a: the remaining, rest, others, 3
collātiō, -iōnis f.: collection, accumulation
commūnis, -e: common
cōnstringō, -ere: string together, tie, bind
cōnsultō (1): consult, deliberate
crēber, -bra, -brum: frequent, crowded, 2
cubiculum, -ī n.: bedroom, 2
diaeta, -ae f.: room, chamber, apartment; diet
ēligō, -ere, ēlēgī, ēlectum: choose, pick out
ēmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī: move out, remove
exedō, -esse, -ēdī, exēsus: eat up, consume, 2
exitus, -ūs m.: exit, destruction, death; result, 3
hūc: to this place, hither, 2
illūc: to there, thither, 2
impōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum: place on, 2
incidō, -ere, -cidī: fall, fall upon, 3

51 **ārea ex quā diaeta adībātur:** *the courtyard from which the bedroom was approached;* Pliny's room is under the peristyle of the house
adībātur: *was approached;* impf. pass. ad-eō
 52 **ita...surrēxerat, ut...negārētur:** *had risen in such a way that...;* i.e. had filled up; plpf. surgō with a result clause (impf. pass. subj. negō)
iam cinere mixtisque pūmicibus opplēta: *already filled...;* PPP oppleō modifying ārea with abl. of means; PPP misceō
sī (esset) longior...mora,...negārētur: *if (there were).....would be denied...;* a present contrary to fact condition in a result clause (sī impf. subj., impf. subj.) with a missing verb in the conditional (sī) clause: add impf. subj. sum
Excitātus: (*Pliny*)...; i.e. awakened from sleep
 53 **sē...reddit:** *returns himself to...;* i.e. rejoins

intrā: inside, within (*acc*), 2
levis, -e: light, 3
lintheum, -ī n.: linen cloth, 2
metuō, -ere, -uī: dread, fear, 3
misceō, -ēre, -uī, mīxtum: mix, 3
mora, -ae f.: delay, hesitation, 2
mūnīmentum, -ī n.: fortification
negō (1): deny, say that...not; refuse (*dat.*), 3
nūtō (1): nod
oppleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum: fill up
pervigilō (1): remain awake
Pomponiānus, -ī m.: Pomponianus, 2
prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī: proceed, move forward, 2
pūmex, -icis m.: pumice stone, 3
ratiō, -ōnis f.: calculation, reasoning, 3
reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditum: give back, 3
subsistō, -ere, -stītī: stand; stop, 2
vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum: wander, roam
vastus, -a, -um: vast, enormous, 2

Pomponiānō cēterisque: *to...;* *dat. ind. obj.*
 54 **intrā tēcta subsistant an in apertō vagentur:** *(whether) they should...or they should...;* ind. deliberative question with 3p pres. subj.
in apertō: *in the open;* i.e. without shelter
crēbrīs...tremōribus: *because of...;* abl. cause
 55 **quasi ēmōta:** *as if...;* PPP ēmoveō modifying neut. pl. tecta
sēdibus suīs: *from their foundations;* separation
 56 **abire aut referrī:** i.e. sway back and forth, complementary infs. abeō and pass. inf. referō
vidēbantur: *seemed;* 'were (being) seen'
 57 **sub dīō:** *under open sky;* 'under the divine'
quamquam...cāsus metuēbātur: *although the fall of...was feared;* pūmicum is gen. pl. (subjective gen.); the PPP exedō means that the pumice was 'porous'

quod: *this (option);* ‘which’ a connective relative and acc. obj. of pf. *ēligō*
 58 **apud illum:** *with that one, for that one;* i.e. the uncle
ratio (vicit) rationem: add pf. *vincō;* the author suggests that the uncle deliberated between rational calculations while others deliberated between the lesser of two fears
(sed) apud aliōs: *(but) with others, (but)*

among others; i.e. all present but Pliny
 59 **capitibus:** *on...;* dat. of compound verb; they tie pillows to their heads as protection
linteīs: *with...;* abl. of means
id...fuit: *this was...;* *mūnīmentum* is nom. pred.
adversus: *against + acc.;* used only here in the commentary; elsewhere the adj. ‘unfavorable’
incidentia: *things...;* i.e. pumice; neut. pl. pres. pple *incidō* and substantive: add ‘things’

adeō, -ire, iī, itum: go to, approach, 4
adversus, -a, -um: facing; *prep.* against, 5
aperiō, -ire, -uī, apertum: open, 4
caput, -itis n.: head, 9
diēs, diē m./f.: day(light), 14
dīvus, -a, -um (dīvus): divine; god(dess); sky, 9
nunc: now, 16

referō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum: report; say, 8
rūsus: again, 10
sēdēs, -is f.: seat, home, settlement, foundation, 5
sub: under, 12
surgō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum: rise, surge, 5
tēctum, -ī n.: roof, shelter; house, 9
tremor, -ōris m.: tremor, shaking, 4

Calculation (*ratio*) vs Fear (*timor*)

The uncle faces a two-fold threat. **ash and pumice**, falling into the courtyards (*āreae*) and roof openings threatens to block the uncle and others from leaving. At the same time, **frequent earthquakes** increase the chances that the houses will collapse and crush everyone inside.

At this moment Pliny again contrasts his uncle’s reaction with the others’ reaction and behavior:

apud illum quidem ratiō ratiōnem, apud aliōs timōrem timor vicit 1. 58
for him at least calculation won over calculation, for the others fear won over fear

Of course, it is absurd for Pliny to claim without evidence that his uncle weighed the decision to leave rationally while others were driven by emotion to act, but the author’s comment shows once again that Pliny is taking every opportunity to depict his uncle’s character in the most favorable light.

Word Building: CAD-, CID- “fall”

cadō, cadere, cecidī: fall, 1
accidō, -ere, -cidī: happen, fall to, 3
concidō, -ere: fall, 1
excidō, -ere, -ī: fall from, perish, 2
incidō, -ere, -cidī: fall, fall upon, 3
occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cāsum: fall, die, perish, 3
excidium, -ī n.: fall, destruction, 1

Compound verbs with a short vowel stem “cid-” derive from *cadō, cadere*, “fall,” while compound verbs with a long vowel stem “cīd-” derive from *caedō, caedere*, “cut” or “kill.” Only one word in the entire book uses the *caedere* stem (*recīdō*, “cut back”). So, when you see -cid, assume it means “fall.”

Common Adverbs of Place

Note that English often omits ‘to’ and ‘from’ in translation.

place where	<i>hīc</i> ³ <i>here</i>	<i>illīc</i> ¹ <i>there</i>	<i>ubi</i> ¹⁰ <i>where</i>	<i>ibi</i> ⁵ <i>there</i>
place from which	<i>hīnc</i> ⁴ <i>from here</i>	<i>illīnc</i> ⁰ <i>from there</i>	<i>unde</i> ² <i>from where</i>	<i>inde</i> ² <i>from there</i>
place to which	<i>hūc</i> ² <i>to here</i>	<i>illūc</i> ² <i>to there</i>	<i>quō</i> ¹ <i>to where</i>	<i>eō</i> ⁰ <i>to there</i>

adhūc (ad+hūc): *still, yet, 8* *undīque* (ubi+dē+que): *from everywhere, 1* *ubīque* (ubi+que): *everywhere, 1*

17. *Iam diēs alibī, illīc nox omnibus noctibus nigrior dēnsiorque; quam tamen facēs multae variaque lūmina solvēbant. Placuit ēgredī in lītus, et ex proximō adspicere, ecquid iam mare admitteret; quod adhūc vastum et aduersum permanēbat.* 18. *Ibi super abiectum linteum recubāns semel atque iterum frīgidam aquam poposcit hausitque. Deinde flammae flammārumque 65 praenūntius, odor sulphuris, aliōs in fugam vertunt, excitant illum.* 19. *Innītēns servolīs duōbus assurrēxit et statim concidit, ut ego colligō, crassiōre cālīgine spīritū obstrūctō, clausōque stomachō quī illī nātūrā invalidus et angustus et frequenter aestuāns erat.*

abiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum: throw away
admittō, -ere, mīsī, missum: admit, allow
adspicō, -ere, spexī, spectrum: look at, see
aestuō (1): enflame, seethe, boil over
alibī: elsewhere, in another place
angustus, -a, -um: narrow, 2
assurgō, -ere, assurrēxī: rise, 3
cālīgō, -inis f.: mist, vapor, 3
colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum: gather, collect, 3
concidō, -ere: fall, 1
crassus, -a, -um: thick, fat
deinde: then, next, 3
dēnsus, -a, -um: thick, 3
duo, duae, duo: two, 3
ecquis, ecquid: any(one, thing); whether, 2
fax, facis f.: torch, firebrand
frequēns, frequentis: crowded, 3
hauriō, -īre, hausī: drain, exhaust, 3
illīc: there, in that place

61 **Iam (erat) diēs alibī (sed) illīc...:** *Now (there was) daylight elsewhere, (but) there (was)...*
omnibus noctibus: *than...;* abl. of comparison
quam...solvēbant: *which...;* relative, fem. nox is the antecedent; impf. solvō, ‘break up’
62 **placuit:** *it was pleasing (to him);* impers. 3s pf.; i.e. the uncle decided or wanted
ēgredī: *to...;* pres. dep. inf.: translate as active
63 **ex proximō:** *from very close*
ecquid iam mare admitteret: *what...;* ind. question with impf. subj.; mare is subject
quod: *which...;* or ‘this sea,’ connective relative
vastum et aduersum: pred., translate after verb
64 **super abiectum linteum:** *on top of...;* i.e. a sheet on the beach; PPP abiciō
semel atque iterum: *again and again;* ‘once and again’
65 **poposcit, hausit:** pf. poscō, hauriō
66 **odor sulphuris:** nom. in apposition to

innītor, -ī, innixus sum: lean upon
invalidus, -a, -um: not strong, weak
iterum: again, 3
lin-teum, -ī n.: linen cloth, 2
nātūra, -ae f.: nature, 2
niger, nigra, nigrum: black, 2
obstruō, -ere, -xī, -ctum: obstruct
odor, odōris m.: smell, scent
permaneō, -ēre, -nsī: remain, endure
placet: it is pleasing
praenūntius, -ī m.: foreteller, harbinger; indication, omen, 1
recubō (1): lie back, recline
semel: once
servolus, -ī m.: a young slave
stomachus, -ī m.: windpipe, stomach
sulphur, -is n.: sulfur
varius, -a, -um: various, 3
vastus, -a, -um: vast, enormous, 2

praenuntius flammārum
in fugam: *to flight*
excitant illum: i.e. provoke that one (the uncle) to stand up
67 **servolīs duōbus:** *on...;* dat. of compound verb (pres. pple innītor); duōbus is the common dat. and abl. pl. ending for duo
ut ego colligō, *as I gather;* i.e. as I understand, clause of comparison
crassiōre cālīgine: *by...;* abl. of means within the abl. abs. below; crassiōre is a compar. adj.
68 **spīritū obstrūctō:** *(his) breath...;* abl. abs.; the uncle apparently had asthma or similar ailment and found it difficult to breath
clausōque stomachō: *his windpipe...;* abl. abs.; stomachus can refer, as here, to the ‘esophagus’ rather than to just the stomach itself
illī: *for that one;* dat. of interest
nātūrā: *by nature;* abl. of cause

adhūc: as yet, still, so far, 8

aqua, -ae f.: water, 6

atque: and, 16

lūmen, -inis n.: light, lamp; *pl.* eyes, 9

novus, -a, -um: new, recent; **novissimum,** last, 6

statim: immediately, 4

super: above, over, on top; upon (*acc.*), 5

Pliny the Elder likely suffered from asthma or a similar respiratory ailment where the airway swells and narrows, making it difficult to breathe properly. This explains why the author says that Pliny the Elder's esophagus was "weak and narrow by nature" (*natūrā invalidus et angustus*). These symptoms could easily flare up in the presence of gases (e.g. *odor sulphuris*), dust, and smoke brought by the eruption. Although Pliny asks for cold water to relieve the enflamed (*aestuāns*) airway, cold water and air is now known to exacerbate asthma and create even more tightening and mucus in the airways.

Asthma may also explain why Pliny alone collapsed, and the others accompanying him did not.

Why did Pliny die in the morning and not earlier?

The winds likely played a role. Recall that on the first day the winds were heading eastward across the bay toward Vesuvius. Pliny the Elder and his ships could not sail back to Misenum on the western tip of the bay because they did not have a favorable wind. When Pliny stopped at Stabiae, directly south from Vesuvius (see p. 5), the wind was driving much of the fallout away from Stabiae.

In the second letter, Pliny the Younger describes how in the early morning on the second day the cloud of ash crossed the bay and enveloped Misenum. The wind must have changed directions from east to west and now carried the ash, pumice, and gases westward across the bay.

This change of direction would have happened the same morning that Pliny collapsed and died in the first letter. If the uncle died from respiratory failure, as Pliny the Younger suggests, then perhaps the new westward-moving wind brought enough gas and debris to make the uncle's condition fatal.

Word Building: IBI "there" or "then"

For simplification, translate all the compounds of **inde** as 'then' or 'there.'

ibi: there, in that place, 5

alibī: elsewhere, in another place, 1

alius + ibi

inde: from there, then, 2

ibi + de

deinde: then, next, 3

dē + ibi + de

dein (deinde): then, next, 3

dē + ibi

proinde: then, therefore, consequently, 2

prō + ibi + de

Word Building: VERT-, VERS- "turn"

vertō, -ere, vertī, versum: turn; change, 6

āvertō, -ēre, āvertī, āversum: turn away, 2

adversus, -a, -um: facing, opposing, unfavorable; against + *acc.*, 5

obversor, -ārī, -ātus sum: turn about before

praevertō, -ere, -vertī: turn beforehand, 1

revertor, -ī, reversus sum: turn back, return

versō (1): turn, 1

20. Ubi diēs redditus—is ab eō quem novissimē viderat tertius—corpus 70
inventum integrum illaesum opertumque ut fuerat indūtus: habitus corporis
quiēscentī quam dēfūctō similior.

21. Interim Mīsēnī ego et māter—sed nihil ad historiam, nec tū aliud quam
dē exitū eius scīre voluistī. Fīnem ergō faciam. 22. Ūnum adiciam, omnia mē
quibus interfueram quaeque statim, cum maximē vēra memorantur, audieram, 75
persecūtum. Tū potissima excerptēs; aliud est enim epistulam aliud historiam,
aliud amīcō aliud omnibus scrībere. Valē.

adiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum: add, throw to
claudō, -ere, -sī, -sum: close (in), 3
dēfungor, -ī, dēfunctus sum: die; finish, 2
ergō: therefore, then, 2
excerptō, -ere, -psī, -ptum: pick out, excerpt, 2
exitus, -ūs m.: exit, destruction, death; result, 3
finis, -is m.: end; border, territory, 3
frīgidus, -a, -um: cool, cold, 2
habitus, -ūs m.: condition, appearance
historia, -ae f.: history, 3
illaesus, -a, -um: unhurt, unharmed

70 **diēs:** *daylight*

redditus (est): *was returned;* pf. pass. reddō
is (erat) ab eō (diē) quem novissimē viderat
tertius (diēs): *this (was) the third (day) from*
that (day) which he had last seen; ellipsis; Pliny
is counting inclusively: therefore, ‘two days
later’ from the time the eruption began and
turned day into night. Thus. the eruption
began on Aug. 24, the uncle died on Aug 25,
and daylight returned on Aug. 26.

novissimē: *last;* ‘most recently,’ superl. adv.

71 **inventum (est):** pf. pass., 3rd decl. neut.
corpus is nom. subject

integrum illaesum opertumque: a series of
neut. sg. nom. pred. following *inventum est* and
modifying corpus; PPP operiō

ut fuerat indūtus: *just as he...;* clause of
comparison with plpf. sum; PPP induō as pred.

habitus corporis (erat)

72 **quiēscentī quam dēfūctō:** *to (someone)...*
than to (someone)...; dat. of special adj. (here,
comparative similis); quam introduces a clause
of comparison with pres. pple quiēsco and dep.
PPP dēfungor (translate as ‘having Xed’)

73 **Mīsēnī:** *at Misenum;* locative, place where
(hoc est) nihil ad historiam: *(this is) nothing*
for history; i.e. what happened to my mother
and me is not a topic for history

induō, -ere, -duī, -dūtum: put on, clothe, 3
integer, -gra, -grum: intact, unharmed
interim: meanwhile, in the meantime, 3
intersum, -esse, -fuī: be in, take part in, 2
inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum: find, 3
memorō (1): recall, remember, 2
operiō, -īre, -uī: cover, conceal, 3
persequor, -ī, -secūtus sum: pursue, follow up
reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditum: give back, 3
tertius, -a, -um: third
potis, -e: preferable, preferred; able

nec...aliud quam: *and...no (anything) other*
than...; acc. obj. quam often introduces a clause
of comparison after neut. acc. alius

74 **eius:** *his;* i.e. the uncle’s

voluistī: 2s pf. volō

faciam: 1s fut., faciō

Ūnum: *one (thing);* neut. sg. substantive

adiciam: 1s fut. ad-iciō

omnia mē...persecūtum (esse): *that I...;* ind.
disc.; omnia is neut. pl. acc. obj. of pf. dep. inf.
persequor (translate as pf. active)

75 **quibus interfueram:** *in which I had been*
involved; dat. of compound; omnia antecedent
quaeque...audi(v)eram: *and which...;* relative
and neut. acc.; syncopated 1s plpf.

cum maximē vēra memorantur: *when true*
(things)...; Pliny notes that things that he heard
immediately after the eruption are more likely
true than things reported long afterwards
maximē: *especially;* ‘very greatly,’ superl. adv.

76 **potissima:** *the most preferable things;* neut. pl.
aliud est (scrībere) enim epistulam (et) aliud
(scrībere) historiam: *for it is one thing to...and*
another to...; ellipsis; aliuds are correlatives

77 **aliud (est) amīcō aliud omnibus scrībere:** *(it*
is) one thing to write for... (and) another thing
to write for...; ellipsis; dat. of interest

Valē: *Farewell;* sg. imperative

ad: to, toward, at, near, about (*acc.*), 24
amīcus, -ī: friend, 4
dē: (down) from, about, concerning, 16
epistula, -ae f.: letter, 5

nihil: nothing, 7
sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum: know (how), 5
ubi: where, when, 10
valeō, -ēre, -uī: fare well, be strong, 6

Even in death, Pliny the Elder remained calm

quiēscētī quam dēfūctō similior *more similar to one resting than one dead* 1. 72

Pliny the Younger has consistently portrayed his uncle in the best possible light, and his account of his uncle's corpse is no different. When Pliny uses the word *quiēscētī*, "one resting," we cannot help but recall how well the uncle slept while Pomponianus and others anxiously stayed up in the night. Throughout the letter Pliny has drawn attention to his uncle's courage and tranquility in the face of imminent danger, and he uses this last appearance to remind Tacitus to leave the same impression.

The Purpose of History for Pliny is to reveal Moral Character (III)

In the opening of the letter Pliny said that Tacitus asked: "that I write about the death of my uncle to you" (*ut tibi avunculī meī exitum scribam*), and in the concluding remarks Pliny reminds Tacitus of his singular purpose and says that "you wanted to know about his death" (*dē exitū eius scīre voluistī*).

While we moderns can approach the letter with an eye to learning objectively what happened during the eruption from first-hand witnesses, Pliny did not write with that express purpose. For Pliny, history is not about events; it is about how people respond in those events. More specifically, history provides moral examples worthy of praise and imitation and examples worthy of contempt. Tacitus wanted to know how the admiral of the Roman fleet faced adversity in his final hours, and Pliny used this opportunity to depict his uncle's character as unflinchingly heroic, sober, and calm until the end.

Word Building: PERI-, "cover"

All three verbs below derive from *pariō, parīre*, "get," but it is simpler to remember that **operiō**, "cover," is the opposite of **aperiō**, "open," (i.e. "uncover") and **reperiō** is similar to *aperiō* and means "find" or "discover" (i.e. "pull back the cover")

aperiō, -īre, -uī, apertum: open, 4

operiō, -īre, -uī: cover, conceal, 3

reperiō -īre -pperī -pertum: find, 1

"Cover" and "covert" are derivatives for **operiō**. "Aperture" is a common derivative for **aperiō**.

3rd I-Stem Nouns and Adjectives

All 3rd decl. adjectives and a small subset of 3rd decl. nouns are i-stem and have an extra 'i' not found in some forms of regular 3rd declension. Note the endings in boldface below.

	omnis, omne: every, all		ignis, is f.: fire		mare, -is n.: sea			
	m/f.	neut.						
Nom.	omnis	omnēs	omne	omnia	ignis	ignēs	mare	maria
Gen.	omnis	omnium	omnis	omnium	ignis	ignium	maris	marium
Acc.	omnī	omnibus	omnī	omnibus	ignī	ignibus ¹	marī	maribus
Acc.	omnem	omnēs	omne	omnia	ignem	ignēs	mare	maria
Abl.	omnī	omnibus	omnī	omnibus	ignī	ignibus	marī	maribus

C. Plīnius Tacitō suō s. 1

Ais tē adductum litterīs quās exigentī tibi dē morte avunculī meī scrīpsī,
cupere cognōscere, quōs ego Mīsēnī relictus—id enim ingressus abrūperam—
nōn sōlum metūs vērūm etiam cāsūs pertulerim.

‘Quamquam animus meminisse horret, ... 5
incipiam.’

2. Profectō avunculō ipse reliquum tempus studiīs—ideō enim remāseram—
impēdī; mox balineum cēna somnus inquietus et brevis. 3. Praecesserat per
multōs diēs tremor terrae, minus formīdolōsus quia Campāniae solitus; illā
vērō nocte ita invaluit, ut nōn movērī omnia sed verī crēderentur. 10

abrupō, -ere, -rūpī: break off, burst from
addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum: draw/lead to, 2
aiō, ais, ait; ajunt: say, speak; assert
balineum, -ī n.: bath, 2
brevis, -e: short, shallow
Campānia, -ae f.: Campania, 2
cēna, -ae f.: dinner
cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum: learn, know, 2
cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum: desire, 2
exigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum: drive, urge; spend, 3
formīdolōsus, -a, -um: formidable
ideō: for this reason, therefore
impēdō, -ere, -pendī: spend, pay; weigh, 2
ingredior, -ī, -gressus sum: step in, enter, 2

inquietus, -a, -um: restless, not restful
invalēscō, -ere, -uī: become strong
littera, -ae f.: (alphabet) letter; *pl.* letter, 2
meminī, -isse: remember, recall, 3
perferō, -re, -tulī, -lātum: carry through, endure
praecēdō, -ere, cessī, -cessum: precede, surpass
proficīscor, -ī, -fectus: set out, make forth, 3
reliquus, -a, um: remaining, left (over), 3
remanēō, ēre, -mansī: remain
soleō, -ēre, solitus sum: be accustomed, 3
studium, -ī n.: enthusiasm; study, pursuit, 3
Tacitus, -ī m.: Tacitus, 2
tempus, -oris n.: time, 2

1 **C. Plīnius Tacitō suō s(alutat):** *Gaius Plinius (gives greetings) to his Tacitus*

2 **Ais:** *You say;* 2s pres. aiō

Tē... cupere cognōscere: *that you...;* ind. disc. cognōscere is a complementary inf. after cupere
adductum litterīs: *drawn by the letter;* PPP addūcō and abl. of means; pl. litterae refers to letter 6.16, the previous letter about Vesuvius
quās...scrīpsī: *which...*

exigentī tibi: *for you driving me;* i.e. urging me dat. ind. obj. and pres. pple exigō (ex + agō)

3 **quōs ego.... nōn sōlum metūs vērūm etiam cāsūs pertulerim:** *what not only fears but also misfortunes I...;* ind. question with 1s pf. subj. perferō ‘endure;’ vērūm, ‘but,’ is an adverbial acc. and often adversative

Mīsēnī: *at Misenum;* locative place where
relictus: *left behind;* PPP relinquō, left while his uncle led the Roman fleet to Stabiae

Id...ingressus abrūperam: dep. PPP ingredior: translate as ‘having Xed,’ id, ‘it,’ refers to what happened to the author and mother during the eruption; Pliny mentioned them both in the

conclusion of the last letter (6.16) but broke off (cf. *abrūperam*) mid-sentence and suggested that it was a topic Tacitus did not ask to hear.

5 **‘Quamquam...horret...incipiam’:** *although the mind shudders to recall, I will begin;* Pliny here quotes Vergil’s *Aeneid* Book 2.12-13, where Aeneas speaks before Dido at a banquet and begins his recollection of the fall of Troy

7 **Profectō avunculō:** abl. abs.; dep. PPP proficīscor: translate as ‘having Xed’

ipse...impēdī: *(I) myself...;* 1s pf. impēdō

8 **mox (erant) balineum (et) cēnā (et) somnus inquietus et brevis.:** *soon (there was)...;* three subjects completed sequentially through time

9 **minus:** *less;* comparative adv.

Campāniae: *in...;* locative, place where

solitus: *accustomed;* i.e. customary

10 **illā...nocte:** *(on)...;* abl. time when

vērō: *in truth, in fact;* adv.

(tremor) invaluit: supply a subject

ut...omnia...crēderentur: *that all things...;* result clause with impf. pass. subj.; pres. pass. inf. moveō and vertō, ‘overturn’

horreō, -ēre, -uī: shudder, stand on end, bristle, 4 **moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum:** move, motivate, 5
incipiō, -ere, incēpī, inceptum: begin, take on, 4 **sōlus, -a, -um:** alone, only, sole, lonely, 10
minor, minus: smaller, less, 5

Pliny's Second Letter Contrasts his own Inaction with his Uncle's Heroism

In this second and final letter about the eruption, Pliny offers a personal account of what happened to himself and his mother Plinia Marcella as they escaped from Misenum, a city on the western tip of the bay opposite Vesuvius. Pliny was only 17 years old at the time, and his actions will seem reasonable for anyone unaware of the true threat of a volcano. But, just as Pliny elevates his uncle's response to the eruption in the first letter, the author draws attention to his own inaction in the second.

Why does Pliny Cite Vergil's *Aeneid* 2.12-3?

The eruption was undoubtedly the most catastrophic event in Pliny's life, and the quotation draws attention to this fact. In the *Aeneid* Book 1, Aeneas and the Trojans who survived the fall of Troy are shipwrecked in North Africa on their way to Italy. There, they meet Dido, queen of Carthage, who offers hospitality and invites Aeneas to recall the fall of Troy at a banquet. In Book 2, Aeneas offers the banqueters an eye-witness account and begins his recollection with the line quoted by Pliny.

Why Pliny begins with Mundane Tasks that Mimic his Uncle's

Pliny's actions at the beginning of this second letter closely mimic those of his uncle at the house of Pomponianus:

mox (a) balineum (b) cēna (c) somnus inquietus et brevis l. 6

While the uncle set out across the bay, Pliny stayed and studied for the rest of the day. Then, he curiously mentions that he (a) took a bath, (b) ate dinner, and finally (c) went to sleep. Why does Pliny mention such mundane tasks rather than give detailed observations of the eruption?

Pliny likely includes details about his bath, dinner, and sleep in order to encourage Tacitus to compare Pliny's less-than-heroic response to that of his uncle. Note that while the uncle slept so soundly that he snored loudly, Pliny is quick to point out that his sleep was "restless and short." Pliny was filled with the sort of anxiety that his uncle seemed to lack.

Word Building: FER-, TUL-, LAT- "carry" "endure"

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum: carry, bring; endure, 10	carry	
auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum: carry away, 2		+ away (au = ab)
conferō, -ferre, -tulī: bring together, gather, 1		+ together
dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum: report, offer, 3		+ away to
effērō, -ferre, -tulī, ēlātum: raise, lift up, 1		+ out
īnferō, -ferre, -tulī: carry/bring on, 1		+ in/on
offerō, -ferre, obtulī: offer, bear to, 1		+ to
perferō, -re, -tulī, -lātum: carry through, endure, 1		+ through
praeferō, -ferre, -tulī -lātum: prefer; put before, 1		+ before
prōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus: bring forth, 1		+ forth, in front
referō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum: report; say, 8		+ back

4. Irrūpit cubiculum meum māter; surgēbam invicem, sī quiēsceret excitātūrus. Resēdimus in āreā domūs, quae mare ā tēctīs modicō spatiō dīvidēbat. 5. Dubitō cōstantiam vocāre an imprūdentiam dēbeam—agēbam enim duodevīcēnsimum annum—poscō librum Titī Līvī, et quasi per ōtium legō atque etiam ut coeperam excerptō. Ecce amīcus avunculī quī nūper ad eum ex Hispāniā vēnerat, ut mē et mātrem sedentēs, mē vērō etiam legentem videt, illīus patientiam sēcūritātem meam corripit. Nihilō sēgnius ego intentus in librum. 15

ārea, -ae f.: courtyard, open space, 3

cōstantia, -ae f.: constancy

cubiculum, -ī n.: bedroom, 2

dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsum: divide, 2

dubitō (1): doubt, hesitate, 2

duodevīcēnsimus, -a, -um: eighteenth

ecce: behold, 3

excerptō, -ere, -psī, -ptum: pick out, excerpt, 2

Hispānia, -ae f.: Hispania, Spain, 2

imprūdentia, -ae f.: imprudence, foolishness

invicem: in turn, 2

11 **surgēbam:** *I was getting up*; Pliny was already rising when his mother entered

sī quiēsceret: *if she were...*; contrary to fact condition (sī impf. subj., impf. subj.) with fut. pple excitātūrūs in place of the apodosis

12 **excitātūrus (matrem meam):** *intending to...*; fut. pple excitō, ‘wake up,’ expressing purpose
domūs: gen. sg.; domus has mixed 2nd and 4th decl. endings

quae...dīvidēbat: *which was separating...*; i.e. a courtyard was situated between the sea and the house; there may have been multiple courtyards and buildings in this complex; mare is acc. obj.

ā tēctīs: *from the house*; ‘roofs,’ synecdoche

modicō spatiō: *with...*; abl. degree of difference

13 **cōstantiam vocāre an imprūdentiam dēbeam:** *whether I ought to call (it)...or...*; ind. question with 1s pres. subj. dēbeō; vocāre governs a double acc. (obj. and pred.): supply ‘it,’ i.e. studying Livy, as obj. of vocāre

agēbam: *I was living*; common idiom with acc. duration (for...); equiv. to ‘I was X years old’

14 **duodevīcēnsimum annum:** Pliny is counting inclusively: it is his 18th year, but we today would say that Pliny is 17 years old. We use this evidence to assign Pliny’s birth to AD 61 or the first half of 62

irrupō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum: burst/break in

Līvius, -ī m.: Livy

modicus, -a, -um: moderate, small, 2

nūper: recently

ōtium, -ī n.: leisure, free time, peace, 2

patientia, -ae f.: patience, endurance

sēcūritās, -tātis f.: lack of concern or care, 2

sedeō, -ere, sedī: sit, 3

sēgnis, -e: inactive, slow, sluggish

spatium, -ī: space, distance

Titus, -ī m.: Titus

Titī Līvī: *of...*; gen., the historian (59 BC to AD 17) who wrote a vast history of Rome called *Ab Urbe Condita*, which is still read today; this is likely the assignment his uncle had assigned Pliny in the first letter

quasi...legō atque...excerptō: *as if...*; conditional comparison with two verbs
per ōtium: *at leisure*; over his free time

15 **ut coeperam:** *as...*; clause of comparison with plpf. act. coepī

excerptō: *I am excerpting*; i.e. picking out and perhaps writing out passages for study

16 **ut mē et mātrem...videt:** *as he...*; temporal clause with ut + indicative

(et) mē vērō etiam legentem: *(and) me actually even...*; another object of videt

17 **illīus patientiam:** *the patience of that (woman)*; i.e. Plinia; pronomial gen. sg. illa

(et) sēcūritātem meam

corripit: *he seizes upon...*; i.e. he attacks or scolds; corripīō elsewhere means ‘seize/snatch up’ but here ‘seizes on and attacks’ verbally

Nihilō sēgnius: *no less actively, none the slower*; ‘less active by nothing:’ comparative adv. sēgnis and abl. of degree of difference

intentus (eram): *I was intent, I was focused*; PPP intendō as nom. pred.; add linking verb

18 **In librum:** *upon...*

annus, -ī m.: year, 8	dēbeō, -ēre, dēbuī: ought, owe, 5
coepī, coepisse, coeptum: begin, 4	intendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum: stretch out, aim, 4
corripīō, -ere, -uī, -reptum: snatch (up), 5	vocō (1): call, 6

Pliny's Humility and Survivor's Guilt

Pliny could have portrayed himself positively to Tacitus and not acknowledged the small embarrassing details. But, Pliny takes every opportunity to humble and disparage himself. Each passage below from lines 3-8 gives Tacitus and readers reason to criticize Pliny's actions in hindsight:

1. Dubitō cōstantiam vocāre an imprūdentiam dēbeam
2. poscō librum Titī Līvī, et quasi per ōtium legō
3. mē et mātrem sedentēs, mē vērō etiam legentem videt
4. illīus patientiam sēcūrītātem meam corripit
5. Nihilō sēgnius ego intentus in librum.

Some scholars argue that Pliny suffers from **survivor's guilt**. Pliny's uncle was a father figure, and Pliny refused an offer to accompany his uncle across the bay. Pliny survived, and his uncle did not. On this interpretation, Pliny's efforts to humble himself is one more way to exalt his uncle's actions.

The Friend from Hispania highlights Pliny's Inaction

In the previous letter Pliny used Pomponianus' trembling, sleeplessness, and fear at Stabiae as a way to highlight his uncle's desire to console his friends and confront the disaster with equanimity.

The friend from Hispania plays a similar role in the second letter but instead draws attention to Pliny's lack of initiative and urgency. As the friend notes, Pliny is guilty of **sēcūrītātem**, a "lack of concern," that is inappropriate on this occasion.

Word Building RUMP-, RUPT- "burst"

rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptum: burst, break in, 2	burst
abrupō, -ere, -rūpī: break off, burst from, 1	+ from
interrumpō, -ere, -rūpī: interrupt, break in	+ in, between
irrupō, -ere, -rupī, -ruptum: break/burst in, 1	+ in

Word Building RAP-, RIP-, REPT- "seize" "snatch"

rapiō, -ere, -uī, raptum: snatch, seize; kidnap, 1	
rapidus, -a, -um: swift, grasping, 1	snatch
corripīō, -ere, -uī, -reptum: snatch (up), 5	+ up (cum is often an intensive)
ēripīō, -ere, -uī: rescue, snatch from, 4	+ out, from
prōripīō, -ere: snatch; + sē, rush out, 1	+ forth, out

Word Building: Synonyms for "Ask"

poscō, -ere, poposcī: ask, request, demand, 4
dēposcō, -ere, poposcī: ask, request, demand, 1
exposcō, -ere, -poposcī: ask, request, demand, 1
petō, -ere, -īvi: seek, ask, head for, 11
oppetō, -ere, īvī, ītum: seek (death), encounter, 1
rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum: ask, question, 5
quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, -sītum: search, ask, 2
adquirō, -ere, -quisīvī, -quisītum: acquire, 1
requirō, -ere, -sī, -sītum: search/seek/ask for, 3

6. Iam hōrā diēi prīmā, et adhūc dubius et quasi languidus diēs. Iam quassātis circumiacentibus tēctīs, quamquam in apertō locō, angustō tamen, magnus et certus ruīnae metus. 7. Tum dēmum excēdere oppidō vīsum; sequitur vulgus attonitum, quodque in pavōre simile prūdentiae, aliēnum cōnsilium suō praefert, ingentīque agmine abeuntēs premit et impellit. 8. Ēgressī tēcta cōnsistimus. Multa ibi mīranda, multās formīdinēs patimur. Nam vehicula quae prōdūcī iusserāmus, quamquam in plānissimō campō, in contrāriās partēs agēbantur, ac nē lapidibus quidem fulta in eōdem vestīgiō quiēscēbant.

abeō, -īre, -ī, itum: go away, 3
agmen, -inis n.: column, line, formation, 3
aliēnus, -a, -um: of another, another's, 3
angustus, -a, -um: narrow, 2
attonitus, -a, -um: thunder-struck, astonished, 2
campus, -ī m.: field, 2
circumiacēō, -ēre: lie around
cōnsilium, -ī: plan, idea, 3
cōnsistō, -ere, -stītī: stop, stand still
contrārius, -a, -um: opposite, contrary, 2
dēmum: at length, finally
dubius, -a, -um: doubtful, wavering, uncertain, 3
excēdō, -ere, cessī, -cessum: go out, depart, 2
formīdō, -inis f.: dread, fear, 3
fulciō, -ere, -sī, fultum: prop up

19 **hōrā...prīmā:** *at...*; abl. time when; i.e. dawn
diēi: *of...*; gen. of the whole (i.e. partitive gen.)
et adhūc dubius...et...languidus: *both...and...*
quasi languidus: *as if...*; clause of comparison
diēs (erat): *the daylight (was)...*; Pliny notes the lack of daylight caused by the eruption;
Iam quassātis...tēctīs: *the houses...*; abl. abs. with PPP quassō; tēctīs, 'roofs' or 'houses,' is modified by pres. pple circumiacentibus
20 **quamquam...tamen:** *although...nevertheless...*; concessive in sense
magnus et certus (erat) ruīnae metus: *the fear...*; ellipsis, ruīnae is an objective gen.
21 **oppidō:** *from...*; abl. of separation
vīsum (est): *it seemed (best)*; impersonal pf. pass. videor, 'seem (best)'
sequitur: pres. dep.: translate as active
vulgus attonitum: irreg. 2nd decl. neuter nom.
22 **quodque in pavōre (est) simile prūdentiae:** *and what in a panic (is) similar to prudence;* relative clause; the antecedent of quod is the entire clause which follows; simile is nom. sg. and prūdentiae is dat. of special adj. similis
aliēnum cōnsilium suō (cōnsiliō) praefert: *(and the crowd) prefers another's plan to their*

hōra, -ae f.: hour, 2
impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum: impel, push, 3
languidus, -a, -um: languid, faint, weak
lapis, -idis m.: stone, 3
mīrandus, -a, -um: amazing, wondrous
oppidum, -ī n.: town, 2
pavor, pavōris m.: pale fear, panic, 2
plānus, -a, -um: flat, level
praefērō, -ferre, -tulī -lātum: prefer; put before
prōdūcō, -ere, -dūxī: lead/bring forth or out
prūdentia, -ae f.: prudence, good sense
quassō (1): shake, shatter
ruīna, -ae f.: downfall, fall, 2
vehiculum, -ī n.: carriage, vehicle, 2
vulgus, -ī n.: masses, multitude

own; dat. of compound verb prae-ferō; -que in quodque joins the verbs sequitur and praefert the vulgus is plural when acting individually
23 **ingentī agmine:** *with...*; abl. means; an agmen is a 'drive' (>agō): here a 'column' of people
abeuntēs: *(those)...*; acc. obj. pres. pple ab-eō, abīre; vulgus is the subject of the two verbs
Ēgressī: *(we)...*; 1p nom. dep. PPP ēgredior: translate as 'having Xed,' tēcta is acc. object
tēcta: i.e. buildings in the town
24 **cōnsistimus:** *we stop*; 'stand still'
Multa...mīranda: neut. acc. substantive: add 'things'
(et) multās formīdinēs
patimur: *we experience*; 'suffer,' 1s dep. patior
25 **prōdūcī:** *to be...*; pres. pass. inf.
in contrāriās partēs agēbantur: *were being driven in contrary directions*; i.e. as a result of the earthquakes and perhaps heavy ash
26 **nē lapidibus quidem:** *not even with...*; nē... quidem, 'not even,' often emphasizes the intervening word; here, abl. of means
fulta: PPP fulciō (derivative: fulcrum!) modifies the understood neuter subject vehicula
(vehicula) quiēscēbant: subject understood

ac : and, 5	patior, -ī, passus sum : suffer, endure; allow, 7
īdem, eadem, idem : same, 10	premō, -ere, pressī, -sum : press, repress/hide, 4
ingēns, -entis : huge, immense, 10	prīmus, -a, -um : first; leading, as leader, 20
nē : lest, that not, 15	sequor, -ī, secūtus sum : follow, pursue, 8
pars, -tis f. : part, side, direction; floor, 7	vestīgium, -ī n. : footprint, tracks, 4

Pliny describes the Earthquakes at Dawn.

The earthquakes mentioned by Pliny this morning on August 25th are the same tremors that forced the uncle and Pomponianus out of the house in the first letter. Pliny writes in line 19 that the daylight was uncertain and weak, and this lack of visibility may explain why Pliny does not give a detailed description of what was happening across the bay in the direction of Mt. Vesuvius at this time.

Word Building SEQU-/SECU- “follow”

sequor, -ī, secūtus sum : follow, pursue, 8	follow
īnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum : follow, ensue, 1	+ in
persequor, -ī, persecūtus sum : pursue, 1	+ through
prōsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum : pursue, escort, 2	+ forward, in front
subsequor, -ī, secūtus sum : follow after, 1	+ after, behind

Word Building CED-/CESS- “move” or “go”

cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum : go (away), withdraw; yield, 2	move/go
abscēdō, -ere, -cessī : go away, depart, 1	+ from
accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum : approach, 3	+ to
dēcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum : depart; die, 2	+ from
discēdō, -ere, -cessī : go away, depart, 1	+ apart/in a different direction
excēdō, -ere, cessī, -cessum : go out, depart, 2	+ out, from
incēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum : go, proceed, strut, 1	+ in
praecēdō, -ere, cessī, -cessum : precede, surpass, 1	+ before, in front
prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī : proceed, 2	+ before, in front
recēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum : go back, 1	+ back

Word Building GRAD-/GRESS- “step”

gradior, -ī, gressus sum : step, walk, proceed, 2	step
dīgredior, -ī, -gressus sum : step away, depart	+ apart, away
ēgredior, -ī, -gressus sum : go out, disembark, 4	+ out
ingredior, -ī, -gressus sum : step in, enter, 2	+ in, into
regredior, -ī, regressus sum : return, 1	+ back
gradus, -ūs m. : step, 3	

9. Praetereā mare in sē resorbērī et tremōre terrae quasi repellī vidēbāmus. Certē prōcesserat lītus, multaque animālia maris siccīs harēnīs dētīnēbat. Ab alterō latere nūbēs ātra et horrenda, igneī spīritūs tortīs vibrātisque discursibus rupta, in longās flammārum figūrās dehīscēbat; fulguribus illae et similēs et 30 maiōrēs erant. 10. Tum vērō īdem ille ex Hispāniā amīcus ācrius et īstantius ‘Sī frāter’ inquit ‘tuus, tuus avunculus vīvit, vult esse vōs salvōs; sī perit, superstitēs voluit. Proinde quid cessātīs ēvādere?’ Respondimus nōn commissūrōs nōs ut dē salūte illīus incertī nostrae cōnsulerēmus.

ācer, ācris, ācre: sharp; fierce, 3
alter, -era, -erum: other (of two), 2
animal, animalis n.: animal
cessō (1): cease from, be idle
committō, -ere: commit, commence, arrange, 3
cōsulō, -ere: consult, console, consider (dat.), 3
dehīscō, -ere: split open, yawn, gape, 2
dētīnēō, -ēre, -uī: hold back, detain, 3
discursus, -ūs m.: running (to and fro)
ēvādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsūm: go, escape
frāter, -tris m.: brother, 3
fulgor (fulgur) m.: flash (lightning), lightning, 2
harēna, -ae f.: sand, 2
Hispānia, -ae f.: Hispania, Spain, 2
horrendus, -a, -um: horrible, horrendous, 3
igneus, -a, -um: fiery, of fire, 2

27 **mare...resorbērī...repellī:** *that the sea was...;* ind. disc.; 2 pres. pass. inf.; mare is acc. subj.
in sē: *into itself;* the water was receding away from the coastline as a result of the earthquakes
tremōre terrae: *by...;* abl. of cause
quasi repellī: *as if (the sea) was...;* pass. inf.

28 **prōcesserat lītus:** the shore became wider as the water receded and the seabed became part of the extended beach

(in) siccīs harēnīs

dētīnēbat: neut. sg. lītus is still the subject

Ab alterō latere: i.e. on the land side near Vesuvius as opposed to the shoreline and sea

29 **nūbēs:** fem. sg.: modified by fem. sg. adjs.
igneī spīritūs... discursibus: *zig-zags of fiery discharge;* i.e. forked lightning; abl. of means with PPP; subjective gen. (i.e. fiery breath runs)
tortīs vibrātisque: PPP torqueō and vibrō; vibrō likely refers to the flashing of the bolts

30 **rupta:** *having been ruptured/broken;* PPP rumpō, modifying nūbēs
(et) in longās...figūrās: i.e. flickers or tongues of fire; the next clause explains the figūrās

īstanter: urgently, pressingly
latus, -eris n.: side, 3
pereō, -ire, perī: pass away, perish, 2
praetereā: besides, in addition, 2
prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī: proceed, move forward, 2
proinde: then, therefore, consequently, 2
repellō, -ere, -pulī: drive back, repulse
resorbeō, -ēre: suck back
rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptum: burst, break in, 2
salūs, -ūtis f.: safety, refuge; health, 2
salvus, -a, -um: safe, sound, 2
siccus, -a, -um: dry
superstes, -stītis: surviving
vibrō (1): vibrate, brandish, shake, 2
vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctum: live, 3
vōs, vestrum, vōbīs, vōs, vōbīs: you (all)

dehīscēbat: nūbēs is still subject
fulguribus: *to..., than...;* dat. of special adj. with similēs or abl. of comparison with maiōrēs
illae...erant: *those were...;* i.e. the figūrāe
et similēs et maiōrēs: *both...and...;* nom. pred. after erant; comparative of magnus

31 **īdem ille...amīcus:** nom. subject
ācrius et īstantius: comparatives with inquit
 32 **Sī frāter tuus (et) tuus avunculus vīvit:** the friend is addressing the mother and author
vult: 3s pres. volō
esse vōs salvōs: *that...;* ind. disc.

33 **(esse vōs) superstitēs:** *that (you)...;* ind. disc.
quid cessātīs ēvādere: *Why...?;* 2p cessō + inf.

34 **nōn commissūrōs (esse)...ut cōnsulerēmus:** *that we will not commit/begin to consult...;* lit. ‘will not arrange that we consult’ ind. disc. with fut. inf. committō, which governs a noun result clause with impf. subj. as its object

dē salūte illīus incertī: *(while) uncertain about that one’s safety;* nom. pl. modifying 1p subject ‘we,’ illīus is gen. sg. and refers to the uncle
nostrae (salūtī): *for our (safety);* dat. purpose

āter, ātra, ātrum: dark, black, 5
nōs, nōbīs, nōs, nōbīs: we, 8

noster, -ra, -rum: our (own), ours, 7
torqueō, -ēre, torsī, tortum: twist, 4

Pliny witnesses the sea withdraw from the shoreline and lightning in the eruption column.

The temors must have created a tidal wave, which is often preceded by a receding shoreline such as the one Pliny observed. The trough of this tidal wave wave is striking the shore before the crest. Lightning is not common in every eruption but is present in eruptions similar to the one on Mt. Vesuvius. Such eruptions are called “Plinian Eruptions.” The column of ash and superheated gas leads to an accumulation of electric charge that is discharged as lightning within column itself.

Indirect Discourse in Primary and Secondary Sequence

In secondary sequence (main verb in the past), translate a present inf. as imperfect, perfect inf. as pluperfect, and future inf. (will) as future in secondary sequence (would):

	Active	Passive
Present inf.	Plīnium nūbem vidēre <i>(says) that Pliny is seeing (sees) the cloud</i> <i>(said) that Pliny was seeing the cloud</i>	nūbem ā Plīniō vidērī <i>(says) that the cloud is seen by Pliny</i> <i>(said) that the cloud were seen by Pliny</i>
Perfect inf.	Plīnium nūbem vidisse <i>(says) that Pliny has seen (saw) the cloud</i> <i>(said) that Pliny had seen the cloud</i>	nūbem ā Plīniō vīsam esse <i>(says) that the cloud has been seen (was seen) by P.</i> <i>(said) that the cloud had been seen by Pliny</i>
Future inf.	Plīnium nūbem vīsūrum esse <i>(says) that Pliny will see the cloud</i> <i>(said) that Pliny would see the cloud</i>	

Word Building TORQ-, TORT- “twist”

torqueō, -ēre, torsī, tortum: twist, 4	twist
contorqueō, -ēre, -torsī, -tortum: twist, hurl, 2	+ (with intensity)
intorqueō, -ēre, -torsī, -tortum: hurl, twist, 2	+ in, on
dētorqueō, -ēre, -rsī, -tum: twist off, turn from, 1	+ from, off

It’s the same -DEM ending!

This mnemonic is just a clever reminder that, when **is, ea, id** ends in the enclitic **-dem**, the resulting adjective means “same.” Note below the spelling changes that occur with the addition of **-dem**.

Nom.	īdem (is + dem)	eadem	idem (id + dem)
Gen.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
Acc.	eundem (eum+dem)	eandem (eam+dem)	idem (id + dem)
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem
Nom.	eīdem	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	eōrundem (eōrum+dem)	eārundem (eārum+dem)	eōrundem (eum+dem)
Dat.	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
Acc.	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

Very important: Readers often confuse **īdem** and **idem**. **īdem** is masculine (is+dem), while **idem** is neuter (id+dem). On the facing page, **īdem** means “the same man” rather than **idem**, “the same thing.”

11. Nōn morātus ultrā prōripit sē effūsōque cursū periculō aufertur. Nec 35
 multō post illa nūbēs dēscendere in terrās, operīre maria; cīn_xerat Capreās et
 absconderat, Mīsēnī quod prōcurrit abstulerat. 12. Tum māter ōrāre hortārī
 iūbēre, quōquō modō fugerem; posse enim iuvenem, sē et annīs et corpore
 gravem bene moritūram, sī mihi causa mortis nōn fuisset. Ego contrā salvum
 mē nisi ūnā nōn futūrum; dein manum eius amplexus addere gradum cōgō. 40
 Pāret aegrē incūsātque sē, quod mē morētur.

13. Iam cinis, adhūc tamen rārus. Respiciō: dēnsa cālīgō tergīs imminēbat,
 quae nōs torrentis modō īnfūsa terrae sequēbātur. ‘Dēflectāmus,’ inquam
 ‘dum vidēmus, nē in viā strātī comitantium turbā in tenebrīs obterāmur.’

abscondō, -ere, -ī, -itum: hide away, conceal, 2
addō, -ere, -didī, -ditum: add, give in addition, 2
aeger, -gra, -grum: sick, weary; 1
amplector, -plectī, -plexus sum: embrace,
 enclose, 3
auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum: carry away, 2
bene: well, 2
cālīgō, -inis f.: mist, vapor, 3
Capreae, -ārum f.: Capri (island)
cingō, -ere, cinxī, cinctum: belt, gird; equip, 3
cōgō, cōgere, cōgē, cōactum: collect; compel, 2
comitō (1): accompany, attend, 2
dēflectō, -ere, flexī, flexus: bend/turn aside, 2
dein (deinde): then, next, 3
dēnsus, -a, -um: thick, 3
dēscendō, ere, ī, -ēsum: descend
gradus, -ūs m.: step, 3
hortor, -ārī, hortātus sum: encourage, urge, 2
immineō, -ēre: tower over, threaten; imminent, 3

incūsō (1): accuse, blame
īfundō, -ere, -dī, -fūsus: pour/spread on, 2
iuvenis, -is m.: juvenile, a youth, 2
modus, ī n.: manner, way, 2
morior, morī, mor(i)tus sum: die, 3
obterō (1): tread or trample upon
operiō, -īre, -uī: cover, conceal, 3
pāreō, -ēre, paruī: obey
prōcurrō, -ere, -currī: run forward
prōripiō, -ere: snatch; + sē, rush out
quisquis, quicquid: whoever, whatever, 2
rārus, -a, -um: scattered, far apart
respiciō, -ere, -spexī: look back (at), 3
salvus, -a, -um: safe, sound, 2
tenebrae, -ārum f.: darkness, gloom, 3
torrens, torrentis m.: torrent, stream
turba, -ae f.: crowd, mob, 2
ultrā: beyond; farther; further
via, -ae f.: way, road, path, 2

35 **nōn morātus ultrā:** (he) not having delayed
 further; dep. PPP moror, translate ‘having Xed’
prōripit sē: i.e. runs off
effūsō cursō: with effusive running; or ‘poured
 out running,’ i.e. intense running; PPP effundō
periculō: from...; abl. of separation
aufertur: 3s pres. pass. au-ferō

36 **nec multō post:** not much later; ‘not later by
 much,’ abl. of degree of difference; post is adv.
dēscendere...(et) operīre: historical infs. with
 illa nūbēs as nom. subject: translate as impf.
 tense verbs dēscendēbat and operiēbat
in terrās: onto...

Capreās: Capri; an island outside the bay
 37 **(et) Mīsēnī:** and at Misenum; locative, place
 where or partitive gen.: ‘(that part) of Misenum’
(id) quod prōcurrit: what runs forth (into the
 sea); i.e. the part of Misenum that juts out into

the bay; ‘(that) which,’ relative clause, the
 missing antecedent is obj. of abstulerat
abstulerat: had carried off; i.e. covered over;
 plpf. auferō
māter ōrāre hortārī (et) iūbēre: mother kept
 pleading..., kept..., kept...; historical infs. with
 nom. subject: translate as iterative impf. verbs
 38 **quōquō modō fugerem:** in whatever way I
 flee; relative of indirect command (=ut quōquō
 modō fugerem) with 1s impf. subj.; indef.
 relative pronoun quisquis and abl. of manner
posse enim iuvenem (fugere): for (mother says
 that) a young man...; ind. disc. where we must
 assume the mother is talking; pres. inf. possum
sē...moritūram (esse), sī...nōn fuisset: (and)
 that she would die well..., if she had not been...;
 i.e. ‘I will die well, if I am not the cause of your
 death;’ ind. disc. of a fut. more vivid condition

- (sī fut. pf., fut.) in secondary sequence: the main verb is made a fut. inf. (morior) and the subordinate verb becomes plpf. subj. (sum)
- et annis et corpore:** *both in...and in...;* abl. of respect with gravem, which modifies sē
- 39 **mihi:** *for me;* dat. of interest
- Ego (dīcō) contrā:** *I (say) in reply*
- salvum mē...futūrum (esse):** *that I...;* ind. disc. with fut. inf. sum
- 40 **nisi ūnā:** *except together;* ūnā is an adv.
- eius:** *her*
- amplexus:** dep. PPP: translate ‘having Xed’
- (eam) cōgō:** *I compel (her), I drive (her);* >agō
- 41 **aegrē:** *reluctantly;* ‘sickly’ adv.
- quod mē morētur:** *because...;* pres. subj. dep. moror, ‘delay,’ of alleged cause (the mother’s
- point of view); in short, this is implied ind. disc. (i.e. ‘she blames that she is responsible because she delays me) where all subordinate clauses become subjunctive
- 42 **cīnis (erat):** *(there was)...*;
- tergīs:** *over our backs;* dat. of compound verb
- 43 **torrentis modō:** *in the manner of...;* abl. manner with gen.
- īnfūsa:** PPP īfundō
- terrae:** *on...;* dat. of compound verb īnfūsa
- Deflectāmus:** *let us...;* 1p hortatory pres. subj.
- 44 **nē...obterāmur:** *so that...may not...;* negative purpose clause with pres. pass. subj.
- in viā strātī:** *laid low on the street;* PPP sternō
- comitantium:** *of (those)...*; pres. pple comitō
- turbā:** abl. of means
- causa, -ae f.:** reason, cause; for the sake of (*gen.*), 9
- contrā:** opposite, facing (*acc.*), 4
- dum:** while, as long as, until, 6
- effundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum:** pour/spread out, 4
- manus, -ūs f.:** hand, 14
- moror, -ārī, -ātus sum:** delay, linger, 5
- post:** after, behind (*acc.*), 4
- sternō, -ere, strāvī, strātum:** lay (low), 4
- tergum, -ī n.:** back (of body), rear; hide, 4

The wind changes from eastward to westward and brings a cloud of ash to Misenum.

Plinia Marcella as Dutiful Mother

Pliny highlights his mother’s self-sacrifice, just as he highlights his uncle’s equanimity. Plinia Marcella insists that she be left behind and declares that she will have a good death, if she is not the reason for her son’s death. Note how Pliny uses verbs and asyndeton in 3-7 (e.g. *ōrāre hortārī iubēre... pāret aegrē incūsātque sē*) to convey the forcefulness of his mother’s willingness to sacrifice herself.

Historical Infinitives

Historical infinitives have a nominative subject, are present tense in form, and are translated in the **imperfect** tense. Greenough’s *Latin Grammar* states “This construction is not strictly historical, but rather descriptive, and is never used to state a mere historical fact” (G. 463). We call it “historical” because it is common among historians (Livy, Sallust, Tacitus, etc.), not because it suggests accuracy.

nūbēs dēscendere	<i>a cloud was descending...</i>	l. 36
(et nūbēs) operīre maria	<i>(and the cloud) was covering the sea</i>	l. 36
māter ōrāre hortārī iubēre	<i>mother was pleading, was urging, and was ordering</i>	l. 37

Word Building MORA- “delay” vs. MORI-, MORT- “die”

Both **moror** and **morior** are used on the facing page. Despite the similarity in spelling, they both come from different roots. Moratorium, i.e. delay, is a good derivative to help remember moror.

moror, -ārī, -ātus sum: delay, linger, 5

mora, -ae f.: delay, hesitation, 2

morior, morī, mor(i)tuus sum: die, 3

mors, -rtis f.: death, 7

immortālis, -e: immortal, 1

mortālitās, -tātis f.: mortality, 1

morbus, -ī m.: disease, illness, 2

14. Vix cōnsiderāmus, et nox—nōn quālis illūnis aut nūbila, sed quālis in 45
 locīs clausīs lūmine exstinctō. Audīrēs ululātūs fēminārum, infantum
 quirītātūs, clāmōrēs virōrum; aliī parentēs aliī liberōs aliī coniugēs vōcibus
 requirēbant, vōcibus nōscitābant; hī suum cāsum, illī suōrum miserābantur;
 erant quī metū mortis mortem precārentur; 15. multī ad deōs manūs tollere,
 plūrēs nusquam iam deōs ūllōs aeternamque illam et novissimam noctem 50
 mundō interpretābantur. Nec dēfuērunt quī fictīs mentītīsque terrōribus vēra
 perīcula augērent. Aderant quī Mīsēnī illud ruisse illud ārdēre falsō sed
 crēdentibus nūntiābant.

adsum, -esse, -fuī: be present (*dat.*)
aeternus, -a, -um: eternal, everlasting, 2
augeō, -ere, -xī, -ctum: increase, enrich
clāmor, -ōris m.: shout, cry, scream, 2
claudō, -ere, -sī, -sum: close (in), 3
cōnsidō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum: sit down, settle, 2
cōnsiderō (1): consider, examine, 2
dēsum, -esse, -fuī: fail, be lacking, 2
exstinguō, -ere, -nxī, -ctum: extinguish, 3
falsō: falsely, deceitfully, 1
illūnis, -e: moonless, without a moon
interpretor, -ārī, -ātus sum: interpret
liberī, -ōrum m.: children
mentior, -īrī, mentītus sum: lie

45 **vix cōnsiderāmus:** 1p plpf. cōnsidō
nox (erat): (*it was*) *night*; i.e. it became dark
quālis (erat)...quālis (erat)...: *just as...just as...*; ‘which sort’ relative clause of comparison

46 **clausīs:** PPP claudō

lūmine exstinctō: abl. abs.

Audīrēs: *You would/could/might hear*;
 potential impf. subj. with a generalizing ‘you’
 (i.e. you might hear = anyone might hear)

ululātūs, quirītātūs, clāmōrēs: acc. objs and
asyndeton: supply conjunction ‘et’

47 **aliī...aliī...aliī...**: *some...others...(still) others...*;
 correlatives (parentēs and coniugēs are acc. pl.)
vōcibus: *with...*; abl. means; i.e. aloud

48 **(et) vōcibus nōscitābant:** (*and*) *they were recognizing (them) by their voices*; abl. means;
hī...illī...: *these...those...*; i.e. some...others...
suum cāsum (miserābantur)

suōrum (cāsum): (*the misfortune*) *of their own (people)*; i.e. of their relatives and friends

49 **erant (illī) quī...precārentur:** *there were (those) who...*; relative clause of characteristic with dep. impf. subj.: translate as active; the missing antecedent is the subject of erant;

miseror, -ārī, -ātus sum: pity, commiserate, 3
mundus, -ī m.: world; universe
nōscitō (1): learn, recognize; *pf.* know
nūbilus, -a, -um: cloudy, 1
nūntiō (1): announce, report
nusquam: nowhere
plūs, plūris: more, 3
precor, -ārī, -ātus sum: pray, beg (for), 2
quirītātūs, -ūs m.: scream, wail
requirō, -ere, -sivī (-siī): search/seek/ask for, 3
ruō, ruere, ruī: rush; plow; fall
terror, -is m.: terror, 2
ululātus, -ūs m.: howling, wailing
vix: scarcely, hardly, with difficulty, 2

‘erant quī’ is often translated just as ‘some’

metū: *because of...*; abl. of cause

multī...tollere: historical inf. with nom. subject: translate in the imperfect tense

50 **plūrēs...interpretābantur:** (*even*) *more interpreted...*; nom. pl. comparative multus
nusquam iam (esse) deōs ūllōs: *that (there were)...*; ind. disc.

aeternamque illam et novissimam (esse)
noctem: *and that that night (was)...*; ind. disc.

51 **(in) mundō**

Nec dēfuērunt (illī) quī...augērent: *And (those) were not lacking who...*; relative clause of characteristic with impf. subj. augeō; 3p pf. dēsum; the missing antecedent is the subject
fictīs mentītīsque terrōribus: *with...*; abl. of means with PPP fingō and mentior

52 **Aderant (illī) quī...**: (*those*) *were present who...*; missing antecedent is subject; adsum
Mīsēnī illud ruisse illud ārdēre: *that that (part) of Misenum fell (or) that (part) of Misenum was burning*; pf. ruō; partitive gen.
crēdentibus: *to (those)...*; dat. ind. obj. and pres. pple credō,

coniūnx, -iugis m./f.: spouse, husband, wife, 7 **parēns, -entis m/f:** parent, 4
fēmina, -ae f.: woman, 4 **quālis, -e:** which sort, just as, 7
fingō, -ere, finxī, fictum: make up, imagine, 6 **vōx, vocis f.:** voice, word, 9
infāns, -ntis m./f.: infant, 4

Parallelism in Pliny's Description of the Fleeing Crowd

Pliny employs many stylistic devices when describing the plight of the crowd who wandered in the darkness along with Pliny and his mother. Rather than use subordinate clauses or address each observation sequentially, Pliny employs parallelism, which leaves the impression that all of these events are happening at the same time and are therefore overwhelming to the senses.

Note the frequent **asyndeton** (omission of conjunctions), **ellipsis** (omission of words that must be understood), **anaphora** (repetition of initial words in a clause), and use of **correlatives** which help create and highlight the parallelism throughout the passage.

Correlatives	Quālis...quālis...	<i>just as...just as... (which sort...which sort)</i>
	Aliī...aliī...aliī...	<i>Some...others...others...</i>
	Hī...Illī...	<i>These...those...</i>
	Multī...plūrēs...	<i>Many...More...</i>
	Illud...illud...	<i>that part...that part...</i>

There are many parallel clauses, but the three below are particularly notable. Each contains a relative clause, and the missing antecedents are subjects of the main clause:

erant quī...	<i>There were (those) who...</i>
Nec dēfuērunt quī...	<i>There were not lacking (those) who...</i>
Aderant quī	<i>There were present (those) who...</i>

Relative Clause of Characteristic occurs twice on the facing page and at least 7 times in this book.

This relative + subjunctive occurs when the antecedent of the relative is especially vague:

(1) the antecedent is a vague demonstrative such as *is, ea, id*

vīdī eum quī tē ōre referret *I saw that one who would recall you in appearance*

(2) the antecedent is *nēmō, nihil, or nūllus*

videō nēminem quī tē ōre referret *I saw no one who would recall you in appearance*

(3) the antecedent is indefinite (e.g. *quisquam*) or missing

erat quī tē ōre referret *There was (someone) who would recall you in appearance*

The purpose of a relative of characteristic is to clarify *what sort of person or thing* the vague antecedent is. In lines 50 and 52 on the facing page, it clarifies what sort of person the vague but missing subjects "those people" are.

16. Paulum relūxit, quod nōn diēs nōbīs, sed adventantis ignis indicium vidēbātur. Et ignis quidem longius substitit; tenebrae rūsus cinis rūsus, 55 multus et gravis. Hunc identidem assurgentēs excutiēbāmus; opertī aliōquī atque etiam oblīsī pondere essēmus. 17. Possem glōriārī nōn gemitum mihi, nōn vōcem parum fortem in tantīs perīculīs excidisse, nisi mē cum omnibus, omnia mēcum perīre—miserō, magnō tamen mortālītātis sōlaciō—crēdidissem. 18. Tandem illa cālīgo tenuāta quasi in fūmum nebulamve 60 discessit; mox diēs vērus; sōl etiam effulsit, lūridus tamen quālis esse cum dēficit solet. Occursābant trepidantibus adhūc oculīs mūtāta omnia altōque cinere tamquam nive obducta.

adventō (1): come to, approach, 2
aliōquī: otherwise; in other respects
assurgō, -ere, assurrēxī: rise, 3
cālīgō, -inis f.: mist, vapor, 3
dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: fail, be lacking, 2
discēdō, -ere, -cessī: go away, depart
effulgeō, -ēre, -lī: shine out, gleam
excidō, -ere, -ī: fall from, perish, 2
excutiō, -ere, -cussī: strike/shake off, 2
fūmus, -ī m.: smoke, vapor
glōrior, -ārī, -ātus sum: glory in, boast
identidem: again and again, repeatedly, 2
indicium, -ī n.: indication, evidence
lūridus, -a, -um: yellow, lurid, murky
mortālītās, -tātis f.: mortality
nebula, -ae f.: cloud, mist, fog
nix, nivis f.: snow

54 **paulum:** *a little*; adv.

relūxit: *it shined again*; i.e. there was light
quod...vidēbātur: *which seemed...*; impf. pass. videor, ‘seem’

diēs: *daylight*; nom. pred. after vidēbantur
nōbīs: *to...*; dat. of reference (point of view)
adventantis ignis: *of a...*; gen. sg. pres. pple
indicium: nom. pred., translate after verb
et...quidem: *and even...*; emphasizing ignis

55 **longius:** *farther away*; comparative adv.; the adv. of longus often translates as ‘far’
(erant) tenebrae rūsus (et erat) cinis rūsus

56 **Hunc (cinem):** *this (ash)*; obj. of main verb
identidem assurgentēs: *(we)...*; i.e. constantly falling and picking themselves up; pres. pple
opertī (essēmus) aliōquī atque...oblīsī essēmus.: *otherwise we would have been...*; past contrary to fact with plpf. pass. subj. with the protasis implied by aliōquī: “(if we had done) otherwise, we would have been...”

obducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum: draw over, cover
oblīdō, -ere, -sī, -sum: squeeze, compress
occursō (1): run into, meet
operiō, -īre, -uī: cover, conceal, 3
parum: too little, not enough, insufficiently
pereō, -īre, perī: pass away, perish, 2
pondus, ponderis n.: weight, 2
reluceō, -ēre, -lūxī: shine out, shine back, 2
sōl, sōlis m.: sun, 3
sōlācium, -ī n.: solace, comfort, 2
soleō, -ēre, solitus sum: be accustomed, 3
substō, -āre, -stī: stand firm
tamquam: just as, as if
tenebrae, -ārum f.: darkness, gloom, 3
tenuō (1): make thin, make tenuous
trepidō (1): tremble, 2

pondere: abl. of means

57 **Possem glōriārī...nisi...crēdidissem:** *I would be able to glory in..., if I had not believed*; mixed contrary to fact (sī plpf. subj., impf. subj.); impf. subj. possum + dep. pres. inf.
nōn gemitum...(et) nōn vōcem...excidisse: *that...fell from me*; ind. disc. governed by glōriārī; pf. inf. excidō governs mihi as a dat. of compound verb: i.e. fell from my mouth

58 **parum fortem:** *not brave enough, insufficiently brave*; parum is an adv. modifying the adj. fortem

mē cum omnibus (perīre) (et) omnia mēcum perīre: *that I was perishing...(and)...*; ind. disc.

59 **miserō, magnō tamen mortālītātis sōlaciō:** *as a miserable but great solace for my mortality*; a challenging passage: either (1) dat. of purpose or (2) dat. ind. obj. of crēdō (or abl. manner.) in apposition to the ind. statement

60 **tenuāta:** PPP, tenuō

- quasi in fūmum nebulamve:** *as if...*; clause of comparison; enclitic -ve means ‘or’
- 61 **(erat) diēs vērus:** *(there was) true daylight*; i.e. Aug. 26th, two days after the eruption on the 24th. This is also the day that Romans returned to find the uncle’s body on the shore
- quālis esse...solet:** *just as...*; ‘which sort’ relative clause of comparison
- cum dēficit:** *when there is an eclipse*; ‘when it fails,’ dēficere is often used to refer to eclipses
- 62 **Occursābant...omnia...obducta:** *everything...* omnia is the neut. pl. subject
- trepidantibus adhūc oculis:** *to (our)...*; dat. of compound verb
- altōque cinere:** *with...*; abl. means; note that altus means ‘deep’ as well as ‘high’
- tamquam nive:** *just as with...*; clause of comparison with abl. of means
- 63 **obducta:** PPP obducō modifying omnia

gemitus, -ūs m.: groan, sob, lament, 4

miser, -era, -rum: miserable, wretched, 6

mūtō (1): change, mutate, 4

tandem: finally, at length, pray, 4

Pliny’s Humility

Pliny admits that he did not sob or cry out cowardly during the escape, and he is aware that such a response is worthy of glory (*possem glōriārī*), yet, he undercuts such praise and confesses that the source of his calmness and tranquility was not courage but resignation that he is soon going to die with everyone else.

Pliny again seems to invite a comparison with his uncle and to disparage his own response. In the first letter the uncle showed equanimity while Pomponianus and the others (a) trembled, (b) stayed up all night, and (c) decided to flee by weighing fear with fear. In this second letter the author admits that he showed no emotion while those around him fled frantically and in despair. But, while Pliny elevates his uncle’s conduct as positive and even heroic, he undercuts such praise for himself and admits that he was motivated not by courage but by despair.

For readers who argue that Pliny suffers from **survivor’s guilt**, Pliny seems to humble himself once again in order to bring greater attention to his uncle’s heroic response.

Adverbial Accusatives

Some adverbs are formed from adjectives that are placed in the neuter accusative singular. These adverbs are called adverbial accusatives:

multum	<i>much</i>	pp. 50, 68
paulum	<i>a little</i>	pp. 8, 32, 44
vērūm	<i>but</i>	pp. 20, 130

Word Building: Synonyms for “light” or “shine”

lūx, lūcis f.: light, 1

illūcescō, -ere, illūxī: grow light, 1

reluceō, -ēre, -lūxī: shine out, shine back, 2

fulgor (fulgur) m.: flash (lightning), lightning, 2

fulgeō, -ēre, -fulsī: flash, shine, 2

fulmen, -inis n.: thunderbolt, lightning bolt, 1

effulgeō, -ēre, -lsī: shine out, gleam, 1

lūmen, -inis n.: light, lamp; *pl.* eyes, 9

19. Regressī Mīsēnum cūrātis utcumque corporibus suspēnsam dubiamque noctem spē ac metū exēgimus. Metus praevalēbat; nam et tremor terrae persevērābat, et plērīque lymphātī terrificīs vāticinātiōnibus et sua et aliēna mala lūdificābantur. 20. Nōbīs tamen nē tunc quidem, quamquam et expertīs perīculum et exspectantibus, abeundī cōnsilium, dōnec dē avunculō nūntius.

Haec nēquāquam historiā digna nōn scrīptūrus legēs et tibi scīlicet quī requisīstī imputābis, sī digna nē epistolā quidem vidēbuntur. Valē.

70

abeō, -īre, -iī, itum: go away, 3

aliēnus, -a, -um: of another, another's, 3

cōnsilium, -ī: plan, idea, 3

cūrō (1): care for, take care of, 2

dōnec: until

dubius, -a, -um: doubtful, wavering, uncertain, 3

exigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum: drive, urge; spend, 3

experior, -iri, -pertus sum: try, experience

expectō (1): wait for, await, look out for, 2

historia, -ae f.: history, 3

imputō (1): impute credit/blame to, attribute

lūdificor, -ārī, -ātus sum: make seem ludicrous, make a mockery of, make fun of

64 **regressī:** (*We*) having returned; dep. PPP regredior: translate as 'having Xed'

Mīsēnum: *to Misenum*; acc. place to which for towns is expressed without a preposition.

cūrātis utcumque corporibus: (*our*) bodies...;

abl. abs.; they took care of themselves

suspēnsam: *in suspense, suspenseful*; adj. formed from PPP of suspendō, 'hang'

65 **exēgimus:** *we spent...*; pf. exigo (ex+agō)

spē ac metū: *with...*; abl. of manner

et...et...: *both...and...*

66 **terrificīs vāticinātiōnibus:** *with...*; abl. means

et sua (mala) et aliēna mala: *both...and...*;

mala is a neut. acc. pl. substantive: 'bad things,' 'troubles,' or 'evils'

67 **nōbīs (erat)...abeundī cōnsilium:** dat. of possession: translate as (1) 'there was to us...' or (2) 'we had...' and make nom. cōnsilium the object of 'had'; abeundī is gen. gerund (-ing)

nē tunc quidem: *not even then*; nē... quidem, often emphasize the intervening word

quamquam et expertīs perīculum et

exspectantibus: *although both...and...*;

concessive participial phrase modifying nōbīs with dep. PPP experior (translate 'having Xed') and pres. pple expectō; perīculum is acc. obj. of both participles

lymphātus, -a, -um: hysterical, frantic

nēquāquam: by no means

nūntius, -ī m.: messenger, 2

persevērō (1): persist, persevere

plērīque, -raeque, -raque: very many, 2

praevalēō, -ēre: be very powerful

regredior, -ī, regressus sum: return

requirō, -ere, -sivī (-siī): search/seek/ask for, 3

scīlicet: of course, certainly

spēs, -ē f.: hope, expectation, 3

terrificus, -a, -um: terrifying

utcumque: in whatever way, howsoever

vāticinātiō, -iōnis f.: prediction, foretelling

68 **abeundī:** *of...*; gen. sg. gerund (-ing) abeō; a gerund is a verbal noun translated with '-ing'

dōnec (erat) dē avunculō nūntius: *until (there was)...*

69 **haec:** *these things*; i.e. this letter; acc. obj.

digna: *worthy of* + abl. of respect; digna is neut. pl. with haec

scrīptūrus: *intending to...*; fut. pple scrībō expressing purpose

legēs: 2s fut. legō

tibi...imputābis: *you will impute blame on yourself*; i.e. you have only yourself to blame!

dat. ind. obj. or compound verb; Pliny is being humble and says Tacitus has himself to blame for asking for this unworthy follow-up to the original letter about his uncle's heroism

quī requisīstī: *who requested (this letter)*; 2s pf. requirō

sī...vidēbuntur: *if they seem*; 'will seem,' fut. more vivid condition (sī fut., fut.); in English we often use the present tense with fut. sense in the protasis

70 **requis(iv)istī:** syncopated 2s pf. requirō

nē epistolā quidem: *not even of a letter*; nē...

quidem, often emphasizes the intervening word, here with abl. of respect modifying dignus

Valē: *Farewell*; sg. imperative

dignus, -a, -um: worthy, worthy of (abl.), 5 **suspendō, -ere, -pendī, -pensum:** hang up, 5

All History is Biography

The second letter reveals far richer details about the eruption of Vesuvius than the first, yet Pliny insists that the first letter is worthy of history while the second is not. Consider how humbly he describes the second letter as he concludes the second letter on the facing page:

haec nēquāquam historiā digna. p. 34
These things by no means worthy of history

In the introduction to the first letter, Pliny says that he considered blessed those who are allowed:

aut facere scribenda aut scribere legenda p. 2
either to do things worth writing about or write things worth reading about

For Pliny, the subject of history is not the eruption itself but how people respond to adversity—and more specifically what that response reveals about character. The eruption is simply the backdrop.

Tacitus clearly requested information about the uncle's death because the uncle was admiral of the Roman fleet at Misenum, and the admiral's organized response to the eruption is a topic worthy of history. But Pliny suggests that his uncle should be recognized not simply for being the leader of Rome's organized response but for the heroic character than he displayed in attempting to rescue others and in responding soberly and fearlessly in the face of great adversity.

Gerunds ⁷ (verb stem + nd + ī/ō/um/ō)

Gerunds are verbal nouns that are translated with -ing in English (e.g. *Running* is fun.). They take only 2nd decl. neuter sg. endings in four cases (no nominative). There are seven (7) instances of gerunds in this commentary. Note that eō, īre: *go* and its compounds—including **abeundī** on the facing page—form the gerund with the stem eu-. (the stem i- becomes e- before the letter 'u'):

1. abeundī	<i>of going away</i>	p. 34	<u>gerund of eō, īre: go</u>
2. descendī	<i>of learning</i>	p. 36	Nom. --
3. docendī	<i>of teaching</i>	p. 36	Gen. eundī <i>of going</i>
4. ad scribendum	<i>for writing</i>	p. 42	Dat. eundō <i>for going</i>
5. cōsulendī	<i>of consulting</i>	p. 50	Acc. eundum <i>going</i>
6. fandī	<i>of speaking</i>	p. 79	Abl. eundō <i>by going</i>
7. eundō	<i>by going</i>	p. 85	

Word Building AG-/ACT- "drive"

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum: drive, lead, do; give, 10	drive
agitō (1): drive; chase, 1	+ over and over (-tō)
circumagō, -ere: drive or carry around, 1	+ around
cōgō (cum + āgō), cōgere, coēgī, coāctum: collect; compel, 2	+ with intensity or together
exigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum: drive, urge; spend, 3	+ with intensity
agmen, -inis n.: column, line, formation, 3	the drive = column, formation

Idioms with **agō** in this commentary:

agō + gratiās (I give thanks)	grātiās agō	<i>I give thanks</i>	p. 2
agō + acc. (I live...)	agēbam...annum	<i>I was living my 18th year</i>	p. 22
agō + acc. (I spend...)	noctem...exēgimus	<i>we spent the night</i>	p. 34

C. Plīnius Surae suō s.

1

1. Et mihi discendī et tibi docendī facultātem ōtium praebet. Igitur perquam
velim scīre, esse phantasmata et habēre propriam figūram nūmenque aliquod
putēs an inānia et vāna ex metū nostrō imāginem accipere. 2. Ego ut esse
crēdam in prīmīs eō dūcor, quod audiō accidisse Curtiō Rūfō. Tenuis adhūc et 5
obscurus, obtinentī Āfricam comes haeserat. Inclīnātō diē spatiābātur in
porticū; offertur eī mulieris figūra hūmānā grandior pulchriorque. Perterritō
Āfricam sē futūrōrum prae-nūntiam dīxit: itūrum enim Rōmam honōrēsque
gestūrum, atque etiam cum summō imperiō in eandem prōvinciam
reversūrum, ibique moritūrum. 10

accidō, -ere, -cidī: happen, fall to, 3
Āfrica, -ae f.: Africa, 2
aliquis, -qua, -quid (quod): some, any, 3
Curtius, -ī m.: Curtius
discō, -ere, didicī: learn
doceō, -ēre, -uī, -ctum: teach, tell, instruct, 2
facultās, -tātis f.: ability, opportunity
grandis, -e: grand, large, full-grown
haereō, -ēre, haesī: cling, stick, adhere to (dat), 2
honor (-os), -ōris m.: honor; offering, 3
hūmānus, -a, -um: human, of a human
igitur: therefore, accordingly
inānis, -e: empty, idle, 2
inclīnō (1): lean, bend, turn; decline
morior, morī, mor(i)tuus sum: die, 3
mulier, -is f.: woman
nūmen, -inis n.: divine power/approval, 3
obscurus, -a, -um: dim; dark; obscure 3

obtineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum: obtain
offerō, -ferre, obtulī: offer, bear to
ōtium, -īī n.: leisure, free time, peace, 2
perquam: thoroughly, as thoroughly as possible
perterreō, -ēre, -uī: terrify thoroughly
phantasma, -atis n.: phantasm, ghost
porticus, -ūs f.: portico, colonnade
praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum: present, offer
prae-nūntia, -ae f.: foreteller, prophet
proprius: one's own, their own
prōvincia, -ae f.: province
revertor, -ī, reversus sum: turn back, return
Rōma, -ae f.: Rome, 2
Rūfus, -ī m.: Rufus
spatior, -ārī, -ātus sum.: take a walk, walk
Sura, -ae m.: Sura
tenuis, -e: thin, lean; poor
vānus, -a, -um: vain, purposeless

1 **C. Plīnius Surae suō s(alutat):** *Gaius Plinius (gives greetings) to his Sura*

2 **et...discendī et...docendī:** *both of...and of...;*
gen. sg. gerunds (-ing) modifying facultātem
mihi: *for...;* dat. of interest, take with discendī
tibi: *for...;* dat. of interest, take with docendī
ōtium: nom. subj.

3 **velim scīre:** *I would like to...;* or 'I would want'
potential subj.; 1s pres. subj. volō
esse...putēs an: *whether you think...or...;* a
lengthy ind. question with 2s pres. subj. putō
esse phantasmata: *that there are ghosts...;* ind.
disc. governed by putēs; neut. pl. phantasmata
is acc. subject; esse can also mean 'exist'
et habēre propriam...aliquod: *and (they)...*;
still ind. disc.; aliquod is a neut. adjective,
'some,' modifying acc. obj. nūmen

4 **an (phantasmata) inānia et vāna...imāginem
accipere:** *or that (they) empty and purposeless*

take their appearance,...; ind. disc. governed
by putēs; inānia et vāna are neut. adjs.
modifying the missing acc. subject phantasmata
ex metū nostrō: *(as a result) from...*
ut (phantasmata) esse crēdam: *so that I
believe that (ghosts) exist;* result with 1s pres.
subj. and ind. disc.: assume acc. phantasmata
5 **in prīmīs:** *in particular;* 'primarily' an idiom
eō...quod...: *because of this...because...;* eō is
abl. of cause and antecedent of a causal quod
accidisse Curtiō Rūfō: *that it...;* ind. disc. with
impersonal pf. inf.; dat. of interest or compound
verb; according to Tacitus (*Annales* 11.21),
Curtius served under Tiberius (AD 14-37)
**Tenuis adhūc et obscurus, obtinentī Āfricam
comes haeserat:** *Still poor and obscure, he
had clung to the (governor) obtaining Africa as
a companion;* tenuis, 'lean,' refers to his wealth
or status; comes is predicative nom. and

- suggests Curtius was part of the staff
- 6 **Inclīnātō diē**: *the day having declined*; ‘i.e. having been made to decline’ i.e. in the afternoon, after the sun had reached its zenith; either abl. abs. or abl. time when; PPP inclīnō
- 7 **eī**: *to him*; i.e. Curtius Rufus, dat. ind. obj.
- hūmānā (figūrā)**: *than...*; abl. of comparison
- Perterrītō**: *to (him) terrified*; dat. ind. obj.
- 8 **Āfricam (esse) sē futūrōrum praeñūtiām**: *that she was Africa, the foreteller of future*

- things*; ind. disc. with sē as acc. subj.; **Āfricam itūrum (esse) enim Rōmam honōrēsque gestūrum (esse)**: *that he would...and would...*; ind. disc. with fut. inf. eō and gerō in secondary sequence; add Curtius Rufus as acc. subj.; the woman is foretelling his future
- 9 **atque...reversūrum (esse)**: *and that (he) would...*; ind. disc. with fut. dep. inf. revertor
- 10 **ibique moritūrum (esse)**: *and that (he) would...*; ind. disc. with fut. dep. inf. morior

comes, -itis m/f: comrade, companion, 4
dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum: say, speak, tell, 8
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum: lead, draw, 7
eō, ire, ī, itum: go, come, 7

gerō, -ere, gessi, gestum: carry on, wear, wage, 6
habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum: have, hold; consider, 5
imāgō, -inis f.: image, ghost, 5
summus, -a, -um: top of, highest, 8

Who is Sura?

Lucius Licinius Sura was a senator from Hispania who served as consul three times: twice during the reign of Trajan in 102 and 107, and possibly a third time in 93 or possibly 97. Sura is believed to have supported Trajan, a fellow senator from Hispania, as a successor to the Emperor Nerva (96-98) and to have remained a loyal and trusted friend of Trajan while he was emperor (AD 98-117).

Only two of the 247 surviving letters from Pliny are addressed to Sura (4.30 and 7.27). In this letter Pliny tells three stories about supernatural visions: (1) the prophecy of Curtius Rufus, (2) the Haunted House in Athens, and (3) two mysterious hair-cropping incidents in Pliny’s own *familia*.

First Story about Ghosts: the Proconsul Curtius Rufus

In this first story, a woman claiming to be the personification of Africa foretells Curtius Rufus’ rise in political honors and eventual death in Africa. Although Pliny does not state it explicitly, his argument is that the woman could not have predicted Curtius’ rise from such a lowly status in life, unless she were supernatural. Below are three ways that Pliny emphasizes Curtius’ lowly status in lines 5-6:

- (1) **tenuis**, “poor,” regularly means “thin” or “lean” and is the opposite of *crassus*, “fat” or “thick.” The association of thinness with poor diet likely led *tenuis* to mean “poor” or “insignificant.”
- (2) **obscūrus**, “obscure” usually means “dim” and is the opposite of *clārus*, “bright,” “famous,” or “distinguished” (i.e. so bright that he stands out). Curtius has done nothing to stand out.
- (3) **comes haeserat**, “had clung as a companion” indicates that Curtius Rufus is serving under an elected official and has not been elected to office himself.

Curtius was consul in 43 in the reign of Claudius (41-54) and died as proconsul in Africa afterwards.

Word Building Synonyms for “ghosts”

phantasma, -atis n.: phantasm, ghost, 1
effigiēs, -ēī f.: likeness, statue, 1
imāgō, -inis f.: image, ghost, 5
mānēs, -ium m.: ghost, spirit of the dead, shade, 1
nūmen, -inis n.: divine power/approval, 3
īdōlon (-um), -ī n.: image, form; ghost, 1
simulācrum, -ī n.: image; ghost, likeness, 2

3. Facta sunt omnia. Praetereā accēdentī Carthāginem ēgredientīque nāve eadem figūra in lītore occurrīse narrātur. Ipse certē implicitus morbō, futūra praeteritīs adversa secundīs augurātus, spem salūtis nullō suōrum dēspērante prōiēcīt.

4. Iam illud nōne et magis terribile et nōn minus mīrum est quod expōnam 15
ut accēpī? 5. Erat Athēnīs spatiōsa et capāx domus sed infāmis et pestilēns. Per silentium noctis sonus ferrī, et sī attenderēs ācrius, strepitus vinculōrum longius prīmō, deinde ē proximō reddēbātur: mox appārēbat idōlon, senex maciē et squālōre cōnfectus, prōmissā barbā horrentī capillō; crūribus compedēs, manibus catēnās gerēbat quatiēbatque. 20

accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum: approach, 3
ācer, ācris, ācre: sharp; fierce, 3
appareō, -ēre, -uī, -itum: appear, 3
Athēnae, -ārum f.: Athens, 2
attendō, -ere, -dī: direct to
auguror, -ārī, -ātus sum: predict, take auguries
barba, -ae f.: beard
capāx, capācis: roomy, capacious, spacious
Carthāgō, -inis f.: Carthage
catēna, -ae f.: chain, shackle, 3
compēs, compedis f.: shackle, fetter (for feet)
cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus: finish, accomplish
crūs, -ūris n.: leg, shin
deinde: then, next, 3
dēspērō (1): lose hope, give up hope
expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum: set forth, explain
idōlon (-um), -ī n.: image, form; ghost
infāmis, -is: infamous, of bad reputation
maciēs, -eī f.: thinness, leanness
mīrus, -a, -um: miraculous, amazing, 2
morbus, -ī m.: disease, illness, 2

11 **Facta sunt:** i.e. happened; pf. pass. faciō (fiō)
omnia: *everything*; i.e. all things predicted
accēdentī...ēgredientīque: *to (him)...*; i.e. to Curtius Rufius; dat. of compound verb occurrō
Carthāginem: *to...*; acc. place to which
nāve: *from...*; abl. of separation with ēgredientī
12 **Ipse:** *he himself*; intensive
certē: *with certainty*; ‘certainly’ with implicitus
implicitus morbō: *entangled with disease*; i.e. being sick; PPP and abl. of means
futūra praeteritīs adversa secundīs
augurātus: *having predicted his future adversities with his past successes*; because the prophecy predicted his success, he assumes it predicts his death; interlocking word order (synchysis); futūra adversa is a neut. acc.

ne (-ne): (indicates a yes/no question), 3
nūllus, -a, -um: not any, no, 3
occurrō, -ere, -currī: run into, meet
pestilēns, -entis: pestilent, causing disease
praetereā: besides, in addition, 2
praetereō, -īre, -īī: go pass, pass
prōiciō, -icere, -iēcī: throw forward
prōmittō, -ere: promise, send forward; let go, 2
quatiō, -īre, quassī: shake, brandish
reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditum: give back, 3
salūs, -ūtis f.: safety, refuge; health, 2
secundus, -a, -um: following; favorable, 2
senex, senis m.: old man; *adj.* old
silentium -ī n.: silence, 2
sonus, -ī m.: sound
spatiōsus, -a, -um: spacious, roomy
spēs, -eī f.: hope, expectation, 3
squālōr, -ōris m.: dirt, squalor, filth
strepitus, -ūs m.: noise, uproar
terribilis, -e: terrible, terrifying, 2

substantive (fut. pple sum), praeteritīs secundīs is an abl. substantive (PPP praetereō), means or abs. (i.e. ‘since the past was favorable’)
13 **spem salūtis...prōiēcīt:** *he threw away...*; i.e. he gave up hope because he had already been predicted to die of sickness in Africa
nullō suōrum dēspērante: (*although*) *not any of his (people)...*; abl. abs. concessive in sense (translate as impf.); i.e. his family and friends were hopeful
Story of the Haunted House
14 **nōne...est:** *Is...not...?*; main verb
Illud...quod expōnam: *that which...*; relative clause with 1s fut. expōnō; illud is nom. subj.;
et magis terribile et nōn minus mīrum: *both...and...*; neut. nom. pred. of est

- 15 **ut accēpī**: *just as...*; i.e. the following story, clause of comparison
Erat: *there was...*
Athēnīs: *in...*; locative, place where
- 16 **spatiōsa et capāx...sed infāmis et pestilēns**: all modifying fem. nom. sg. domus; spatiōsā et capāx are synonyms
- 17 **ferrī**: *of iron*; gen. sg. ferrum
sī attenderēs ācrius: *if you paid attention more keenly*; past general condition (sī impf. subj., impf. indicative) for repeated actions in the past; 2s impf. subj.; comparative adv.
- 18 **longius**: *farther away*; comparative
prīmō: *at first*; abl. as adv.
īdōlon: Greek nom. neut. sg.
senex...: nom. in apposition to īdōlon
- 19 **cōnfectus**: *finished off*; i.e. exhausted or weakened; PPP + abl. of cause
prōmissā barbā: abl. abs., PPP prōmittō
horrentī capillō: abl. abs., pres. pple horreō, ‘stand up on end,’ ‘bristle,’ or ‘shudder’
(in) crūribus...(in) manibus: *on...on...*; abl. place where
- 20 **compedēs (et)...catēnās**: acc. objs.

capillus, -ī m.: hair, 6

ferrum, -ī n.: iron; sword, 5

implicō, -āre, -uī, -itum: enfold, entwine, 4

narrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum: narrate, 4

vinculum, -ī n.: chain, 5

Conclusion of First Story: the Proconsul Curtius Rufus

Pliny says that all the predictions actually happened and that Curtius Rufus, returning to Africa as proconsul and governor after his consulship in Rome in AD 43, believed that the prophecy was successful in the past. When Curtius became ill, he lost hope in any recovery and, although Pliny does not explicitly state it, died as predicted. Below are some conclusions:

- 1. Curtius’ passive acceptance in the prophecy make it self-fulfilling.** Others are hopeful that Curtius will recover, but it is his fearful belief in the prophecy convinces him not to treat his illness.
- 2. Pliny does not challenge the prophecy, suggest it is coincidence, or question why it happens.**

Adverbs: praetereā, posteā, intereā

These three adverbs are formed from prepositional phrases with neuter pl. acc. ea (is, ea, id):

praeter ea	<i>besides these things</i>	→	praetereā : besides, in addition, 2
post ea	<i>after these things</i>	→	posteā : afterwards, later, 2
inter ea	<i>between these things</i>	→	intereā : meanwhile, in the meantime, 2

Translate gerō as “carry (on)”

Many readers first learn about **gerō** through the idiom *bellum gerō*, “wage war,” and assume “wage” is the best translation in any context. But, *gerō* has a range of meanings including “wear (clothing),” “wage,” “behave,” “conduct,” and “do.” When in doubt in this book, translate *gerō* as “carry (on).”

honōrēsque gestūrum (esse)	<i>he will carry on public offices</i>	p. 38
manibus catēnās gerēbat	<i>he was carrying chains with his hands</i>	p. 38
belli...quod...gesserat	<i>war which she was carrying on</i>	p. 72

Note that the words “gerund,” “gerundive,” and “gesture” are all derived from *gerō*.

Second Story about Ghosts: the Sceptical Philosopher Athenodorus

Pliny explains how a haunted house was abandoned by tenants until a philosopher Athenodorus (lit. “gift of Athena”) who was **sceptical** of the existence of ghosts moved in. The ghost appears to the philosopher and leads him to an area of the house, which is later dug up to reveal the human remains. After the bones are properly buried, the house, we assume, is no longer haunted.

6. Inde inhabitantibus trīstēs dīraeque noctēs per metum vigilābantur; vigiliam morbus, et crēscēte formīdine mors sequēbātur. Nam interdiū quoque, quamquam abscesserat imāgō, memoria imāginis oculīs inerrābat, longiorque causīs timōris timor erat. Dēserta inde et damnāta sōlitūdine domus tōtaque illī mōnstrō relictā; prōscribēbātur tamen, seu quis emere seu quis condūcere ignārus tantī malī vellet. 7. Venit Athēnās philosophus Athēnodōrus, legit titulum auditōque pretiō, quia suspecta vilitās, percunctātus omnia docētur ac nihilō minus, immō tantō magis condūcit. 25

abscēdō, -ere, -cessī: go away, depart
Athēnae, -ārum f.: Athens, 2
Athēnodōrus, -ī m.: Athenodorus
condūcō, -ere: rent, hire; bring together, 2
crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētum: grow, 3
damnō (1): condemn, convict
dīrus, -a, -um: dire, dreadful, 2
doceō, -ēre, -uī, -ctum: teach, tell, instruct, 2
emō, -ere, ēmī, emptum: buy
formīdō, -inis f.: dread, fear, 3
ignārus, -a, -um: ignorant, inexperienced in (gen)
immō: on the contrary, but rather
inde: from there, then, 2
inerrō (1): wander in/before
inhabitō (1): inhabit, dwell in
interdiū: by day, during the day

21 **inhabitantibus:** *for (those)...*; pres. ppl and dat. of interest
 22 **vigiliam morbus (sequēbātur):** ellipsis: add impf. dep. sequor from below: translate as active; sleeplessness leads to sickness and then, in some cases, death
et...mors (morbum) sequēbātur: ellipsis: assume the acc. object from the previous clause
crēscēte formīdine: abl. abs., causal in sense
 23 **oculīs:** *before..., in....*; dat. of compound verb
 24 **causīs:** *than....*; abl. of comparison
timōris: objective gen. of causīs
dēserta (est)...damnāta (est)...relicta (est): pf. pass. with fem. domus as subject; supply est
sōlitūdine: *to solitude, to abandonment*; abl. of price or penalty—not uncommon with damnō
 25 **tōta:** *entirely, totally*; nom. adj. as adv.
illī mōnstrō: *to...*; dat. of interest; i.e. the ghost; illī is dat. sg. of ille
prōscribēbātur: *it was being advertised*; lit. ‘it was being written out (publicly)’
seu quis...seu quis...: (*in order to see*) *whether someone...or someone...*; seu (sī-ve) introduces

memoria, -ae f.: memory
mōnstrum, -ī n.: monster, 3
morbus, -ī m.: disease, illness, 2
percunctor, -ārī, -ātus sum: ask thoroughly
philosophus, -ī m.: philosopher
pretium, ī n.: price, value
prōscribō, -ere: write publicly, publish
seu (sīve): whether, or (if), 3
sōlitūdō, -inis f.: wilderness, solitude, 2
suspiciō, ere, suspexī, suspectum: look up (at), 2
titulus, -ī m.: notice, placard, title
trīstis, -e: sad, sullen, dreary, 3
vigilia, -ae f.: watch, night-watch
vigilō (1): keep awake, spend awake
vilitās, -tātis f.: cheapness, cheap price

a double ind. question with impf. subj. volō, ‘want’; the indefinite aliquis, ‘someone,’ is shortened to quis after sī, nisi, num or ne
condūcere: *to rent*
 26 **tantī malī:** objective gen. of ignārus
venit: historical present; Pliny uses the present to describe the past to make his narrative more vivid for his reader or audience.
Athēnās: *to...*; acc. place to which
 27 **legit:** historical present
auditō pretiō: abl. abs.
quia suspecta (est) vilitās: *because...*; 3s pf. pass.; vilitās is nom. sg.
 28 **percunctātus:** *having inquired thoroughly*; dep PPP
omnia docētur: *he is told everything*; docēre governs a double acc. in the active voice and retains the secondary acc. in the passive
nihilō minus: *no less*; ‘less by nothing,’ abl. of degree of difference with comparative adv.
tantō magis: *so much more*; ‘more by so much’
 abl. of degree of difference and comparative adv.

quoque: also, 6**tōtus, -a, -um:** total, entire, whole, 6**Pliny's Scepticism: Pliny suggests that Fear led to Sickness, Death, and Abandoning the House**

Curtius Rufus was a victim of a self-fulfilling prophecy. His fear led him to neglect his illness (*morbo*) and precipitated his own death. Although Pliny does not interpret Curtius' fate that way—Pliny offers no interpretation at all—only a paragraph later he expresses scepticism concerning the haunted house and suggests that fear (*metus*) led to disease (*morbus*), death, and the abandoned house.

Seu...Seu... with missing Main Verb

Seu is an alternative form for *sī*-ve, “or if”, and the correlatives *seu...seu...* (*sīve...sīve*), “whether ...or,” here introduce a double indirect question. The verb that introduces the indirect question is missing and must be supplied from the context:

...(ut vidērent) seu quis emere seu quis conducere ignārus tantī malī vellet. ll. 25-26

...(in order to see) whether someone ignorant of so great an evil wanted to buy or to rent it.

Ablative of Degree of Difference ⁸

This ablative is often used with the comparative adjective or adverb to show how much (i.e. to what degree) the two terms of comparison differ from one another. This ablative is used six times by Pliny but only once by Vergil in this commentary.

nihilō minus	<i>less by nothing</i>	→	<i>no less, none the less</i>	l. 28
tantō magis	<i>more by so much</i>	→	<i>so much more</i>	l. 28

Word Building: FAC-, FIC-, FEC-, FECT- “make” or “do”

faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum: do, make, 9	make/do
afficiō, -ere, -fēcī: affect, treat, do to, 1	+ to
cōficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus: finish, accomplish, 1	+ (with intensity to the end)
dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: fail, be lacking, 2	+ ~un- (= undo)
proficiscor, -ī, -fectus sum: set out, make forth, 3	+ forward, forth
sufficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: fill, imbue, steep, 1	+ up, under, within
putrefaciō, -ere, fēcī, factum: become rotten, 1	+ rotten
tremefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum: make tremble, 1	+ tremble
facilis, -e: easy, 1	+ doable
facultās, -tātis f.: ability, opportunity, 1	+ doable
praefectus, -ī m.: Prefect, overseer	+ (in charge) over
beneficium, -ī n.: favor, benefit, kindness, 2	+ well
fiō, fierī, factus sum: become, be made, 2	

Ubi coepit advesperāscere, iubet sternī sibi in prīmā domūs parte, poscit pugillārēs stilum lūmen, suōs omnēs in interiōra dīmittit; ipse ad scrībendum animum oculōs manum intendit, nē vacua mēns audīta simulācra et inānēs sibi metūs fingeret. 8. Initiō, quāle ubīque, silentium noctis; dein concutī ferrum, vincula movērī. Ille nōn tollere oculōs, nōn remittere stilum, sed offirmāre animum auribusque praetendere. Tum crēbrēscere fragor, adventāre et iam ut in līmine, iam ut intrā līmen audīrī. Respicit, videt agnōscitque narrātam sibi effigiem. 30 35

adventō (1): come to, approach, 2

advesperāscit: approach evening

agnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtum: recognize, 2

concutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussum: shake, strike, 2

crēbrēscō, -ere: become frequent

dein (deinde): then, next, 3

dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum: send away, 2

effigiēs, -ēī f.: likeness, statue

fragor, -ōris m.: crash, fall

inānis, -e: empty, idle, vain, 2

initium, -ī n.: beginning, 2

interior, -ius: interior, inner

29 **ubi coepit:** *when it began...*; impers. subject
sternī: (*a bed*) *to be laid out*; the owner has someone arrange a bed for him; pres. pass. inf.
sibi: *for himself*

in prīmā...parte: i.e. the front part

30 **pugillārēs, stilum (et) lūmen:** acc. objs.
(et) suōs: *and...all of his own (people)*; i.e. loved ones living with him; supply 'et'

in interiōra: *into the interior (of the house)*; lit. 'into the inner (parts)'

ipse: *he himself*

ad scrībendum: *for...*; ad + gerund (-ing) expressing purpose

31 **animum, oculōs (et) manum:** acc.objs.

intendit: *focuses*

nē...fingeret: *so that...might not...*; neg. purpose clause with *vacua mēns* as subject

audīta simulācra et inānēs...metūs: acc. objs.

32 **initiō...noctis:** *at...*; abl. of time when and partitive gen.

Quāle (est) ubīque: *just as everywhere*; 'which sort (is) everywhere,' neut. sg. relative clause of comparison; *silentium* is the antecedent

intrā: inside, within (*acc*), 2

offirmō (1): hold firm

praetendō, -ere, -tendī: extend/stretch in front, 2

pugillārēs, -ium: tablet, hand-held (tablet)

remittō, -ere, -mīsī: send back, let go, 2

respiciō, -ere, -spexī: look back (at), 3

silentium -ī n.: silence, 2

simulācrum, -ī n.: image; ghost, likeness, 2

stilus, -ī: stylus, 3

ubīque: everywhere

vacuus, -a, -um: empty, purposeless, 2

(erat) silentium: (*it was*)...

dein concutī ferrum: *then iron...*; historical inf. (pres. pass.) with nom. subject; translate the infinitive as imperfect: *concutiēbātur*

33 **(et) vincula movērī:** (*and*)...; historical inf. with pres. pass. inf. translate as impf.

Ille nōn tollere...remittere: *That one did not raise...*; historical infs. take a nom. subject; translate as impf.

offirmāre animum auribusque praetendere: *was strengthening and extending his attention with his ears*; historical infs., abl. of means

34 **crēbrēscere fragor, adventāre...audīrī:** historical infs. with nom. subjects: translate as impf.

iam ut...iam ut: *now as (if)...(and) now as (if)...* two conditional clauses of comparison; *iam...iam* are correlatives (e.g. *at this time...at that time*)

35 **narrātam:** PPP, the philosopher had been warned about the ghost

sibi: *to him*; 'to himself' dat. ind. obj. with PPP

auris, -is: f.: ear, 4**mēns, mentis f.:** mind; intent, purpose, 4**Pugillārēs, Stilum, and Lūmen**

A **pugillārēs** is a handheld wax-tablet. The **stilus**, “stylus,” is a metal tool used to scratch writing into the wax, and the **lūmen**, “lamp,” provided light and, more importantly, a flame where the writer could heat up the sharp end of the stylus to write into the wax or the flat end of the stylus to smear the wax and erase a mistake.

Pugillārēs is an adjective and substantive from the word **pugnus**, “fist,” with the plural noun **libelli**, “tablets,” missing but understood. It means a “fist-sized (tablet).” Compare how we use the words “handbook,” “handheld,” or “paperback” “manual” in English today.

The philosopher Athenodorus shows scepticism—but not disbelief

Pliny portrays Athenodorus as someone with healthy scepticism. First, (1) the philosopher does not allow fear—especially without evidence—to keep him from buying the house at a very cheap price. Next (2), as Pliny explains, the philosopher focuses on his work so that he does not allow his imagination to take over and confuse what he hears and sees. It is only when (3) the philosopher hears sounds that cannot be explained by his imagination that he looks back to gather more evidence and sees the ghost.

By not allowing his imagination to take over, Athenodorus shows healthy scepticism. But, he is not so foolish as to disbelieve and reject evidence that is immediately before him.

Word Building: CUTI-, CUSS- “strike”

Concussion and percussion are two common derivatives to help remember this verb stem.

concutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussum: shake, strike, 2

excutiō, -ere, -cussī: strike/shake off, 2

Word Building: MITT-, MISS- “send” or “let go”

Readers should know that “let go” is often a more preferable translation for *mittō* than “send.” On the facing page, *remitto* means “was letting go of” or “was relaxing” rather than “was sending back.”

mittō, -ere, mīsi, missum: send, 4

send/let go

admittō, -ere, mīsi, missum: admit, allow, 1

+ to

committō, -ere: commit, commence, arrange, 3

+ together or (with intensity)

dēmittō, -ere, -mīsi, -missum: drop, sink, 1

+ down

dīmittō, -ere, -mīsi, -missum: send away, 2

+ apart, away from

immittō, -ere, -mīsi, -missum: send into, 1

+ in

manūmittō, -ere: manumit, 2

+ from the hand (power)

omittō, -ere, -mīsi, -missum: neglect, let go, 1

+ from before (one’s eyes)

prōmittō, -ere: promise, send forward; let go, 2

+ forth

remittō, -ere, -mīsi: send back, let go, 2

+ back

submittō, -ere, -mīsi: send down, lower, let go, 2

+ under, below

trāsmittō, -ere, -mīsi: let pass; send across, 1

+ across

9. Stābat innuēbatque digitō similis vocantī. Hic contrā ut paulum exspectāret manū significat rūsusque cērīs et stilō incumbit. Illa scrībentis capitī catēnīs īnsonābat. Respicit rūsus idem quod prius innuentem, nec morātus tollit lūmen et sequitur. 10. Ībat illa lentō gradū quasi gravis vinculīs. 40 Postquam dēflexit in āream domūs, repente dīlāpsa dēserit comitem. Dēsertus herbās et folia concerpta signum locō pōnit. 11. Posterō diē adit magistrātūs, monet ut illum locum effodī iubeant.

ārea, -ae f.: courtyard, open space, 3

catēna, -ae f.: chain, shackle, 3

cēra, ae f.: wax

concerpō, -ere, -psī, -ptum: pluck, pull, seize

dēflectō, -ere, flexī, flexus: bend/turn aside, 2

digitus, -ī m.: finger

dīlābor, -ī, -lapsus sum: slip/glide apart or away

effodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossus: dig out, excavate

exspectō (1): wait for, await, look out for, 2

folium, -ī n.: leaf, foliage

gradus, -ūs m.: step, 3

herba, -ae f.: plant, grass

incumbō, -ere, -cubūī, -: lie on, lean over, 2

innuō, -ere: nod (to), gesture, 2

īnsonō, -āre, -uī: make sound on/over; resound, 2

lentus, -a, -um: slow, gentle, soft

magistrātus, -ūs m.: magistrate, official

moneō, -ēre, -uī: warn, advise, admonish, 2

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum: put, place (aside), 2

posterus, -a, -um: following, next, 2

postquam: after, 2

prior, prius: earlier, before, 3

repente: suddenly

respicō, -ere, -spexī: look back (at), 3

significō (1): signify, make a sign, point out

signum -ī n.: signal, gesture, 3

stilus, -ī: stylus, 3

37 **Stābat:** assume the ghost as subject

similis: nom. sg. modifying the missing subject

vocantī: *to (one)...*; pres. pple and dat. of special adj. similis; the ghost was gesturing to get the philosopher to come with him

Hic: *this one*; i.e. the philosopher

contrā: *in reply, in response*; adv.

ut paulum exspectāret: *so that...might...*;

purpose clause with impf. subj.; translate after manū significat as a clarification

paulum: *a little*; adv. acc.

38 **manū significat:** *makes a sign with his hand*;

abl. of means

cērīs et stilō: *over...*; dat. of compound verb

illa: *that one*; i.e. the ghost, fem. sg. effigiēs

scrībentis: *of (the one)...*; i.e. the philosopher, gen. sg. pres. pple used as a substantive

39 **capitī:** *over...*; dat. of compound verb

catēnīs: abl. of means

idem...innuentem: *the (one)...*; i.e. ghost, acc.

pres. pple; idem is the acc. obj. of the pple

idem: *the same thing*; id-dem, acc. obj.

quod prius (innuēbat): *which...*; relative clause with comparative adv.: add the verb

40 **nec morātus:** dep. PPP moror: translate as

‘having Xed’ the philosopher is subject

sequitur: pres. dep. sequor: translate active

Ībat: impf. eō, īre

illa: *that one*; i.e. the ghost (fem. effigiēs)

lentō gradū: *with...*; abl. of manner

quasi gravis vinculīs: *as if...*; conditional clause of comparison; nom. adj., abl. of cause

41 **domūs:** gen. sg., 4th decl. domus

dīlāpsa: dep. PPP dīlābor: translate as ‘having Xed’ the ghost vanished

Dēsertus: PPP, the philosopher is subject

42 **herbās et folia concerpta:** acc. obj., PPP

signum: *as a sign*; acc. predicate

(in) locō: i.e. on the place where the ghost

vanished; abl. place where

Posterō diē: *on...*; abl. of time when

magistrātūs: acc. pl. obj.

43 **(et) monet:** *(and) he advises...*

ut...iubeant: *that...*; ind. command with pres.

subj. iubeō

illum locum effodī: *that that...*; ind. disc. with pres. pass. inf. effodiō

stō, -āre, stetī, statum: stand, stop, 8

Why does Athenodorus the Philosopher Ignore the Ghost the First Time?

It was common practice in Roman divination, the science of reading divine signs and omens, to seek a second sign to confirm the first. For this reason, the word *secundus* can mean “favorable,” because a second omen was taken to confirm that it was favorable. Note that the philosopher resumes his work after the first sound, but when the ghost makes another sound and confirms its presence, the philosopher looks back and follows the ghost.

In short, Athenodorus’ response is reasonable from a Roman point of view. He suspects that the first sound is just his imagination, but once he has a second sign as confirmation, he assumes that the sound and ghost are real and follows. This is scepticism. If Athenodorus continued to ignore the evidence, he would be expressing unhealthy scepticism and disbelief.

Word Building: NU- “nod”

The word **nūmen** is often translated as “divine power” but more specifically refers to a divine power that is able to “nod in approval” or deny a request. For this reason, **nūmen** can mean “divine approval” or “permission” as well as “divine power.”

nūmen, -inis n.: divine power/approval, 3

innuō, -ere: nod (to), gesture, 2

Word Building: CUB-, CUMB, “lie (down)” or “recline”

Note that on the facing page **incumbit** means to “lean over” the wax tablets and stylus while writing.

cubō (1): lie down, 1

accubō (1): lie at or beside, 1

incubō (1): lie on, 2

incumbō, -ere, -cubūī: lie on, lean over, 2

occumbō, -ere, -cubūī: lie (in death), 1

recubō (1): lie back, recline, 1

cubiculum, -ī n.: bedroom, 2

Word Building: POST “after”

Note how **post** is used as (a) preposition, (b) adverb, (c) adjective, and (d) adverbial conjunction below:

post: after, behind (*acc.*), 4

postea: afterwards, later, 2

posterus, -a, -um: following, next, 2

postquam: after, 2

Word Building: CARP-, CERP- “pluck” or “seize”

The two compounds below derive from **carpō, carpere:** *pluck, seize* and are easier to remember if you recall the phrase *carpe diem*, “Seize the day!”

concerpō, -ere, -psī, -ptum: pluck, pull, seize, 1

excerpō, -ere, -psī, -ptum: pick out, excerpt, 2

Inveniuntur ossa īserta catēnīs et implicita, quae corpus aevō terrāque putrefactum nūda et exēsa relīquerat vinculis; collēcta pūblicē sepeliuntur. 45
Domus posteā rīte condītīs mānibus caruit.

12. Et haec quidem affirmantibus crēdō; illud affirmāre aliīs possum. Est libertus mihi nōn illitterātus. Cum hōc minor frāter eōdem lectō quiēscēbat. Is vīsus est sibi cernere quendam in torō residentem, admoventemque capitī suō cultrōs, atque etiam ex ipsō vertice amputantem capillōs. Ubi illūxit, ipse circā 50
verticem tōnsus, capillī iacentēs reperiuntur.

admoveō, -ēre, -mōvī: move to
aevum, -ī n.: time, lifetime, life, (old) age, 2
affirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum: confirm, strengthen, 3
amputō (1): cut off or away, amputate
careō, -ēre, -uī: be lacking, be without (*abl*), 2
catēna, -ae f.: chain, shackle, 3
cernō, -ere, crēvī, crētum: discern, perceive
circā: about, around, 2
colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum: gather, collect, 3
culter, cultrī m.: knife; *pl.* scissors, shearers
exedō, -ēsse, -ēdī, exēsus: eat up, consume, 2
frāter, -tris m.: brother, 3
illitterātus, -a, -um: uneducated, illiterate
illūcescō, -ere, illūxī: grow light
īnsērō, -ere, -sēvī, -sertum: insert, mix

44 **ossa:** *bones*; neut. nom. pl. os
īserta...et implicita: PPP with *abl.* of means
quae...relīquerat: *which...*; neut. acc. pl. relative with *ossa* as antecedent
corpus...putrefactum: neut. nom. and PPP
aevō terrāque: *by...*; both are *abl.* of means
45 **nūda et exēsā:** neut. nom. predicative adjs. modifying *quae*; translate after *relīquerat*
vinculis: *abl.* of means with PPP *exēsā* or *implicita*
(ossa) collēcta: (*the bones*)...; PPP *colligō*
46 **rīte condītīs:** (*after*)...; PPP *condō*, ‘bury,’ modifying *mānibus*
mānibus: *from spirits*; *abl.* pl. of *mānēs*; *abl.* of separation common with *pf.* *careō*
47 **haec...affirmantibus crēdō:** *I trust (those) affirming these things*; i.e. these two stories above; *dat. ind. obj. pres. pple*, *haec* is neut. acc. of the *pple*
illud: *that one*; i.e. the 3rd and final story below
aliīs: *for others*; *dat.* of interest; Pliny confirms the 3rd and last story because he experienced it.
est...mihi: *dat.* of possession: translate as (1) ‘there is to me’ or (2) ‘I have’ where the subject

inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum: find, 3
lectus, -ī m.: bed, 1
mānēs, -ium m.: ghost, spirit of the dead, shade
nūdus, -a, -um: bare, nude
os, ossis n.: bone
posteā: afterwards, later, 2
pūblicus, -a, -um: public
putrefaciō, -ere, fēcī, factum: become rotten
quīdam, quae-, quod-: certain, one, someone, 3
reperiō -īre -pperī -pertum: find
rīte: duly, fitly, ritually
sepeliō, -īre, -īvī, sepultum: bury
tōndō, -ere, -dī, tōnsus: cut, shear, 2
torus, -ī m.: bed, couch

becomes the object
48 **libertus:** *a freedman*; a former slave of Pliny who had been freed but is still a loyal client
nōn illitterātus: *litotes*: i.e. somewhat educated
Cum hōc (libertō): *with this (freedman)*
minor (nātū): *younger*; ‘less (by birth),’ a common translation for this comparative adj.; usually with *abl.* of respect *nātū*, ‘by birth’
(in) eōdem lectō: *in the same bed*
Is: *he...*; i.e. the freedman
49 **vīsus est sibi:** *seemed to himself*; *pf. pass.* *videor* with a *dat.* of reference (*viewpoint*)
quendam... residentem, admoventemque... amputantem: *someone...*; three *pres. pples*
capitī suō: *toward...*; *dat.* of compound verb
50 **cultrōs:** *scissors, shears*; two knives fastened to form a pair of scissors for cutting hair
ex ipsō vertice: *from his head itself*; *vertex*, ‘peak,’ here and below means ‘head’
Ubi: *when...*
ipse: *he himself*; i.e. the freedman
52 **tonsus (est):** *3s pf. pass. tōndō*; add *est*
(et) capillī iacentēs: i.e. around him in the bed or ground; *nom. pl. pres. pple* *iaceō*

libertus, -ī m.: freedman, 4**vertex, -icis m.:** head, peak, top, 4**Conclusion of the Second Story: the Sceptical Philosopher Athenodorus**

The philosopher showed healthy scepticism, while the proconsul Curtius showed no scepticism:

1. The philosopher was not deterred by fear or by his imagination.
2. His focus on his tablets prevented his imagination from wandering and kept him clear-headed.
3. Although sceptical, he changed his mind after he received second confirmation of the evidence.
4. He immediately called the magistrates when he suspected that there was a body. Bodies are not buried in the city walls, so the philosopher rightly has public officials address the problem.
5. Once buried, the *manes*, “ghost,” no longer haunted the house.

Word Building: Synonyms for CHAINS

A **catēna** is a metal or iron chain. A **vinculum** is anything that fastens (*vincire*, “to bind”)—whether a rope or a chain—but is often translated as “chain.” A **compēs** is a binding for the feet (*pēs*, *pedis*).

catēna, -ae f.: chain, shackle, 3**compēs, compedis f.:** shackle, fetter (for a foot), 1**vinculum, -ī n.:** chain, 5**Third Story about Ghosts: Pliny’s own Freedman and Slave had their Hair Cropped**

In this third story, Pliny tells how his own freedman and slave on separate occasions had their hair cropped (cut short on top but kept long on the edges) by a ghost. Pliny then interprets the significance of the haircuts in light of events in his own life.

What is a Libertus?

A **libertus**, “freedman,” and **liberta**, “freedwoman,” are people who were once slaves but have been freed. In Roman society, a freedman or freedwoman often maintains ties with the former owner as a client in client and patron relationship (see p. 56 for an example). Do not confuse these terms with the adjective **liber, libera, liberum:** *free*, which can refer (1) in general to free people who are not slaves or (2) specifically to people who are free-born and have never been slaves.

The **libertus** on the facing page is a former slave of Pliny who had been manumitted (i.e. set free) and now assumed to role of client in a patron-client relationship with Pliny.

Word Building: Synonyms for “cut”**amputō (1):** cut off or away, amputate, 1**tōndō, -ere, -dī, tōnsus:** cut, shear, 2**dētōndō, -ere, -tōndī:** cut off, shear off (hair), 1**recīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus:** cut back/off, 1

The haircut received by the freedman—hair cut short on the top (*circā verticem*) but kept long on the edges to form a ring—resembles the tonsure haircut (Lat. *tonsūra*, “cutting”) worn by Christian monks.

At one time monks cut the top of the hair bald to resemble Saint Paul, who was apparently bald. But, a verse from the Bible, *Leviticus* 19:28, forbade the monks from cutting off hair on the sides. And so, the tonsure haircut became a way to mimic Saint Paul’s baldness and yet obey scripture. The tonsure haircut has a different significance for Pliny, as he will explain.

13. Exiguum temporis medium, et rursus simile aliud priori fidem fecit. Puer in paedagogio mixtus pluribus dormiebat. Venerunt per fenestras—ita narrat—in tunicis albis duo cubantemque detonderunt et qua venerant recesserunt. Hunc quoque tonsum sparsosque circa capillos dies ostendit. 55

14. Nihil notabile secutum, nisi forte quod non fui reus, futurus, si Domitianus sub quo haec acciderunt diutius vixisset. Nam in scrinio eius datus a Caro de me libellus inventus est; ex quo coniectari potest, quia reus moris est submittere capillum, recisos meorum capillos depulsi quod imminabat periculi signum fuisse. 60

accidō, -ere, -cidi: happen, fall to, 3

albus, -a, -um: white, 2

Carus, -i m.: Carus (i.e. Mettius Carus)

circā: about, around, 2

coniectō (1): conjecture, infer, put together

cubō (1): lie down

dēpellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsum: drive out

dētōndō, -ere, -tondī: cut off, shear off (hair)

diū: for a long time; *diutius*, longer, 2

Domitiānus, -i m.: Domitian

dormiō, -ire, -ivī: sleep

duo, duae, duo: two, 3

exiguus, -a, -um: small, scanty

fenestra, -ae f.: window, 2

fidēs, eī f.: loyalty, trust, belief, 2

forte: by chance, 3

immineō, -ere: tower over, threaten; be imminent, 3

inveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum: find, 3

52 **Exiguum temporis (erat) medium:** a small

(period) of time (was) in between

simile aliud priori: another similar to the

previous one; this is another story about a slave with hair cropped; neut. similis + dat. of special adj.

fidem fecit: built (my) trust; ‘made trust’

Puer: a slave-boy (of mine); i.e. Pliny’s

mixtus pluribus: mixed up with many; i.e. not distinguishable from the other slaves (other than he was Pliny’s slave); PPP *misceō* + dat. of association

53 **Venerunt...duo:** duo is nom. subject

ita narrat: so he says; parenthetical

54 **(puerum) cubantem:** (the boy)...; pres. pple

qua venerant: (in the place) where...; relative clause with relative adv. *qua*, ‘where’

55 **Hunc quoque tonsum:** this one...; i.e. the boy with PPP *tondō*; first acc. obj.; quoque, ‘also’

libellus, -i m.: accusation, little book, 2

misceō, -ere, -uī, mixtum: mix, mingle, 3

mōs, mōris m.: custom, way, 2

notabilis, -e: notable, worth mentioning

ostendō, -ere, -ī, ntum: show, promise

paedagogium, -i n.: school dormitory, page’s hall

plūs, plūris: more, 3

prior, prius: earlier, before, 3

recēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum: go back

recidō, -ere, -cidi, -cismus: cut back/off

reus, -i m.: defendant, one accused, 2

scrinium, -ūs m.: scroll box/case (cylindrical)

signum -i n.: signal, gesture, 3

spargō, -ere, -rsī, -rsum: scatter, disperse

submittō, -ere, -misi: send down, lower, let go, 2

tempus, -oris n.: time, 2

tondō, -ere, -di, tonsus: cut, shear, 2

tunica, -ae f.: tunic

vivō, -ere, vixī, victum: live, 3

because his hair is cut just as the freedman’s

sparsos circa capillos: 2nd acc. obj. with PPP

spargō; *circā* is an adverb

dies: daylight; nom. subj. of *ostendit*

56 **Nihil notabile secutum (est):** pf. pass. sequor: translate as pf. active

nisi forte quod non fui reus: except by chance (the fact) that I was not accused; 1s pf. sum, esse

futurus (reus): (although) going to be accused; fut. pple, concessive in sense

si Domitianus...vixisset: if Domitian had lived...; past contrary to fact condition (*si* plpf. subj., plpf. subj.) plpf. subj. *vivō* with fut. pple *futurus* (=quī fuisset) in place of the apodosis

57 **sub quo haec acciderunt:** under whom...; i.e. under whose rule; Domitian ruled AD 81-96

diutius: longer; comparative adv. *diū*

in scrinio eius: in his scroll box; this is a

cylindrical case to hold hand-written scrolls; in this case, the box includes Domitian's 'to do' list of paperwork and correspondence that the emperor did not address before his assassination

datus...libellus: *an accusation having been given by Caro about me;* a libellus is often a

"written accusation," PPP dare and abl. of agent

58 **potest:** *it is able...;* impersonal 3s + pass. Inf.

reīs: *for those accused;* dat. of interest

Moris est: *it is the custom;* 'it is of custom,'

gen. of description as predicate

59 **summittere capillum:** *to let hair go (long)*

recīsōs meōrum capillōs...fuisse: *that the cut hair of my own (people) was...;* meōrum refers to the libertus and puer, who are dependant on him as their patron and master respectively

dēpulsī quod imminēbat periculī signum: *a sign of the danger which was menacing, having been repulsed;* signum is nom. pred.; gen. PPP dēpulsī modifies gen. periculī

puer, -ī m.: boy, child, 4

Conclusion of Third Story about Ghosts: Why not a Simpler Explanation?

In this second part of the third story, Pliny narrates how his *puer*, "slave boy," had his hair cut by two figures. Pliny suggests that both what happened to his freedman earlier and to his slave on the facing page were intended as good omens that Pliny, who unknowingly was threatened with accusations and death under the emperor Domitian, would be saved from prosecution.

This interpretation by Pliny seems unreasonable and lacks the healthy scepticism shown by the philosopher in the second story. Why not assume that these two were victims of childish pranks: the freedman by his brother, and the boy by the others in the dormitory? The reason Pliny does not entertain a simpler interpretation for the haircuts is considered in the following pages.

What is a Paedagogium?

A **paedagogium** was a school for the training and educating of slaves. The Emperor had his own *paedagogium* for slaves to work in his imperial administration. The *puer*, "slave-boy," who is being trained is Pliny's slave, although Pliny does not state it at first. This explains why Pliny believes what happens to the freedman in the previous story is connected to what happens to the *puer* and why Pliny refers to the boy as *meōrum*, "(one) of my own," in line 8.

An Accusation Against Pliny during Domitian's Reign of Terror (AD 93-96)

The emperor **Domitian** ruled AD 81-96, but around 89 or, as some say, as late as 93 an increasing number of opponents in the Senate were formally accused and executed. This period until Domitian's assassination in 96 is now known as "Domitian's reign of terror."

Mettius Carus was a well known accuser who acted on behalf to Domitian to have senators formally accused and executed. When Pliny claims that there was a formal accusation submitted by Mettius Carus, Pliny suggests that he was on the list to be executed along with fellow senators under Domitian. And, when Pliny claims that the written accusation was in Domitian's *scrinium*, a cylindrical box for documents, he suggests that he would have been executed, if Domitian had not been assassinated before he could address the paperwork.

CID vs CĪD: The verbs **accidō**, "happen," and **recidō**, "cut back," on the facing page come from two different roots, as explained in an early information box (see p. 15). Compound verbs with a short vowel stem "cid" come from cadō, cadere, "fall," while compound verbs with a long vowel stem "cīd" come from caedō, caedere, "cut."

Surprisingly, **recidō**, "cut back," is the only compound that derives from caedō, caedere, "cut," in the entire book. There are 13 compound verbs in the book that derive from cadō, cadere, "fall."

15. Proinde rogō, ēruditiōnem tuam intendās. Digna rēs est quam diū multumque cōnsiderēs; nē ego quidem indignus, cui cōpiam scientiae tuae faciās. 16. Licet etiam utramque in partem—ut solēs—disputēs, ex alterā tamen fortius, nē mē suspēnsū incertumque dīmittās, cum mihi cōsulendī causa fuerit, ut dubitāre dēsinerem. Valē.

65

alter, -era, -erum: other (of two), 2
cōnsiderō (1): consider, examine
cōsulō, -ere: consult, console, consider (dat.), 3
cōpia, -ae f.: abundance, supply; opportunity, 2
dēsīnō, -ere: cease, leave off, 2
dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum: send away, 2
disputō (1): dispute, discuss, argue
diū: for a long time; *diūtius*, longer, 2

61 **(ut) ēruditiōnem tuam intendās:** *that you...;* ind. command with 2s pres. subj. governed by rogō; i.e. regarding the existence of ghosts
digna rēs est: *the matter is worthy*
quam diū...cōnsiderēs: *which you should consider for a long time and much;* i.e. the matter is the sort of thing worthy to consider for a long time and frequently; a relative clause of characteristic with 2s pres. subj. following dignus; multum is an adv.

62 **nē...quidem:** *not even...;* nē... quidem, ‘not even,’ emphasizes the intervening word
(sum) indignus
cui cōpiam scientiae tuae faciās: *for whom you should give a supply of your knowledge;* i.e. I am the sort of person worthy to receive your knowledge; a relative clause of characteristic with 2s pres. subj. faciō, cui is dat. of interest

63 **Licet...disputēs, tamen:** *although you should...; nevertheless...;* licet introduces a concessive clause with 2s pres. subj. (this construction originally was impers. licet ‘it is allowed’ and an jussive subj. (i.e. ‘you should

dubitō (1): doubt, hesitate, 2
ēruditiō, -iōnis f.: instruction
indignus, -a, -um: unworthy, 2
licet: it is allowed or permitted; although, 2
proinde: then, therefore, consequently, 2
rēs, rei f.: thing, matter, affair, 2
scientia, -ae f.: knowledge
soleō, -ēre, solitus sum: be accustomed, 3

dispute’)

utramque in partem: *on both sides;* i.e. of the issue

ut solēs: *as...;* parenthetical, clause of comparison

ex alterā (parte disputēs) fortius: *on one (side) you should argue more strongly;* i.e. the side in favor of the existence of ghosts; supply a 2s pres. jussive subj. disputēs from above; fortius is a comparative adv.

64 **nē...dīmittās:** *so that you may not...;* neg. purpose clause with 2s pres. subj. governing a double acc. (obj. and pred.)

suspēnsū: *in suspense, suspenseful;* adj. formed from PPP of suspendō, ‘hang’

cum mihi cōsulendī causa fuerit: *since my reason for consulting was...;* causal cum clause with pf. subj. sum and dat. of possession (translate as a possessive) and a gen. sg. gerund (-ing)

65 **ut dubitāre dēsinerem:** *so that...might...;* purpose with 1s impf. subj.

Valē: *Farewell;* sg. imperative

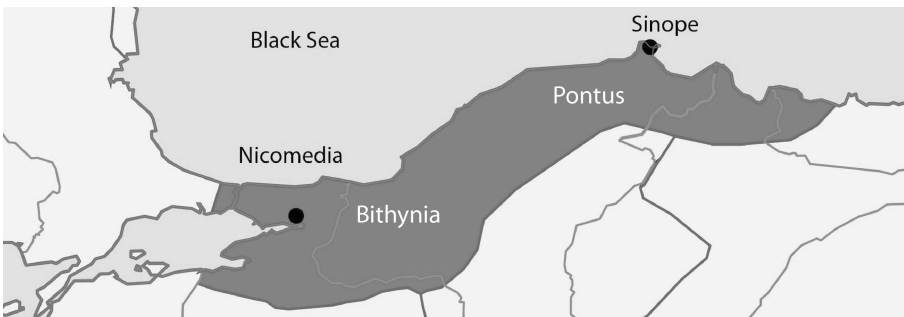


Fig. 3 Nicomedia and Sinope in Bithynia and Pontus (Lessons 26-7)

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum: ask, question, 5

The Ghost of Domitian is the Real Ghost in this Letter ¹

1. Pliny's Rhetorical Sleight of Hand

Foolish readers! This letter is not about ghosts—it is about Pliny and his reputation. Pliny **frames** the letter as an inquiry into questionable ghost stories so that he can introduce something unproven as if it were an undisputable fact. **Pliny's framing** encourages Sura to debate the merits of the various ghost stories but at the same time allows Pliny's claim that he too was a victim of Domitian's reign of terror to go unchallenged:

- Story #1:** Did Curtius Rufus passively fulfill a prophecy or did his belief make it self-fulfilling?
- Story #2:** Did Athenodorus, a sceptical philosopher, rid his house of an improperly buried ghost?
- Story #3:** Did Pliny's freedman and slave have their hair cropped by ghosts?
- Fact?:** Pliny faced an accusation and possible execution under Domitian's reign of terror.

2. Pliny was very successful under Domitian's reign of terror

Pliny made his reputation as a persuasive orator in the lawcourts in the 80s. And it was those skills that helped him, Tacitus, and many others advance under Domitian's regime (AD 81-96). He was selected by Domitian as a **Quaestor Caesaris**, "Financial Officer of Caesar," in 88 or 89, became a senator for life as a result, and was elected **praetor**, "judge," in 93 at the very moment when Domitian's reign of terror and prosecution of senators and others intensified. He continued to rise in a number of senior positions under the emperors Nerva (96-98) and Trajan (98-117) and served as *consul suffectus* (100) and lastly governor of Bithynia and Pontus (AD 110-2) under Trajan.

3. Loyalties were questioned after Domitian's assassination

Immediately after the death of Domitian in 96, the Senate passed a *damnatio memoriae*, in which all mention of Domitian was erased—even his image on coins were modified or melted down! In the years that followed, the bitterness turned from Domitian to those who supported and were enriched by the emperor. Since Pliny benefited so much under Domitian's regime and had even been praetor in 93, it seems reasonable to assume that Pliny's loyalties were questioned.

4. Domitian's ghost hovers over Pliny's letters

In numerous surviving letters Pliny condemns Domitian's actions and goes out of the way to point out how he advocated for those who were victims under his regime. The details of those letters are too numerous to address here. What is notable is that Pliny considered the question of loyalty important and did not discuss the accusation submitted by Carus and threat of punishment in other letters.

5. Why Sura? Was Sura aware of Pliny's framing?

Sura was consul in 102, 107, and possibly 93 or 97 and is thought to have been close to Trajan (AD 98-117). He was therefore very influential in the senate and with the emperor, and his opinion of Pliny could affect Pliny's political future. Sura is the sort of man Pliny would want to win over.

What remains unknown is whether Pliny expected Sura to focus on the ghost stories and accept Pliny's account of himself with Domitian as fact or Pliny anticipated that Sura would see through the framing and realize the true purpose of the letter. We may never know.

¹ Baraz, Y. (2012). Pliny's Epistolary Dreams and the Ghost of Domitian. *TAPA*, 142(1), 105-32 was the source for the title and interpretative framework of this page.

C. Plīnius Traiānō Imperātōrī

1

In aquae ductum, Domine, Nīcomēdēnsēs impendērunt HS XXX CCCXVIII, quī imperfectus adhūc omissus, dēstrūctus etiam est; rūrsus in alium ductum ērogāta sunt CC. Hōc quoque relictō novō impendiō est opus, ut aquam habeant, quī tantam pecūniam male perdidērunt. 2. Ipse pervēnī ad fontem pūrissimum, ex quō vidētur aqua dēbere perdūcī, sicut initiō temptātum erat, arcuātō opere, nē tantum ad plāna cīvitatīs et humilia perveniat. Manent adhūc paucissimī arcūs: possunt et ērigī quīdam lapide quadrātō, quī ex superiōre opere dētractus est; aliqua pars, ut mihi vidētur, testāceō opere agenda erit, id enim et facilius et vīlius. 3. Sed in prīmīs necessārium est mittī ā tē vel aquilegem vel architectum, nē rūrsus ēveniat quod accidit. Ego illud ūnum affirmō, et ūtilitātem operis et pulchritūdinem saeculō tuō esse dignissimam.

5

10

accidō, -ere, -cidī: happen, fall to, 3
affirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum: confirm, strengthen, 3
aliquis, -qua, -quid: some, any, 3
aquilex, -legis m.: water or aqueduct inspector
architectus, -ī m.: master builder
arcuātus, -a, -um: arched
arcus, -ūs m.: arch; bow, 2
dēstruō, -ere, -uī: destroy, ruin, tear down, 2
dētrahō, -ere, -xī, -ctum: pull away
ductus, -ūs m.: duct, aqueduct, 2
ērigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rectum: raise up, lift
ērogō (1): pay, draw
ēveniō, -īre: turn out, happen
facilis, -e: easy
fōns, fontis m.: origin, source
HS: abbreviation for a sesterce coin
humilis, -e: on the ground; humble, 2
impendium, -ī n.: expense, cost, 2
impendō, -ere, -pendī: spend, pay; weigh, 2
imperfectus, -a, -um: unfinished
initium, -ī n.: beginning, 2

lapis, -idis m.: stone, 3
necessārius, -a, -um: necessary; inimate friend, 2
Nīcomēdēnsēs, -um m.: people of Nicomedia, 1
omitō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum: neglect, let go
paucī, -ae, -a: few, 3
pecūnia, -ae f.: money, 2
perdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum: lose; destroy, ruin
perdūcō, -ere, -dūxī: lead or draw through, 2
perveniō, -īre, -vēnī: come to, arrive at, 2
plānus, -a, -um: flat, level
pulchritūdō, -inis f.: beauty
pūrus, -a, -um: clean
quadrātus, -a, -um: square; block-shaped
quīdam, quae-, quod-: certain, one, someone, 3
saeculum, -ī n.: age; generation, 3
sicut: just as, so as, 2
superior, -ius: previous; upper, higher
temptō (1): attempt; try, 2
testāceus, -a, -um: of brick, brick
ūtilitās, -tātis f.: utility, advantage
vīlis, -e: cheap, worthless

- 1 **C. Plīnius Traiānō Imperātōrī:** *Gaius Plinius (gives greetings) to Emperor Trajan*
 2 **In aquae ductum:** *on an aqueduct*
HS XXX CCCXVIII: 3,318,000 sesterces;
 ‘XXX (centena mīlia) + CCCXVIII (mīlia)’
 = 2765 soldiers’ annual pay (1200 per soldier)
 3 **imperfectus adhūc omissus, dēstrūctus etiam est:** *which was still unfinished, neglected, and even ruined;* all are 3s pf. pass. and take ‘est,’ materials were pulled down for other buildings
CC (milia): 200,000 (sesterces)
in alium ductum: *on another aqueduct*
 4 **Hōc quoque relictō:** *abl. abs.;* i.e. unfinished

- novō impendiō est opus:** *there is a need of...;*
 + *abl. separation;* opus est + *abl.* is an idiom
ut...habeant: *that they...;* result with pres. subj.
 5 **quī...perdidērunt:** *who...;* relative, the antecedent is the subject of habeant
ipse: *I myself;* intensive with 1s subject
 6 **vidētur:** *seems + inf.*
dēbere: *that it ought;* + pres. pass. inf. perdūcō
sicut...temptātum erat: *just as it had...;* clause of comparison with impersonal plpf. pass.
initiō: *at..., in...;* *abl.* time when
 7 **arcuātō opere:** *with...;* *abl.* means.
nē...perveniat: *so that...may not...;* neg.

purpose clause with pres. subj.
tantum...ad plāna...et humilia: *only to flat and low (places)*; tantum, ‘only so much,’ is an adv.
 8 **ērigī:** pass. inf. ērigō, ērigere
quīdam: *some*; i.e. arches, nom. pl.
lapide quadrātō: *with stone blocks*; ‘with squared stone,’ abl. of means
ex superiōre opere: *from the previous work*
 9 **ut mihi vidētur,;** *as it seems...*; parenthetical, clause of comparison with dat. of reference
testācō opere: abl. of means; i.e. brickwork
agenda erit: *will have to be...*; ‘will be (going) to be done,’ fut. pass. periphrastic (gerundive + sum) expresses necessity and is often translated with ‘must’ or ‘has to’
id enim (erit) et facilius et vilius.: *for that (will be) both..and...;* neuter comparative adjs.

10 **in prīmīs:** *in particular*; idiom, ‘primarily’
mittī ā tē vel aequilegem vel architectum: *that either...or...;* ind. disc. + pres. pass. inf. mittō, aequilegem and architectum are acc. subjects; the correlatives vel...vel.. ‘either...or even’ are inclusive, so either one or both can be sent
 11 **nē...ēveniat:** *so that...not...;* purpose clause with pres. subj. ēveniō, ‘turn out’ or ‘result’
(id) quod accidit: *what...;* ‘(that) which...’ a neut. relative clause, the antecedent is subject of ēveniat; accidit is pf.
illud ūnum: *that one thing;* i.e. what follows
 12 **et ūtilitātem...et pulchritūdinem...esse dignissimam.:** *(namely) that both...and...;* ind. disc. in apposition to illud ūnum
saeculō tuō: *of your age/times;* abl. of respect common with superlative of dignus

cīvitās, -ātis f.: city-state; citizenship, 7

dominus, -ī m.: master, sir, 5

Imperātor, -ōris m.: Emperor; commander, 4

mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum: send, 4

Traianus, -ī m.: Trajan, 5

Pliny Rescues Bithynia and Pontus from Financial Mismanagement (AD 111-113)

Pliny was appointed governor of the Roman **provinces** Bithynia and Pontus (Asia Minor along the Black Sea) from AD 111-113 during the reign of Trajan (AD 98-117). According to the numerous letters between Pliny and Trajan, a lack of oversight and **financial mismanagement** by local leaders and previous Roman governors led to unfinished projects, and Trajan appointed Pliny specifically to address these problems. **Nicomedia** is a Greek city on the waterway between the Mediterranean and Black Sea, and **Sinope** in the next letter is a Greek city in the middle of the southern coast on the Black Sea. Nicomedia and Sinope prospered from trade between the Roman Empire and Black Sea.

Both cities are building aqueducts, and Pliny sends this letter to update Trajan and to request an expert on aqueduct-building. This letter reveals (a) how governors communicated and interacted with the Emperor, (b) how much or little governors were involved with local governments, and (3) how the Roman presence encouraged and oversaw large public projects such as aqueducts and sewers.

Word Building: Pendeō, Pendō, and “Spending”

Both verbs mean “hang,” but the differences are important. **pendeō, -ēre** means “be hanging” or “be suspended,” while causative **pendō, -ere** and its compounds mean “make (acc.) hang.”

Pendō, -ere also means “weigh” or “pay” because of the role of the balance scale in buying goods. Romans often paid for items by “making them hang” on a balance scale to get an exact measurement, and this activity of ‘hanging’ was associated with “weighing out” and “paying” for goods.

The derivatives “spend” and “expense” are excellent ways to remember this word.

pendeō, -ēre, pependī: hang, hang down, 4

pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsūm: hang, make hang, weigh, pay, 0

expēndō, -ere, -pendī, -pēnsūm: pay, expend, weigh out, 1

impēndium, -ī n.: expense, cost, 2

impēnsus, -a, -um: expensive, great, 1

impēndō, -ere, -pendī, -pēnsūm: spend, pay; weigh, 2

suspendō, -ere, -pendī, -pēnsūm: hang up, 5

C. Plīnius Traiānō Imperātōrī

1

Sinōpēnsēs, Domine, aquā dēficiuntur; quae vidētur et bona et cōpiōsa ab sextō decimō miliārīō posse perdūcī. Est tamen statim ab capite paulō amplius passūs mīlle locus suspectus et mollis, quem ego interim explōrārī modicō impendiō iussī, an recipere et sustinēre opus possit. 2. Pecūnia cūrantibus nōbīs contracta nōn dēerit, sī tū, Domine, hoc genus operis et salūbritātī et amoenitātī valdē sitientis colōniae indulseris.

amoenitās, -tātis f.: pleasantness, charm, 2

amplus, -a, -um: ample, full, spacious

bonus, -a, -um: good, noble

colōnia, -ae f.: colony

contractus, -a, -um: drawn together

cōpiōsus, -a, -um: copious, abundant

cūrō (1): care for, take care of, 2

decimus, -a, -um: a tenth

dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: fail, be lacking, 2

dēsum, -esse, -fuī: fail, be lacking, 2

explōrō (1): explore, search

impendium, -ī n.: expense, cost, 2

indulgēō, -ēre, -sī: indulge, be gracious, 2

interim: meanwhile, in the meantime, 3

miliārīum, -ī n.: milestone

mille pl. milia, ium n.: thousand, 2

modicus, -a, -um: moderate, small, 2

mollis, -e: soft, 2

pecūnia, -ae f.: money, 2

perdūcō, -ere, -dūxī: lead or draw through, 2

recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: take back, recover

salūbritās, -tātis f.: salubrity, healthiness

sextus, -a, -um: sixth

Sinōpēnsēs, -um m.: people of Sinope, Sinopians

sitiens, sitientis: thirsty

suspiciō, ere, suspexī, suspectum: look up (at), 2

sustineō, -ēre, -uī: hold up, sustain, endure, 3

valdē: very, very much

1 **C. Plīnius Traiānō Imperātōrī:** *Gaius Plinius (gives greetings) to Emperor Trajan*

2 **Sinōpēnsēs:** *the people of Sinope*; subject
Domine: *Master*; voc. direct address; Dominus does mean ‘slave master’ but the voc. is never used by slaves this way; instead, it is used here like ‘sir’ as a sign of respect to Trajan
dēficiuntur: *are falling short*; ‘are made lacking,’ 3p pres. pass.; the people have water but not enough of it to meet their needs
aquā: *from...*; abl. of separation
quae vidētur: *which seems...*; relative clause
et bona et cōpiōsa: *both...and...*; modifying fem. sg. quae

ab sextō decimō miliārīō: *from the 16th milestone*; i.e. 16 miles outside the city; there are mile markers every mile on the road leading from the walls of the city. 1 mile is 1000 paces.

3 **posse perdūcī:** inf. possum, pass. inf. perdūcō
Est tamen statim ab capite...locus suspectus et mollis: *however there is immediately from the source a place suspect and soft...*; locus in subject; statim, ‘immediately,’ here means ‘nearby’ or ‘very close’

ab capite: i.e. the (fountain)head or source of the spring

paulō amplius (quam) passūs mīlle: *for a*

little more (than) a mile; ‘more by a little,’ comparative adv. + abl. of degree of difference; mille passūs (‘a thousand paces’ or ‘a mile’) is an acc. of extent in a clause of comparison with missing quam

4 **quem...iussī:** *which...*; relative clause, locus is the antecedent; 1s pf. iubeō

explōrārī: pres. pass. inf.

modicō impendiō: *at..., for...*; abl. of price

5 **an...possit:** *whether it is...*; ind. question with pres. subj. possum; opus is neut. acc. obj.

cūrantibus (opus) nōbīs: *for us...*; dat. interest and pres. pple; assume opus as obj. of the pple

6 **dēerit, sī...indulseris:** *will..., if you indulge...*; a fut. more vivid condition (sī fut. pf., fut.); fut. dēsum and 2s fut. pf. indulgēō; often the fut. pf. (‘will have Xed’) is translated in English as pres. with fut. sense; the fut. pf. is often used alongside a fut. to express a future action that is completed just before a future action
et salūbritātī et amoenitātī: *both for...and for...*; dat. of purpose

7 **valdē sitientis colōniae:** *of a...*; gen. sg. modifying the two datives; Sinope was a Greek city reestablished as a Roman Colonia by Julius Caesar in 47 BC

genus, -eris n.: birth, lineage; people, kind, 4

Sinope and Romanization on the Black Sea

At **Nicomedia** Pliny supervised an aqueduct project that had already begun, but here in **Sinope** Pliny asks the Emperor for permission to start an entirely new aqueduct project. The people had water, but not enough to meet their needs, and Pliny has found a suitable water spring 16 miles from the city.

Sinope was an old Greek colony that Julius Caesar made a **Roman colony** and renamed Colonia Iulia Felix in 47 BC. This designation set aside land for landless Romans and veteran soldiers to resettle, a practice that not only provided pensions for retired soldiers but also led to **Romanization**: the spread of the Latin language and Roman culture to people who would in turn (a) be loyal to Rome, (b) be able to defend Roman rule, and (c) provide soldiers for the next generation of Roman armies.

Roman Support for Aqueduct Construction

1. Roman governors and Emperor encourage aqueduct construction.

This support includes (a) oversight and (b) contributing master-builders not available in the area.

2. Local governments and inhabitants pay for the entire cost.

Pliny assumes that the people of Sinope and Nicomedia will pay—despite past mismanagement. Trajan in an unread reply hints at partial funding but is glad that Sinope will pay for it.

3. Pliny, as governor, is hands-on and knowledgeable about building materials, terrain, and water sources.

If there was financial mismanagement before Pliny's arrival, Pliny may have included such details to ensure the emperor that Pliny is avoiding future financial mismanagement.

Aqueducts make Roman Cities more appealing than Non-Roman Cities

1. **Abundant fresh water improves health.** Inhabitants do not have to drink water mixed with human waste or other contaminants and are less likely to suffer from dehydration.

2. **An improved sewage system makes people healthier.** Gravity-fed aqueducts must flow out of the city as quickly as they flow in. This ensures swift removal of human waste and other contaminants.

3. **Reliable and accessible water makes citizens more productive:** Women, who traditionally are tasked with walking great distances for water daily, can save their time and energy for other tasks.

4. **Abundant water for farms and businesses.** Irrigation for farms and gardens is possible. Bakeries, fulleries (laundries), and restaurants who rely on daily access to water can thrive.

5. **Aqueducts promote the development of public latrines, baths, and urban infrastructure.** Once a ready source of gravity-fed water is available, other Roman amenities can be added.

Large Roman Numbers in Lesson 27 on Nicomedia

Ellipsis is common with large numbers and often some form of neuter plural **mīlia**, “thousands,” is missing. Note that when XXX precedes the CCCXVIII, it indicates an even larger denomination:

$$\text{XXX (centena mīlia) CCCXVIII (mīlia)} = (30 \times 100,000) + (318 \times 1000) = 3,318,000$$

$$\text{CC (mīlia)} = (200 \times 10,000) = 200,000 \text{ sesterces}$$

These amounts cannot be converted into dollars, but we know that under the Emperor Domitian (81-96) a soldier's pay was increased to 1200 sesterces per year. So, 3,318,000 is equivalent to the labor of 2765 soldiers for a year, and 200,000 is equivalent to the labor of 177 soldiers for a year. These projects must have provided reliable income for many local inhabitants working on the project.

C. Plīnius Traiānō Imperātōrī

1

Proximō annō, Domine, gravissimā valētūdine usque ad perīculum vītae vexātus iatralipten assūmpsī; cuius sollicitūdini et studiō tuae tantum indulgentiae beneficiō referre grātiam parem possum. 2. Quārē rogō dēs eī cīvitatē Rōmānam. Est enim peregrīnae condiōnis manūmissus ā 5 peregrīnā. Vocātur ipse Arpocrās, patrōnam habuit Thermuthin Theōnis, quae iam prīdem dēfūncta est. Item rogō dēs iūs Quirītium lībertīs Antōniae Maximillae, ōrnātissimae fēminae, Hediae et Antōniae Harmeridī; quod ā tē petente patrōnā petō.

Antōnia, -ae f.: Antonia, 2

Arpocrās, -tis m.: Harpocras, Arpocras, 3

assūmō, -ere, -sumpī: take to oneself, take up

beneficiū, -ī n.: favor, benefit, kindness, 2

condiciō, -ciōnis f.: condition, state

dēfungor, -ī, dēfunctus sum: die; finish, 2

grātia, -ae f.: thanks, gratitude, favor, 3

Harmeris, -īs f.: Harmeris

Hedia, -ae f.: Hedia

iātraliptes, -ae m.: ointment doctor, therapist, 3

indulgentia, -ae f.: indulgence, graciousness, 2

item: also, likewise

iūs, iūris n.: justice, law, right, 3

manūmittō, -ere: manumit, 2

Maximilla, -ae f.: Maximilla

ōrnātus, -a, -um: ornate, equipped

par, paris: equal

patrōna, -ae f.: patron, 3

prīdem: for a long time, long since, 2

quārē: for which reason, for this reason, therefore

Quirītēs, -ium m.: Quirites (Romans), 2

sollicitūdō, -inis f.: anxiety, worry, 2

studium, -ī n.: enthusiasm; study, pursuit, 3

Theōn, -is m.: Theon

Thermuthis, -is f.: Thermuthis

usque: up to

valētūdō, -dinis f.: health, strength, 2

vexō (1): vex, annoy, trouble, harass

vīta, -ae f.: life, 3

1 **C. Plīnius Traiānō Imperātōrī:** *Gaius Plinius (gives greetings) to Emperor Trajan*

2 **Proximō annō:** *last year;* ‘in the nearest year’
abl. time when; proximus points to the past
Domine: i.e. Sir; voc. direct. address.

gravissimā valētūdine: *by the gravest health;*
abl. of means or cause with PPP vexātus
usque ad perīculum vītae: *up to...;* Pliny
thought that he might lose his life

3 **vexātus:** (I)...; PPP vexō modifying 1s subject
iatralipten: Greek acc.

cuius sollicitūdini et studiō...possum: *to whose...;* relative clause with iatralipten as
antecedent; gen. sg. cuius modifies the two dat.
ind. objs. governed by referre

tuae tantum indulgentiae beneficiō: *by the...;*
subjective gen. and abl. of means

4 **tantum:** *only;* adv.

grātiam parem: *equal gratitude;* Pliny wishes
to show favor and gratitude equal in value to
the help that the doctor gave to Pliny
(ut) dēs: *that you...;* ind. command with 2s
pres. subj. dare governed by rogō; assume a

missing ‘ut’

eī: *to him;* dat. ind. obj. from is, ea, id

5 **cīvitatē:** *citizenship;* elsewhere, ‘city-state’

Est...peregrīnae condiōnis: *he is of foreign-born status;* i.e. not a Roman citizen
gen. of description as pred. following est
(et) manūmissus ā peregrīnā: *and...;* PPP and
abl. of agent; the second predicate following est
The doctor was a slave who had been freed.

6 **ipse:** *he himself;* subject

Arpocrās: nom. pred. following pass. vocātur
Thermuthin Theōnis: *Thermuthis (daughter) of Theon;* women are often identified by a
patronymic (the gen. of their father’s name)

7 **iam prīdem:** *now for a long time*
dēfūncta est: pf. dep.: translate as active
(ut) dēs: *that you...;* see note for line 4 above
iūs Quirītium: *full Roman citizenship;* ‘the
right of Roman citizens’ acc. obj. and gen. pl.
lībertīs: *to the freedwomen;* dat. ind. obj.

Antōniae Maximillae: gen. sg. with 2 names;
She was their domina and now their patrona.

8 **ōrnātissimae fēminae:** gen. in apposition

8 **Hediae et Antōniae Harmeridī:** *to Hedia and Antonia Harmeris*; dat. in apposition to *libertīs* **quod ā tē...petō.:** *which...;* *iūs Quirītium* is the antecedent

Maximilla, the master who manumitted the two woman and was now their patron. Pliny says that he is asking the emperor on behalf of the request made by the patrona herself

9 **petente patrōnā:** abl. abs.; i.e. Antonia

peregrīnus, -ī m.: foreigner, non-citizen, 4

Rōmānus, -a, -um: Roman, 9

Pliny in Rome asks Trajan for Grants of Citizenship in AD 98

The next three letters 10.5-7 were written in the year 98, about 13 years before Pliny became governor of Bithynia and Pontus in 111-3. In 98, Pliny was *Praefectus Aerarii Saturni*, “Prefect of the Treasury of Saturn” (i.e. State Treasury), and in his capacity as Prefect he submitted requests for citizenship to the Emperor Trajan and received a response from Trajan.

An **iatraliptes** is a doctor (Grk. *iatros*) who uses ointments (Grk. *alipta*). What he does is uncertain, but it may involve anointing, rubbing, and treating the body just as a modern **physical therapist** does.

Women and Social Mobility

Women as Slave-owners and Slaves, Patronae and Clients, Freedwomen and Citizens

1. Thermuthis and Antonia Maximilla were **dominae** (slave-owners) and **patronae** (patrons) to the slaves they personally freed. Thermuthis was a **perigrīna** (Egyptian), and Antonia, a **cīvis**.
2. Hedia and Antonia Harmeris were slaves who became **libertae** (freedwomen), and, along with the freedman Harpocras, became Roman citizens (**cīvēs**). Such was social mobility in Rome.

Cīvēs vs. Peregrinī

Under Roman law, free people were either **cīvēs**, “citizens,” or **peregrinī**, “foreigners.” In other words, **peregrinī** were non-citizens—foreign residents in the empire without Roman citizenship.

When Pliny says on the facing page that Harpocras “est enim peregrīnae condiciōnis manūmissus ā peregrīnā,” Pliny is declaring that (a) Harpocras was born without Roman citizenship, (b) was a slave, who was later freed, and (c) his former master who then became his patron, Thermuthis of Theon, was herself without Roman citizenship. (Thermuthis is an Egyptian name.)

Mention of Thermuthis’ death explains why Pliny rather than Thermuthis is making the request (*petitiō*) on behalf of Harpocras. Pliny is doing a favor for Harpocras a patron does for a client.

Iūs Quirītium vs. Cīvitās Rōmāna

Both **Iūs Quirītium**, “full Roman citizenship” (lit. “Right of the Quirites/Romans”) and **Cīvitās Rōmāna**, “Roman citizenship,” extend over the same rights, but while the designation **Iūs Quirītium** can be offered to *libertī*, “freedpeople,” of *cīvēs* (e.g. Hedia and Antonia Harmeris), the designation **Cīvitās Rōmāna** is offered to *peregrinī* (e.g. Harpocras). This distinction explains why Pliny requests **Iūs Quirītium** for Hedia and Antonia Harmeris, and **Cīvitās Rōmāna** for Harpocras. Citizenship included the following rights and allows citizens to avoid a poll tax paid by non-citizens:

<i>iūs suffrāgīi</i> et honōrum	<i>right of voting and obtaining public offices</i>	
<i>iūs commercīi</i>	<i>right of commerce</i>	(ability to enforce contracts in court)
<i>iūs cōnnūbiī</i>	<i>right of marriage</i>	(ability to enforce inheritance, etc.)

Non-citizens, of course, can intermarry and have commerce, but only citizens can enter Roman courts and have business contracts and the rights of marriage and inheritance enforced and protected by law.

C. Plīnius Traiānō Imperātōrī

1

Agō grātiās, Domine, quod et iūs Quirītium lībertīs necessāriae mihi fēminae et cīvitātem Rōmānam Arpocratī, iātralīptae meō, sine morā indulstī. Sed cum annōs eius et cēsum sicut praecēperās ēderem, admonitus sum ā perītīōribus dēbuisse mē ante eī Alexandrīnam cīvitātem impetrāre, deinde Rōmānam, quoniam esset Aegyptius. 2. Ego autem, quia inter Aegyptiōs cēterōsque peregrīnōs nihil interesse crēdēbam, contentus fueram hoc solum scribere tibi, esse eum ā peregrīnā manūmissum patrōnamque eius iam prīdem dēcessisse. Dē quā ignōrantīā meā nōn queror, per quam stetit ut tibi prō eōdem homine saepius obligārer. Rogō itaque, ut beneficiō tuō lēgitimē fruī possim, tribuās eī et Alexandrīnam cīvitātem et Rōmānam. Annōs eius et cēsum, nē quid rūsus indulgentiam tuam morārētur, lībertīs tuīs quibus iusserās mīsī.

10

admoneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum: warn, advise, admonish, 2

Aegyptius, -a, -um: Egyptian, 2

Alexandrīnus, -a, -um: Alexandrian, 3

Arpocrās, -tis m.: Harpocras, Arpocras, 3

autem: however, moreover, 2

beneficium, -ī n.: favor, benefit, kindness, 2

cēseō, -ēre, -uī, -um: enroll, register, 2

cēterī, -ae, -a: the remaining, rest, others, 3

contentus, -a, -um: content, satisfied, 2

dēcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum: depart; die, 2

deinde: then, next, 3

ēdō, -ere, -didī: give out, put forth

fruor, -ī, fructus sum: enjoy (abl.)

grātiā, -ae f.: thanks, gratitude, favor, 3

homō, -inis m./f.: person, people; human

iātralīptēs, -ae m.: ointment doctor, therapist, 3

ignōrantia, -ae f.: ignorance

impetrō (1): acquire, obtain, 2

indulgentia, -ae f.: indulgence, graciousness, 2

indulgeō, -ēre, -sī: indulge, be gracious, 2

intersum, -esse, -fuī: be in, take part in, 2

itaque: and so

iūs, iūris n.: justice, law, right, 3

lēgitimus, -a, -um: lawful, legal

manūmittō, -ere: manumit, 2

mora, -ae f.: delay, hesitation, 2

necessārius, -a, -um: necessary; inimate friend, 2

obligō (1): bind up, oblige

patrōna, -ae f.: patron, 3

perītus, -a, -um: experienced, skilled

praecipio, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: instruct

prīdem: for a long time, long since, 2

queror, querī, questus sum: complain, 2

Quirītēs, -ium m.: Quirites (Romans), 2

quoniam: seeing that, 2

saepe: often, 3

sicut: just as, so as, 2

sine: without (*abl.*), 2

tribuō, -ere: assign, grant, give

1 **C. Plīnius Traiānō Imperātōrī:** *Gaius Plinius (gives greetings) to Emperor Trajan*

2 **Agō grātiās:** *I give thanks*; agō grātiās is a common idiom for ‘give thanks’

Domine: voc. direct address

Quod...indulstī: *because you...*; causal clause = 2s pf. indulgeō, ‘indulge,’ ‘graciously give’

iūs Quirītium: *full Roman citizenship*; ‘the right of Roman citizens’ acc. and gen. pl.

lībertīs: *for...*, *to...*; dat. ind. obj.

necessāriae mihi fēminae: *of a woman, a very close friend to me*; i.e. the patrona

3 **et cīvitātem Rōmānam:** *and Roman citizenship*; a second acc. obj.

Arpocratī: *to...*; dat. ind. obj.

iātralīptae meō: dat. in apposition to Arpocratī

4 **cum...ēderem:** *when I gave out...*; cum clause with 1s impf. ēdō, (ē + dō, dare)

eius: *his*; i.e. Arpocras’, gen. sg.

sicut praecēperās: *just as...*; clause of comparison with 2s plpf. praecipio

admonitus sum: pf. pass. admoneō

ā perītīōribus: *by (those)...*; abl. of agent and comparative of perītus; likely Pliny’s staff

- 5 **dēbuisse mē...impetrāre**: *that I ought...*; ind. disc. with pf. debeō with a complementary inf. **ante**: *previously, before*; adv. **eī**: *for him*; i.e. Arpocras, dat. of interest **Alexandrīnam cīvītātem**: *Alexandrian citizenship*
- 6 **Rōmānam (cīvītātem)**: *Roman (citizenship) quoniam esset Aegyptius*: *because (he)...*; assume Arpocras as subject; subjunctive of a subordinate verb within ind. disc.; impf. subj. sum; Harpocras is a non-Greek Egyptian
- 7 **inter Aegyptiōs cēterōsque peregrīnōs nihil interesse**: *that there is no difference...*; ind. disc. governed by crēdebam, lit. ‘it differs nothing,’ nihil is not acc. subject but an adv. acc. (inner acc) and inf. interesse is impersonal **hoc solum**: *this alone*; i.e. what follows
- 8 **esse eum ā peregrīnā manūmissum**: (*namely that he was...*; ind. disc. with pf. pass. manūmittō in apposition to hoc solum above **patrōnamque eius iam prīdem dēcessisse**: *and that his patrona...*; second ind. disc. in apposition to hoc; patrōnam is acc. subject and pf. act. inf. dēcēdō means ‘die’ or ‘decease’ **iam prīdem**: *now for a long time*
- 9 **Dē quā ignōrantiā meā**: *about this...*; or ‘about

which...’ a connective relative; meā = ‘of mine’ **per quam stetit ut tibi prō eōdem homine saepius obligārer**: *through which it (now) stands that I am obliged to you even more for the same man*; impersonal 3s pf. stāre + result clause with 1 sg. impf. subj.; saepius is a comparative adv. (‘even more often’)

10 **ut...possim**: *so that...I may...*; purpose with 1s pres. subj. possum—not an indirect command **beneficiō tuō...fruī**: *to...*; dep. inf. fruor (translate active) governs an abl. object **lēgitimē**: adv.

11 **(ut) tribuās...Rōmānam (cīvītātem)**: (*that you...both...and...*; ind. command with pres. subj. governed by rogō; cīvītās: ‘citizenship’ **eī**: *for him*; dat. ind. obj.

12 **nē quid...morārētur**: *so that not anything may...*; neg. purpose clause with impf. dep. subj. moror: translate as active. quid, ‘anything’ is an indef. pronoun after sī, nisi, num and nē **libertīs tuīs**: *to...*; dat. ind. obj., these are clearly administrators who support Trajan **quibus (mē mittere) iusserās**: *to whom you had ordered (me to send them)*; relative clause and dat. ind obj.; ellipsis

ante: before, in front of (*acc.*), 6

inter: between, among (*acc.*), 9

prō: before; for, in behalf of (*abl.*), 8

Harpocras must apply for Alexandrian Citizenship first and only then Roman Citizenship

In this follow-up to Letter 10.5, Pliny thanks Trajan for approving the Roman citizenship requests but is reminded by others that he failed to explain adequately Harpocras’ background and should have requested Alexandrian citizenship first and only afterwards requested Roman citizenship.

Now, Pliny asks that Trajan give both forms of citizenship to correct Pliny’s own mistake.

Alexandrian Citizenship: When the emperor Augustus (31 BC-AD 14) seized Egypt as a Roman province in 30 BC, he acknowledged the Greeks inhabiting the three major Greek cities in Egypt—Alexandria, Ptolemais, and Naucratis—as having citizenship distinct from the indigenous Egyptians. This citizenship was named after Alexandria, the most important of those three cities. Those with Alexandrian citizenship—just as Roman citizens—were exempt from the poll tax (fixed tax on each person in the empire) paid by indigenous Egyptians. **Oddly, as Pliny notes in the letter, indigenous Egyptians who wanted Roman citizenship had to request and earn Alexandrian citizenship first.**

Addressing the Emperor Trajan as “Domine”

Domine: In the master-slave relationship *dominus* commonly means “slave-master,” but slaves apparently did not call masters ‘Domine’ in Latin literature. Although the word is clearly problematic, when Pliny addresses Trajan as “Domine”, he is not acknowledging that Trajan is a sort of slave-master and Pliny is his slave. Instead, it seems to be a private address of respect similar to “sir.”

Traiānus Plīniō

1

Cīvitātem Alexandrīnam secundum īnstitūtiōnem p̄ncipum nōn temere dare p̄posuī. Sed cum Arpocrātī, iātraliptae tuō, iam cīvitātem Rōmānam impetrāverīs, huic quoque petītiōnī tuae negāre nōn sustineō. Tū, ex quō nomō sit, nōtum mihi facere dēbēbis, ut epistulam tibi ad Pompēium Plantam 5 praefectum Aegyptī amīcum meum mittam.

Aegyptius, -a, -um: Egyptian, 2**Alexandrīnus, -a, -um:** Alexandrian, 3**Arpocrās, -tis m.:** Harpocras, Arpocras, 3**iātraliptes, -ae m.:** ointment doctor, therapist, 3**impetrō (1):** acquire, obtain, 2**īnstitūtiō, -iōnis f.:** custom, institution, set up**negō (1):** deny, say that...not; refuse (dat.), 3**nomus, -ī m.:** district, nome, province**petītiō, -iōnis f.:** petition, request**Planta, -ae m.:** Planta (proper name)**Pompeius, -iī m.:** Pompey**praefectus, -ī m.:** Prefect, overseer**p̄nceps, -cipis m./f.:** emperor; first man, leader**p̄pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum:** propose, 2**secundum:** following, according to (acc.)**sustineō, -ēre, -uī:** hold up, sustain, endure, 3**temere:** rashly, blindly, without cause

1 **Traiānus Plīniō (salutat):** *Trajan (gives greetings) to Pliny;* nom. subj. and dat. ind. obj.

2 **secundum īnstitūtiōnem p̄ncipum:** *according to...+ acc.; lit. 'following the...+ acc.'* secundum is here used as a preposition **p̄ncipum:** *of the emperors;* p̄ncipēs, 'leaders,' is a synonym for imperātōrēs, "emperors," and the rule of an emperor was often called a "principate"

nōn temere: litotes; i.e. with good reason

3 **p̄posuī:** *I have proposed, I have resolved;* p̄pōnō + complementary inf.

3 **Cum...impetrāverīs:** *since you...;* causal cum clause with 2s pf. subj.

Arpocrātī, iātraliptae tuō: *for...;* dat. of interest and dat. of apposition respectively

4 **huic quoque petītiōnī tuae:** dat. ind. obj. of negāre; translate tuae as 'of yours'

nōn sustineō: *I do not endure, I cannot bear;* i.e. I do not want

ex quō nomō sit: *from what...;* ind. question with 3s pres. subj. sum; quō is an interrogative

adj. modifying nomō; the subject of sit is Arpocrās; a nomus is an administrative district in Egypt

5 **Nōtum...facere:** *make (obj.) known;* facere governs a double acc. (obj. and pred.); nōtum is PPP nōscō and the acc. pred.; the ind. question *ex quō...sit* is the other object

ut...mittam: *so that...I may...;* purpose clause with 1s pres. subj.; tibi is dat. ind. object

tibi: *for...;* dat. of interest, i.e. on your behalf

ad Pompēium Plantam: *to Pompeius Planta;* Since Augustus, Egypt was under the Emperor's personal control. By tradition senators were not allowed to enter Egypt without the emperor's permission, and the emperor appointed a Roman of equestrian rank, here Pompeius Planta, to govern Egypt under the emperor's direction

6 **praefectum Aegyptī:** *Prefect of Egypt;* in apposition to Pompēium Plantam

amīcum meum: also in apposition to Pompēium Plantam

Evidence of the Emperor Trajan's Leadership and Character

1. Trajan follows the legal precedent set by previous emperors when possible

To follow precedent is to give priority to previous decisions. Trajan does not decide arbitrarily or just choose what feels best but respects the decisions of his predecessors on Alexandrian citizenship:

secundum institutiōnem p̄ncipum according to the custom of the Emperors 1. 2

2. Trajan shows understanding rather than frustration or anger toward Pliny

Rather than criticize Pliny and demand that he rigidly follow precedent and apply for Alexandrian citizenship first and reapply for Roman citizenship later, Trajan allows Harpocras to keep the Roman citizenship as a show of respect to Pliny (*negāre nōn sustineō*, l. 4) but makes it clear that he will respect precedent as well and arrange the necessary Alexandrian citizenship through Pompeius Planta, Prefect of Egypt.

3. Patron-Client Relationship: Trajan is patron to Pliny, as Pliny is the patron to Harpocras

When Trajan identifies Harpocras as Pliny's therapist (Arpocrātī, iātraliptae tuō, l. 2), Trajan is acknowledging (a) that Pliny is seeking special treatment for Harpocras precisely because Harpocras is Pliny's client, and (b) therefore Trajan, as patron to Pliny, will fulfill the special request as a favor to Pliny. Without these personal patron-client relationships, Harpocras' request would certainly have never been considered.

The same is true for the citizenship granted to the *libertae* Hedia and Antonia Harmeridis. In Letter 10.6 Pliny mentions that their patron Antonia Maximilla is a *necessāria*, 'a very close friend,' to him. Pliny is doing a personal favor for a friend, and Trajan, as patron to Pliny, honors that request.

Nomus and Alexandrian Citizenship

A **nomus** (Grk. nomōs), "nome" or "district," is an administrative division in Egypt. (Compare the division of the United States into states and counties.) In the follow-up letter not in this book (Letter 10.10) we learn that Harpocras is from the **nomus** of Memphis, a major city in Egypt.

The years and census information that Pliny is submitting will be passed along by Trajan's administration to Pompeius Planta, who will ensure that Harpocras' Alexandrian citizenship is registered under the correct **nomus**.

Note that Harpocras was previously a slave and could not have been registered. But since he is now a *libertus*, "freedman," this registration is possible upon approval.

Word Building: SEQU-, SECU- "following"

Note that the preposition **secundum** means "following" or "according to." The adj. **secundus** can mean "second" (i.e. following the first) but more often "favorable."

sequor, -ī, secūtus sum: follow, pursue, 8	follow
īnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum: follow, ensue, 1	+ on
persequor, -ī, -secūtus sum: pursue, follow up, 1	+ through
prōsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum: pursue, escort, 2	+ in front (i.e. escort)
subsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum: follow after, 1	+ after, up
secundus, -a, -um: following; favorable, 2	
secundum: following, according to (acc.), 1	

C. Plīnius Calpurniae suae s.

1

Numquam sum magis dē occupātiōnibus meīs questus, quae mē nōn sunt passae aut proficīscēntem tē valētūdīnis causā in Campāniam prōsequī aut profectam ē vestigiō subsequī. 2. Nunc enim praecipuē simul esse cupiēbam, ut oculīs meīs crēderem quid vīribus quid corpusculō apparārēs, ecquid 5 dēnique sēcēssūs voluptātēs regiōnisque abundantiam inoffēnsa trāsmittērēs. 3. Equidem etiam fortem tē nōn sine cūrā dēsīderārem; est enim suspēsum et ānxium dē eō quem ārdentissimē dīligās interdum nihil scīre. 4. Nunc vērō mē cum absentiae tum īnfirmitātis tuae ratiō incerta et varia sollicitūdine exteret. Vereor omnia, imāginor omnia, quaeque nātūra metuentium est, ea maximē 10 mihi quae maximē abōminor fīngō. 5. Quō impēnsius rogō, ut timōrī meō cottīdiē singulīs vel etiam bīnīs epistulīs cōsulās. Erō enim sēcūrior dum legō, statimque timēbō cum lēgerō. Valē.

abōminor, -ārī, -ātus sum: abhor, loathe
absentia, -ae f.: absence, 2
abundantia, -ae f.: abundance
ānxius, -a, -um: anxious, anxiety-ridden
apparō (1): gain or prepare in addition, add, 1
ārdēns, -entis: burning, blazing; passionate
bīnī, -ae, -a: two each
Calpurnia, -ae f.: Calpurnia (wife of Pliny), 2
Campānia, -ae f.: Campania, 2
cōsulō, -ere: consult, console, consider (dat.), 3
corpusculum, -ī n.: frail body, little body
cottīdiē: daily, every day
cupiō, -ere, -ivī, -itum: desire, 2
dēnique: in short, in the end, finally, 2
dēsīderō (1): desire, long for, greatly wish
dīligō, -ere, -lexī, -lectum: love, esteem
ecquis, ecquid: any(one, thing); whether, 2
exterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum: terrify, 2
imāginor, -ārī, -ātus sum: imagine
impensus, -a, -um: expensive, weighty, great
īnfirmitās, -tātis f.: weakness
inoffēnsus, -a, -um: unharmed, unhindered
interdum: sometimes, occasionally, 3

metuō, -ere, -uī: dread, fear, 3
nātūra, -ae f.: nature, 2
numquam: never, 3
occupātiō, -iōnis f.: occupation, business matters
praecipuē: especially, particularly
proficīscor, -ī, -fectus: set out, make forth, 3
prōsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum: escort, pursue, 2
queror, querī, questus sum: complain, 2
ratiō, -ōnis f.: calculation, reasoning, 3
regiō, -ōnis f.: region
sēcēssus, -ūs m.: retreat, recess, retirement
sēcūrus, -a, -um: free from care, untroubled
simul: at the same time, together, 3
sine: without (*abl.*), 2
singulī, -ae, -a: one-by-one; *subst.* details
sollicitūdō, -inis f.: anxiety, worry, 2
subsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum: follow after
timeō, -ēre, timuī: be afraid, fear, 3
trāsmittō, -ere, -mīsī: let/send through, cross
valētūdō, -dinis f.: health, strength, 2
varius, -a, -um: various, 3
vereor, -ērī, -itus sum: fear; revere
voluptās, -ātis: pleasure, enjoyment

1 **C. Plīnius Calpurniae suae s(alutat):** *Gaius Plinius (gives greetings) to his (wife) Calpurnia*
 2 **sum questus:** *I (have) complained;* 1s pf. dep.
quae...nōn sunt passae: *which did not allow (me);* ‘did suffer’ 3p pf. dep.: translate active
aut...prōsequī aut...subsequī: *either to escort ...or to...;* pres. dep. inf.s.; mē is acc. subject
 3 **proficīscēntem:** pres. pple modifies acc.obj. tē
causā: *for the sake of (your) + preceding gen.*

4 **(tē) profectam:** (*you*)...; dep. PPP (‘having Xed’) modifies missing tē as object of subsequī
ē vestigiō: *on your footsteps;* i.e. just behind
simul esse: *to be together (with you)*
 5 **ut oculīs meīs crēderem:** *so that...might...;* purpose with 1s impf. subj. either abl. of means or dat. ind. obj. (‘believe my eyes that...’)
quid vīribus (et) quid corpusculō apparārēs: *what (you added)...(and) what you added...;*

ind. question with 2s impf. subj. apparō, ‘gain’
vīribus, corpusculō: *to (your)...*, *to (your)...*;
 dat. of compound verb; vīribus is abl. pl. of vīs
(et) ecquid...trāsmittērēs: *(and) whether
 in short you were passing without harm (to
 your health) through the pleasures of that
 retreat and the abundance of the region;* ind.
 question with impf. subj.; ‘let (yourself) go
 through’ (i.e. enjoy but not impair your health!)

7 **Equidem...dēsiderārem:** *I for my part would...*

1s impf. subj., contrary to fact (sī impf. subj.,
 impf. subj.) etiam fortem is an implied protasis
etiam fortem tē: *you, even (if being) strong
 nōn sine cūrā:* i.e. anxiously
est enim suspēnsus et ānxiūm: *for it is
 suspenseful and anxiety-ridden...;* causative

8 **nihil scīre:** *to...;* infinitive subject of est
dē eō quem...diligās: *about the one whom...;*
 relative of characteristic with 2s pres. subj.;
 the generalizing ‘you’ subject applies to everyone
ārdentissimē: superlative adv.

Nunc vērō: *but now, but as it is*

9 **cum absentiae tum infirmitātis tuae ratiō:**
calculation both of your...and of...; cum...tum
 are correlatives that often mean ‘both...and’ (lit.

‘when...at that same time’) when used together;
 two objective genitives modifying nom. ratiō
incerta et varia: adjs. modifying fem. sg. ratiō
sollicitūdine: *with...;* abl. of cause

10 **quaeque nātūra metuentium est:** *and as is
 the nature of those fearing;* lit. ‘what is the
 nature...’ relative clause of comparison; the
 entire clause that follows is the antecedent.

Quae should be neut. sg. quod but is attracted
 into the fem. sg. quae by nātūra; cf. quālis
ea...quae maximē abōminor: *those things
 which...;* ea is neut. acc. pl. demonstrative and
 antecedent of the relative clause that follows
maximē: *especially, in particular;* superlative

11 **mihi:** *for myself;* dat. of interest

Quō impensius: *the more weightily;* ‘by this
 much more weightily,’ abl. degree of difference
 or possibly abl. of cause: ‘because of which...’
ut timōrī meō...cōsulās: *that...;* ind.
 command with 2s pres. subj. + dat. obj.

12 **singulis vel etiam bīnīs epistulis:** abl. means
 vel etiam, ‘or even’

Erō: 1s fut. sum

cum lēgerō: *after I have read (it);* cum clause
 with 1s fut. pf., often translated as pres. or pf.

cūra, -ae f.: care, concern, anxiety, worry, 5

vīs, vīs f.: force, power; *pl. vīrēs,* strength, 5

Campania offers Calpurnia comfort and Pliny anguish

1st Half: Calpurnia’s physical health improves when away in Campania, a region that includes the Bay of Naples and Vesuvius. She is likely in Baiiae, a seaside resort near Misenum. Wealthy Romans had second homes along the bay, and the hot springs were believed to have health-restoring powers.

2nd Half: Pliny’s mental health declines while remaining in Rome. Business prevents Pliny from going with Calpurnia, just as homework kept him from his uncle. Calpurnia is in the area where the eruption occurred. Where Calpurnia and others see pleasure, relaxation, and rejuvenation, Pliny likely recalls death and suffering. The frequent use of the synonyms below highlights Pliny’s agitated state.

Pliny writes as if he had made a **LIST OF SYNONYMS** for fear, desire, strength, worry, and imagination and put as many possible (*) into a letter to express the magnitude of his anguish.

- metuō, -ere, -uī:** dread, fear, 3*
metus, -ūs m.: dread, fear, 10
- timeō, -ēre, timuī:** be afraid, fear, 3*
timor, -oris m.: fear, dread, 6*
- vereor, -ērī, -itus sum:** fear; revere, 1*

- fortis, -e:** strong, brave, 7*
- valētūdō, -dinis f.:** health; strength, 2*
invalēscō, -ere, -uī: become strong, 1
invalidus, -a, -um: not strong, weak
valeō, -ēre, -uī: fare well, be strong, 6*
- vīs, vīs f.:** force, power; *pl. vīrēs,* strength, 5*

- cupiō, -ere, -ivī, -itum:** desire, 2*
cupīdō, -dinis f.: desire, longing, 1
- dēsiderō (1):** desire, long for, 1*
dēsīderium, -iī n.: desire, longing, 1
- dīligō, -ere, -lexī, -lectum:** love, esteem, 1*
- ānxius, -a, -um:** anxious, anxiety-ridden, 1*
- cūra, -ae f.:** care, concern, anxiety, worry, 5*
cūrō (1): care for, take care of, 2
sēcūrītās, -tātis f.: freedom from care, 2
sēcūrus, -a, -um: free from care, untroubled, 1*
- sollicitūdō, -inis f.:** anxiety, worry, 2*

C. Plīnius Calpurniae suae s.

1

Scrībīs tē absentīā meā nōn mediocriter affici ūnumque habēre sōlācium, quod
prō mē libellōs meōs teneās, saepe etiam in vestīgiō meō collocēs. 2. Grātum
est quod nōs requīris, grātum quod hīs fōmentīs acquiēscis; invicem ego
epistulās tuās lectitō atque identidem in manūs quasi novās sūmō. 3. Sed eō 5
magis ad dēsīderium tū accendor: nam cuius litterae tantum habent suāvītātis,
huius sermōnibus quantum dulcēdinis inest! Tū tamen quam frequentissimē
scrībe, licet hoc ita mē dēlectet ut torqueat. Valē.

absentia, -ae f.: absence, 2

acquiēscō, -ere: gain rest, become calm; rest

afficiō, -ere, -fēcī: affect, treat, do to

Calpurnia, -ae f.: Calpurnia (wife of Pliny), 2

collocō (1): place, arrange

dēlectō (1): delight

dēsīderium, -ī n.: desire, longing

dulcēdō, -inis f.: sweetness, 2

fōmentum, -ī n.: salve, bandage, poultice

frequēns, frequentis: crowded, 3

grātus, -a, -um: pleasing; grateful, 2

identidem: again and again, repeatedly, 2

insum, -esse, -fuī: be in

invicem: in turn, 2

lectitō (1): read often, read again and again

libellus, -ī m.: little book, 2

licet: it is allowed or permitted; although, 2

littera, -ae f.: (alphabet) letter; *pl.* letter, 2

mediocriter: moderately, ordinarily

quantus, -a, -um: how much/great

requīrō, -ere, -sivī (-siī): search/seek/ask for, 3

saepe: often, 3

sōlācium, -ī n.: solace, comfort, 2

suāvītās, -tātis f.: sweetness

sūmō, -ere, sumpsī, sumptum: take, spend, 2

1 **C. Plīnius Calpurniae suae s(alutat):** *Gaius*

Plinius (gives greetings) to his Calpurnia

2 **tē... affici...habēre:** *that you...;* ind. disc.; pres.

pass. inf. afficiō and pres. act. habeō

absentīā meā: *by...;* abl. of cause

quod...teneās...(et) saepe...collocēs: *namely*

because...; causal clause with subjunctive of

subordinate verb in ind. disc.; 2s pres. subj.

teneō and collocō; libellōs is obj. of both verbs

3 **prō mē:** *in place of me*

libellōs meōs: *my books;* obj. of both verbs

in vestīgiō meō: *in my place;* ‘in my tracks,’

i.e. where Pliny usually sat and worked at home

Grātum est: *it is pleasing...;* impersonal verb

4 **quod nōs requīris:** *that you ask again about*

us; i.e. the writings and Pliny; quod introduces

a noun clause (originally an acc. of respect: ‘in

respect to the fact that...’); subject of grātum est

(et) grātum (est): *(and it is) pleasing...*

quod hīs fōmentīs acquiēscis: *that...;* another

noun clause; logical subject of grātum (est)

hīs fōmentīs: *with these salves;* i.e. the books; a

fōmentum is a medical ointment applied to

a wound or inflammation; Pliny likens the

books to a form of medicine

5 **quasi novās:** *as if...;* conditional clause of

comparison

eō magis: *the more;* ‘by that much more,’

abl. degree of difference, but interpreted by

some as an abl. of cause: ‘because of this...’

6 **tū:** *for you;* objective gen. sg. of pronoun tū

accendor: 1s pres. pass. accendō

cuius litterae...habent: *whose letters...;*

relative clause and gen. sg.; the antecedent is

huius below—translate after the clause below

tantum suāvītātis: *so much sweetness;* acc.

obj. and partitive gen.

7 **huius sermōnibus quantum dulcēdinis inest:**

how great the sweetness is in conversations of

this one!; exclamatory sentence; dulcēdinis is

partitive gen.; sermōnibus is dat. of compound

verb, and huius is gen. possession; suāvītās and

dulcēdō are synonyms for ‘sweet’ or ‘pleasant’

quam frequentissimē: translate quam + a

superlative (here, adv.) as ‘as X as possible’

scrībe: sg. imperative

8 **Licet hoc... dēlectet:** *although this should...;*

licet introduces a concessive clause with 3s

pres. subj. (this construction originally was an

impers. licet ‘it is allowed’ and an jussive subj.)

ita...ut (mē) torqueat: *so...that it...;* result

clause with pres. subj.

accendō, -ere, -ī, ēnsum: kindle, enflame, enrage, 4

sermō, -mōnis m.: conversation, talk, 4

Letters offer Calpurnia comfort and Pliny torment

1st Half: Pliny's letters give Calpurnia comfort

1. The letters are a substitute for Pliny himself: Pliny notices that his wife treats his writings as if they were Pliny himself (cf. *prō mē*) and even places them where Pliny usually spends time. Pliny suggests that this substitution is what gives Calpurnia comfort when Pliny is away.

2. The letters are a form of medicine: Metaphor is the use of imagery to invite comparison of things not alike. Pliny claims his books are an ointment or bandage (*fōmentīs*) to Calpurnia.

2nd Half: Calpurnia's letters give Pliny anguish

3. Rereading letters enflames Pliny. While Calpurnia accepts Pliny's writings in place of her husband, Calpurnia's letters set Pliny on fire (*accendor*) with longing for the real woman.

4. Frequent letters torture Pliny. While Pliny's writings serve as a form of medicine for Calpurnia, her frequent letters delight and, more importantly, torture (*torquet*) Pliny!

Calpurnia grew up in Comum, Pliny's home town in Northern Italy. She married Pliny around AD 97 (or perhaps in 104). At the time Pliny was 36-7, and she was likely about 15, since it was her first marriage. Pliny had been married twice before and lost his second wife to illness in 97. Remarriage was common, and Pliny still was without an heir. Pliny and Calpurnia never had children, but Pliny's letters strongly suggest that the marriage was a very happy one.

Word Building: CEND- "burn" vs. SCEND-, "climb"

accendō, -ere, -ī, ēnsum: kindle, enflame, enrage, 4

scandō, -ere, scandī: climb, 1

incendō, -ere, -ī, -ēnsum: kindle, burn, 2

ascendō, -ere, -ī, -ēnsum: ascend, mount, 2

incendium, -ī n.: fire, conflagration, 1

dēscendō, ere, ī, -ēnsum: descend, 1

Word Building: Verb Infixes -SC- and -IT-

The infixes help us understand the verbs **acquiēscis**, "become calm" and **lectitō**, "I read repeatedly" on the facing page. Note that **-sc-** is found only in present stems, because, when the verb is in the past tense, the action is no longer in progress (e.g. *nōscō* "learn" (i.e. begin to know) but *nōvī* "know.>").

-SCO become X, grow X, begin to X

acquiēscō, -ere: rest, gain rest, become calm, 1

adsuēscō, -ere, -ēvī: grow accustomed, 1

crebrēscō, -ere: become frequent, 1

crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētum: grow, 3

dehīscō, -ere: split open, yawn, gape, 2

discō, -ere, didicī: learn, 1

horrescō, -ēre, -uī: begin to shudder, bristle, 1

illūcēscō, -ere, illūxī: grow light, 1

invalēscō, -ere, -uī: become strong, 1

nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtum: learn; *pf.* know, 5

agnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtum: recognize, 2

cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum: learn, know, 2

quiēscō, -ere, -ēvī, -ētum: rest, 5

senēscō, -ere, -uī: grow old, 1

vānēscō, -ere, -uī: vanish, disappear, 1

-TO/-ITO keep Xing, X repeatedly/often

agitō (1): drive (repeatedly); chase, hunt, 1

dictō (1): say often, keep saying, 1

lectitō (1): read often or repeatedly, 1

nōscitō (1): learn, recognize; *pf.* know, 1

terrītō (1): terrify, keep terrifying, 1

volitō (1): flitter, flutter, fly, 1

Short Introduction to the *Aeneid*

This lesson is meant as to provide a break before readers begin reading the *Aeneid* in earnest in Lesson 34. Readers should use this time to (a) review the historical and literary context on pp. 66-7, (b) review and master not only the new core vocabulary in lesson 34 but all core words introduced in the preceding Pliny readings, and perhaps (c) practice scanning epic verse (printable materials are on the website).

Who is Publius Vergilius Maro (70-19 BC)?

- 70 BC born near Mantua in northern Italy
- 42 farm confiscated by Octavian (the emperor Augustus)
- 37 completes *Eclogues*, “Selections,” a poem about shepherding
- 37 Maecenas, friend of Octavian, becomes Vergil’s patron
- 31 completes *Georgics*, “On Farming,” a poem about farming
- 29-19 composes the *Aeneid* (3 lines per day on average)
- 19 falls ill and dies in Brundisium at age 52

Vergil, also spelled “Virgil,” was born in northern Italy to a family of equestrian rank in 70 BC. In 42 BC Octavian, Julius Caesar’s grand-nephew and future emperor, confiscated Vergil’s farm in order to resettle soldiers. Vergil was later able to recover that estate with the influence of friends. Around the time of the publication of the *Eclogues*, a poem about shepherding, in 37 BC, Vergil gained the financial support of Maecenas, a patron of the arts and close advisor to Octavian. Vergil dedicated the *Georgics*, a work about farming, to Maecenas in 31 BC, and the *Eclogues* and *Georgics* continue to be read today.

Since Maecenas was part of Octavian’s inner circle of advisors, it is reasonable to assume that Octavian, i.e. Augustus, was indirectly or directly Vergil’s patron. From 29-19 BC, Vergil composed the *Aeneid*, “Song of Aeneas,” a work of propaganda that connected Aeneas and the mythology of the Trojan war directly to the rule of Augustus. In 19 BC Vergil accompanied Augustus to Athens, where the poet fell ill. Vergil died on his return home in Brundisium, Italy and requested that his unfinished *Aeneid* not be published. Augustus instead had the poem edited and published on Vergil’s behalf.

Who is Caesar Augustus (63 BC – AD 14)?

- 63-44 called “Gaius Octavius”
- 43-27 “Gaius Julius Caesar Octavianus” (called “Octavian” by historians)
- 27-AD 14 “Gaius Julius Caesar Octavianus Augustus” (“Caesar Augustus”)

Gaius Octavius, Octavian, and Caesar Augustus refer to the same person at different periods of time. When Gaius Julius Caesar (100-44 BC) was assassinated in 44 BC, his only child Julia had already died while giving birth in 54. And so, Julius Caesar adopted his 17-year old grand-nephew Gaius Octavius posthumously in his will and made him his heir. Since it was common for an adoptee to assume the name of his adopted father and make his own nomen a cognomen, Gaius Octavius was renamed in 44 BC as Gaius Julius Caesar Octavianus, whom we today call Octavian. In 27 BC, the Senate bestowed on the emperor the honorific name Augustus, “the Enricher” or “Venerable one.” Today, we typically call him Octavian between 44 and 31 BC (Battle of Actium) and either Augustus or Caesar Augustus when he became sole ruler and emperor from 31 BC until his death in AD 14. Other relevant details about Augustus are revealed in individual lessons throughout this commentary.

Where does Vergil's *Aeneid* fit in the Roman Republic?

- 509-31 BC Roman Republic: government with a senate, public assemblies, consuls, praetors, etc.
- 133-122 **Gracchi** brothers: rival factions of senators appeal to senators or to the people for power
- 91-88 **Social Wars**: Italian allies (*socii*) fight with Rome over citizenship and rights
- 88-7, 82-1 Civil wars lead to the **dictatorship of Sulla**: rivals are executed, property is confiscated
- 73-71 **Spartacus** and a slave revolt throughout Italy is eventually suppressed by **Crassus**
- 63 **Catiline's conspiracy**: attempted coup to kill senators and redistribute land, suppressed
- 58-49 **Julius Caesar** conquers Gaul and refuses to relinquish power to the senate
- 49-45 Civil war: Caesar defeats **Pompey** and senatorial leaders around the Mediterranean
- 44-42 Civil war: Octavian and Marc Antony defeat Caesar's assassins, **Cassius** and **Brutus**
- 32-30 Civil war: **Octavian** defeats the naval forces of **Marc Antony** and Egyptian **Cleopatra**
- 31 **Battle of Actium** (Sept. 2, 31 BC): Octavian defeats Antony and Cleopatra decisively
- 29-19 Vergil composes the *Aeneid***

27 - AD 14 First emperor **Augustus** consolidates power under *Pax Romana* until his death in AD 14

After 375 years of what Vergil's contemporaries viewed as unified government, imperial expansion, and prosperity (509-133 BC), the Roman republic suffered a century of civil wars, social upheaval, and political unrest that led to what we now call the "Fall of the Republic" (133-31 BC) and consolidation of power under Augustus. The details are too numerous to review, but readers should note that Vergil wrote the *Aeneid* (29-19 BC) when the republican government existed in form (consuls, senate, assemblies), but Augustus alone possessed the loyalty of all legions and real decision-making power.

What are the 12 books of the *Aeneid* about?

Books 1-6 imitate the *Odyssey*

- 1 Juno sends a storm, Aeneas lands in Carthage
- 2 Aeneas recalls the fall of Troy for Queen Dido
- 3 Aeneas recalls his travels at sea for Dido
- 4 Aeneas has a love affair with Dido and leaves
- 5 Funeral games for father Anchises in Sicily
- 6 Aeneas visits the Underworld in Italy

Books 7-12 imitate the *Iliad*

- 7 Aeneas arrives in Latium, Juno incites war
- 8 Aeneas visits Evander, Shield of Aeneas
- 9 War: Night raid by Nisus and Euryalus
- 10 War: Turnus kills Evander's son Pallas
- 11 War: Pallas' burial, Camilla fights and dies
- 12 Truce among gods, Aeneas kills Turnus

The first 6 books are an imitation of Homer's *Odyssey* and the second 6 are an imitation of Homer's *Iliad*, ancient Greek epics composed 700 years before the *Aeneid* but well known to Rome's Greek-educated aristocracy. In Book 1 Juno sends a storm that shipwrecks Aeneas and the Trojans at Carthage. At a banquet hosted by Queen Dido, Aeneas recalls in Book 2 the Fall of Troy and in Book 3 his travels at sea for 7 years. In Book 4 Dido and Aeneas fall in love, and, when Aeneas is urged by the gods to leave, Dido commits suicide. In Book 5 he travels to Sicily and celebrates funeral games for his father Anchises, and in Book 6 Aeneas enters the Underworld in Italy to seek advice from his father.

In Book 7 Aeneas lands in Latium, and King Latinus offers to the Trojan his daughter Lavinia—and the future rule of the Latins. Juno incites the Latin Turnus, who was engaged to marry Lavinia before Aeneas' arrival, to wage war. In Book 8 Aeneas seeks help from Evander and the Greeks who settled near the site of Rome and from the Etruscans. In this war (Books 9-12), Aeneas is likened to the Greek Achilles. Just as Achilles kills the Trojan Hector to avenge the death of Achilles' friend Patroclus in Homer's *Iliad*, so in Book 12 Aeneas kills Turnus to avenge the death of Aeneas' friend Pallas.

Arma virumque canō, Troiae quī prīmus ab ōrīs	1
Ītaliā, fātō profugus, Lāvīnaque vēnit	2
lītora—multum ille et terrīs iactātus et altō	3
vī superum, saevae memorem Iūnōnis ob īram,	4
multa quoque et bellō passus, dum conderet urbem	5
inferretque deōs Latīō—genus unde Latīnum	6
Albānīque patrēs atque altae moenia Rōmae.	7
Mūsa, mihī causās memorā, quō nūmine laesō	8
quidve dolēns rēgīna deum tot volvere cāsūs	9
īnsignem pietāte virum, tot adīre labōrēs	10
impulerit. Tantaene animīs caelestibus īrae?	11

Albānus, -a, -um: Alban, of Alba Longa, 2

caelestis, -e: celestial; of the gods

canō, -ere, cecinī, cantum: sing, 3

doleō, -ere, doluī: grieve, feel pain

iacō (1): throw (back and forth), toss, 3

impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum: impel, push, 3

īnferō, -ferre, -tulī: carry/bring on

īnsignis, -e: distinguished, marked, 2

labor, -ōris m.: labor, hardship, 3

laedō, -ere, -sī, -sum: hurt, harm; offend, 3

Latīnus, -a, -um: Latin, of Latin, 3

Lāvīn(i)us, -a, -um: Lavinian, of Lavinium

1 **virumque:** et virum; i.e. Aeneas

Troiae...ab ōrīs: abl. from ōra, -ae f. 'shore'

quī prīmus...vēnit: *who was the first to come...*; several groups of Trojans left Troy, and Aeneas' was the first to arrive in Italy

2 **Ītaliā...Lāvīnaque lītora:** *to...*; acc. place to which; Lavinium is a town founded by Aeneas

fātō: *by...*; 'because of...' abl. of cause

profugus: in apposition to nom. sg. quī

3 **multum:** *much*; adverbial acc.

ille: *that one*; i.e. Aeneas

et terrīs...et altō...: *both on...and on...*; abl. place where; for altō, see note below

iacātus (est): 3s pf. pass.

altō: *the sea*; 'the deep,' metonymy: this neut. substantive is often used to mean 'the sea'

4 **vī:** *by force*; abl. of means, irreg. abl. sg. vīs

super(ōr)um: *of (those)...*; gen. pl.; i.e. gods

memorem: transferred epithet: the adj. agrees with īram but logically describes Juno

5 **multa:** *many things*; neut. acc. pl. substantive

bellō: *in...*; abl. place where, parallel to line 3

passus (est): 3s pf. dep. patior: translate active

dum conderet...inferretque: *until he could...and could...*; 3s impf. anticipatory subj.; dum +

memorō (1): recall, remember, 2

memor, -oris: mindful, remembering (*gen*), 3

Mūsa, -ae f.: Muse

nūmen, -inis n.: divine power/approval, 3

ob: on account of, because of (*acc.*), 2

pietās, -tātis f.: piety, devotion

profugus, -a, -um: exiled, fugitive

Rōma, -ae f.: Rome, 2

superus, -a, -um: above, higher; *subs.* god, 3

ne (-ne): (indicates a yes/no question), 3

unde: from which, whence, 2

subj. can express intention equiv. to a purpose clause and reveals the fatō expressed in line 2

6 **Latīō:** *into...*; dat. of compound verb in-ferret
unde (veniunt): *from where...come...*; ellipsis: add a verb to agree with all three nom. subjects

8 **Mūsa:** voc. dir. address; Vergil calls the muse of epic, Calliope, to tell the epic through him

quō nūmine laesō: *by what the numen having been insulted*; 'because of what...' ind. question in apposition to causās: abl. abs + abl. of cause

9 **quidve dolēns...impulerit:** *or grieving what...*; ind. question with pf. subj. impellō; -ve = 'or'

de(ōr)um: gen. pl. deus

virum insignem pietāte volvere tot cāsūs (et) adīre tot labōrēs: *that a man...*; ind. disc. with anaphora, asyndeton (lack of conjunction 'et')
volvere: *undergo*; 'turn over'

10 **pietāte:** *in...*; abl. of respect with insignem

11 **Tantae-ne animīs caelestibus īrae (erant)?:** animīs caelestibus is dat. of possession: either make the dative possessive (1) 'Was the anger of the celestial spirits so great?' or make dative the subject: (2) 'Did the celestial spirits have such great anger?' ellipsis: add a linking verb; īrae is often pl. but may be translated as sg.

arma, -ōrum n.: arms; weapons; tools, 10

bellum, -ī n.: war, 9

fātum, -ī n.: fate, 11

īra, -ae f.: anger, rage; passion, 6

Ītalia, -ae f.: Italy, 5

Iūnō, Iūnōnis f.: Juno, 4

Latium, -ī n.: Latium, 6

moenia, -ium n.: walls; city-walls, 7

pater, -tris m.: father; ancestor, 6

rēgīna, -ae f.: queen, 4

saevus, -a, -um: savage, fierce, 6

tot: so many, 6

Troia, ae f.: Troy, 7

volvō, -ere, -ī, volūtum: revolve, roll, churn, 4

The initial 33 lines of the *Aeneid* are challenging! But do not be discouraged. These lines are dense but very meaningful. Once Vergil finishes the introduction, the narrative will be easier to follow.

Introduction (ll. 1-7) and Invocation (ll. 8-11)

Imitation of the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey*

- arma virumque (line 1):** The first word summarizes an epic in the same way as the title of a music album encapsulates the songs in the album. The first word in Homer's *Odyssey* is *andra*, 'man,' and the first word in Homer's *Iliad*, about Achilles and the last year of the Trojan war, is *mēnin*, 'wrath.' Both were written in Greek in 750-720 BC. Here, Vergil alludes to both epics and effectively asserts: 'This is my *Odyssey* and this is my *Iliad*, a Latin work that will rival the greatest Greek epics.'
- fātō profugus (l. 2):** Vergil suggests that his work will not merely rival but surpass the epics of Homer. The suggestion that the man, i.e. Aeneas, was a fugitive *by fate* is provocative. The Greeks, on this view, did not win the Trojan war because of their military prowess or the favor of the gods but because fate had a greater purpose: to drive the defeated Trojans to Italy and give rise to Rome. And so, just as Christians call the *Hebrew Bible* the 'Old Testament' and thereby assert that their *New Testament* is more important, so Vergil suggests that his epic and its account of the rise of Rome are more important than the Greek epics and all the Greek art and literature influenced by those epics.
- multum ille et terrīs iactātus et altō (l. 3)...multa quoque et bellō passus (l. 5):** This is the narrative of Books 1-6 and 7-12 respectively. As readers will discover, the first six books imitate the *Odyssey* while the second six imitate the *Iliad*. By alluding to the travels of Odysseus and war with Achilles, Vergil elevates the minor hero Aeneas to the heroic status of both Odysseus and Achilles.
- dum conderet urbem inferretque deōs...Rōmae (ll. 5-7):** The use of the subjunctive indicates purpose and offers a partial explanation for the word 'fatō' in line 2. Vergil connects the world of Greek myth and literature with the founding of Rome. As Vergil later reveals, Aeneas will found the city Lavinium and rule the Latins for 3 years; his son Ascanius will found Alba Longa and rule the Albans for 30 years; and, after 300 years of kings at Alba Longa, Romulus will found the city of Rome (l.265-74). Note how Vergil begins the introduction with the word 'Troiae' and ends the final line with 'Rōmae.' In doing so, Vergil explicitly connects the gods of Troy with those of Rome itself.

The entire poem is composed to answer one question: Why must the pious suffer?

- Mūsa, mihi causās memorā (l. 8):** The invocation of the muse is a common epic convention, found in the *Odyssey* and *Iliad*. In effect, the rest of the epic is told by the goddess of creativity through Vergil. This allows the poet to be an omniscient narrator and relate details about the divine world and private conversations that humans would not know otherwise.
- insignem pietāte virum (l. 10):** The entire poem is composed to answer one question: Why must the pious suffer? The word *pietās* signifies devotion to family, community, and the gods, and the Romans closely identified such devotion with success. How can Aeneas be pious and yet still suffer?

Urbs antīqua fuit (Tyriī tenuēre colōnī)	12
Karthāgō, Ītaliā contrā Tiberīnaque longē	13
ōstia, dīves opum studiīsque asperrima bellī;	14
quam Iūnō fertur terrīs magis omnibus ūnam	15
posthabitā coluisse Samō: hīc illius arma,	16
hīc currus fuit; hoc rēgnum dea gentibus esse,	17
sī quā fāta sinant, iam tum tenditque foveatque.	18
Prōgeniem sed enim Troiānō ā sanguine dūcī	19
audierat Tyriās ōlim quae verteret arcēs;	20
hinc populum lātē rēgem bellōque superbum	21
ventūrum excidiō Libyae: sīc volvere Parcās.	22

antīquus, -a, -um: ancient, old, 3

asper, aspera, asperum: harsh, rough

colō, -ere, coluī, cultum: farm, cultivate, 3

colōnus, -ī m.: settler, colonist

currus, -ūs m.: chariot

dīves, dīvitis: rich, wealthy

excidium, -ī n.: fall, destruction

foveō, -ēre, fōvī, fōtum: foster, cherish, caress, 2

Karthāgō, -inis f.: Carthage, 2

Libya, -ae f.: Libya, 2

ōlim: once, once upon a time

ops, -is f.: resources, power, wealth, 3

ōstium, -ī n.: mouth, entrance, 2

Parcae, -ārum f.: the Fates (personified)

posthabeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum: hold second/after

prōgeniēs, ēī f.: progeny, offspring

Samos, -ī f.: Samos (an island)

sinō, -ere, sīvī, situm: allow, permit, leave, 2

studium, -ī n.: enthusiasm; study, pursuit, 3

superbus, -a, -um: proud, arrogant, 3

Tiberīnus, -a, -um: of the Tiber

Tyrius, -a, -um: Tyrian, Carthaginian, 3

regnum: ruling power

gentibus: for (all)...; dat. of interest

18 **sī quā...sinant:** if in any way...; quī, quid is indefinite (some, any) after sī, nisī, num and nē; pres. subj. of subordinate verb in ind. disc.

-que...-que: both...and...

19 **sed enim:** but indeed; place at first in sentence

Prōgeniem...dūcī: that...; first of 3 ind. disc.

governed by audi(v)erat; pres. pass. inf. dūcō

20 **Tyriās...quae verteret arcēs:** which would...; a relative clause of purpose with impf. subj.;

the antecedent is fem. Prōgeniem; Tyriās arcēs refers to Carthage, a colony of Phoenician Tyre

21 **(et) hinc populum...ventūrum (esse):** (and) that ..would.; asyndeton and ellipsis; ind. disc. with fut. act. inf. veniō governed by audi(v)erat

lātē: adv. lātus with rēgem

rēgem: ruling; equiv. to pres. pple reg(ent)em

bellō: in...; abl. of respect with superbum

22 **excidiō:** for...; dat. of purpose

sīc...Parcās: that thus the Fates were spinning;

ind. disc.; the Fates are personified as women who spin and cut threads that decide one's fate

12 **fuit:** there was...; pf. sum

tenuē(runt): syncopated 3p pf.; supply 'urbem'

13 **Karthāgō:** nom. sg. in apposition to urbs

contrā: + both accusatives; Carthage faces Rome across the Mediterranean

longē: far

14 **dīves...asperrima:** both sg. modify fem. sg.

Karthāgō; asperrima is a superlative adj.

studiīs: in...; abl. of respect with asperrima

15 **quam:** which...; relative, acc. obj. of coluisse; the antecedent is fem. sg. Karthāgō

fertur: is said; 'is reported,' + pf. inf. cōlō.

omnibus: than...; abl. of comparison

16 **posthabitā Samō:** abl. abs.; i.e. the island Samos holds second place in Juno's affection

Hic illius (fuērunt) arma, hīc currus fuit:

Here...here...; anaphora and ellipsis; add pf. of sum as a verb; note the macron: hīc is an adv., hic, 'this,' is a pronoun; These possessions of Juno are honored as sacred relics in Carthage.

illius: gen. sg. illa; i.e. Juno

17 **hoc rēgnum...esse:** that this be...; ind. disc. governed by tenditque foveatque.; hoc is acc. subj. and refers to fem. sg. Karthāgō, but is attracted into the neut. by the predicate rēgnum

arx, arcis f.: citadel, (fortified) hilltop, 6
dea, -ae f.: goddess, 5
gēns, gentis f.: people, clan, 6
hīc: here, in this place, 4
hinc: hence, from this place, 4
rēgnum, -ī n.: kingdom, kingship, rule, 7

rēx, rēgis m.: king, 5
sanguis, -inis m.: blood, 7
sīc: thus, so, in this way, 6
tendō, -ere, -dī, tentum: stretch; extend, strive, 6
Troiānus, -a, -um: Trojan, 5

Rome and Carthage

First Punic War	261-241 BC
Second Punic War	218-201 BC
Third Punic War	149-143 BC

The three Punic Wars fought between Rome and Carthage, a city-state in North Africa, transformed Rome into a naval power with a vast western Mediterranean empire. By the end of the wars, Rome had acquired the provinces of Sicily, Sardinia, Corsica, Hispania, and much of Libya (North Africa).

The Carthaginians were originally colonists from the Phoenician cities of Tyre and Sidon, located in modern day Lebanon. The Romans acknowledged this origin by calling the Carthaginians *Poenī* or *Pūnī*, 'Phoenicians.' Since the name *Carthāginiēnsēs* does not fit in epic meter, Vergil refers to the people three times as *Tyrīi*, 'Tyrians,' and once as *Sidōnīi*, 'Sidonians.'

In lines 19-22, Vergil ingeniously suggests that not only the rise of Rome but the Punic wars and rise of the Romans as a Mediterranean power were preordained by fate and the gods.

Syncopated Verbs

Vergil will sometimes abbreviate a verb form by omitting letters or shortening the ending in order to fit the meter. Verbs that are abbreviated in this way are called syncopated verbs (Grk. *syncoptein*, 'to cut off'). Note three recent examples from our reading:

tenuēre (tenuērunt)	<i>they held</i> (I.12)	3p perfect ending -ērunt shortened to -ēre
audierat (audīverat)	<i>she had heard</i> (I.20)	-v or -vi omitted from the perfect stem
repostum (repositum)	<i>having been stored</i> (I.26)	-i omitted from the perfect passive stem

Syncopated 3p perfect verbs such as *tenuēre* look like present infinitives but are easy to identify because (1) they have perfect stems (e.g. *tenu-*, *conspēx-*) and (2) are found with nominative rather than accusative subjects (e.g. *Tyrīi tenuēre colōnī*).

Ablative of Respect¹⁸

There are 18 labeled instances of the ablative of respect (also called the ablative of specification). This noun accompanies an adjective and both explains and limits the meaning of the adjective. It is often translated 'in X' or 'in respect to X.'

<i>insignem pietāte virum</i>	<i>A man distinguished</i> (in horse-racing? in speaking? No...) <i>in respect to piety</i> (I.10)
<i>asperrima studiīs bellī</i>	<i>most harsh</i> (in punishing criminals? in criticism? No...) <i>in the pursuits of war</i> (14)

After *sī, nisi, num* and *nē*, all the *ali*'s go away

Aliquis, aliquid: *some(one/thing), any(one/thing)* is an indefinite pronoun. After the four words in the mnemonic above, the prefix *ali-* (=alius) is omitted. If you encounter *quis, quid* after these four words, translate *quis, quid* as 'any' or 'some.'

sī quā fāta sinant → *sī (alīquā) fāta sinant* → *if in any way the fates allow* 1.18

Note *quā* above is not a relative or interrogative pronoun, "in/by whom" but an indefinite pronoun: "in some/any way" There are seven instances of this in Vergil passages and none in Pliny.

Id metuēns veterisque memor Sātūrnia bellī,	23
prīma quod ad Troiam prō cārīs gesserat Argīs	24
(necdum etiam causae īrārū saevīque dolōrēs	25
exciderant animō; manet altā mente repostum	26
iūdicium Paridis sprētaeque iniūria formae	27
et genus invīsum et raptī Ganymēdis honōrēs)	28
hīs accēnsa super iactātōs aequare tōtō	29
Trōās, relliquiās Danaum atque immītis Achillī,	30
arcēbat longē Latiō, multōsque per annōs	31
errābant actī fātis maria omnia circum.	32
Tantae mōlis erat Rōmānam condere gentem.	33

Achillēs, -is (or -ī) m.: Achilles
arceō, -ēre, -uī: fend or keep off, defend
Argus, -ī m.: an Argive, a Greek
dolor, -ōris m.: pain, grief, 3
errō (1): wander, 2
excidō, -ere, -ī: fall from, perish, 2
forma, -ae f.: form, shape; beauty, 3
Ganymēdēs, -is m.: Ganymede
honor (-os), -ōris m.: honor; offering, 3
iacō (1): throw (back and forth), toss, 3
immittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum: send into
iniūria, -ae f.: injury, injustice, insult, 2
invidēō, -ēre: hate, envy

23 **id:** *this*; i.e. all that Juno had heard in ll. 19-23
metuēns: pres. pple
24 **prīma quod...gesserat:** *which she had been the first to wage...*; relative clause; nom. prīma points to Juno's leadership against the Trojans
prō cārīs...Argīs: *on behalf of..., for...*
gesserat: plpf. gerō
25 **etiam:** *also*
īrārū: *of (her) anger*; as often, translate as sg.
26 **animō:** *from...*; abl. of separation (place from which) or dat. of compound verb
manet: *there remain...*; 3s with a 3p subject
altā mente: *deep in her mind*; 'in her deep mind,' neut. altum attracted into fem. of mente
repositum: syncopated PPP, repōnō
27 **iūdicium Paridis:** *the judgment of Paris*
sprētae...formae: gen. sg.; PPP, spernō; i.e. Juno was insulted because she and Athena lost the judgment of Paris to Venus
28 **genus invīsum:** *hated race, hated stock*; i.e. the Trojan people
raptī: gen. sg. PPP, rapiō, 'kidnap,' the Trojan prince Ganymede was kidnapped and made Jupiter's cupbearer; Juno is envious of the

iūdicium, -ī n.: judgment, decision
memor, -oris: mindful, remembering (*gen*), 3
metuō, -ere, -uī: dread, fear, 3
mōlēs, -is f.: mass, burden
necdum: not yet, nor yet
Paris, -idis m.: Paris
rapiō, -ere, -uī, raptum: snatch, seize; kidnap
relliquiāe, -ārum f.: survivors, remains, 2
repōnō, -ere, -suī, -situm: put or place back, 2
Sātūrnia, -ae f.: Saturnian one, Juno, 2
spernō, -ere, sprēvī, sprētum: spurn, reject, 2
Trōs, Trōis: Trojan, 3
vetus, -eris: old, former, 2

attention that Ganymede receives from Jupiter
29 **(Iūno) hīs accēnsa...arcēbat:** (*Juno*) *having been...*; add a subject for arcēbat; PPP accensō
hīs: *by...*; abl. means, i.e. all the reasons above
super: *in addition*; 'on top of this,' adv.
(in) aequare tōtō
30 **Trōās:** *Trojans*; masc. acc. pl.
relliquiās: in apposition to Trōās
Danaum: *of the Greeks*; 3rd decl. gen. pl.
immītis Achillī: Achilles was the foremost fighter of the Greeks at Troy and was killed by the arrow of Paris shortly before the Greeks sacked the city of Troy
31 **longē:** *far*
Latiō: *from...*; abl. of separation (pfw)
(Troīānī) actī: (*the Trojans*) *having been driven...*; PPP agō + abl. means fātis
32 **maria omnia circum:** circum omnia maria; anastrophe (reversal of normal word order)
33 **Tantae mōlis:** (*of*) *so great a burden*; gen. of description (quality) as predicate following erat
erat: *it was...*; condere is the infinitive subject

aequor, -oris n.: sea, the level (sea), 4
cārus, -a, -um: dear, 5

circum: around, about (*acc.*), 5
Danaus, -a, -um: Danaan, Greek, 4

Four Reasons for Juno's Anger

In addition to 1. **the future destruction of Carthage by the descendants of Troy** in I.19-22, Vergil mentions several additional reasons why Juno feels anger toward Aeneas and the Trojans.

- Judgment of Paris (iūdicium Paridis):** After the goddess Discord throws an apple inscribed with the words "to the most beautiful" into the wedding party of Thetis and Pelias, Achilles' parents, Mercury whisks the apple away and gives it to Paris, one of the fifty sons of King Priam of Troy. Soon after, the goddesses Juno (Hera), Minerva (Athena), and Venus (Aphrodite) approach Paris and offer rewards in return for the apple. Juno offers political power; Minerva, victory in battle; and finally Venus, the most beautiful woman. Paris awards the apple to Venus and thus incurs the anger of both Juno and Minerva in the Trojan war and beyond.
- Hated People (genus invīsum):** Although the phrase can be translated as the "hated people," it likely means "hated lineage" and refers to one of the founders of the Trojans, Dardanus. Dardanus was the offspring of an illicit affair between Jupiter and the mortal Electra. Juno undoubtedly knew about the affair and blamed Dardanus, who served as a reminder of her husband's infidelity.
- Honors of kidnapped Ganymede (raptī Ganymēdis honōrēs):** Dardanus' grandson Trōs gave birth to three sons, Ilus, Assaracus, and Ganymede, whom Homer describes as the most handsome of mortal men. In the form of an eagle, Jupiter kidnapped Ganymede and made the boy his personal cupbearer. Juno appears to have envied the affection that Jupiter gave to the young man.

Trojans and Greeks

Review the list of proper names that Vergil uses to refer to the Trojans and Greeks:

Troiānus, -a, -um: Trojan, 5

Trōs, Trōis: Trojan, 3

Troiūs, -a, -um: Trojan, 1

Troia, ae f.: Troy, 7

Teucrus, -a, -um: Teucrican, Trojan, 8

Dardanidēs, -ae m.: Dardanian, Trojan, 1

Īliacus, -a, -um: of Ilium, Trojan, 2

Īlium, -ī n.: Ilium, Troy, 2

Argus, -ī m.: an Argive, a Greek, 1

Argolicus, -a, -um: Argive, Greek, 1

Danaus, -a, -um: Danaan (Greek), 4

Teucricans, Dardanians, and Trojans are patronymics that refer to the Trojans as the descendants of King **Teucer**, King **Dardanus**, and King **Tros**. Teucer was a distant relative who gave his name to the land around Troy, Teucricia, until Dardanus arrived and renamed the land Dardania. Dardanus' grandson Tros gave his name to the Trojans, while Tros' son Ilus, founded the city of the Trojans, which is called 'Ilium' as well as 'Troia.'

The names Argives and Danaans refer to the Greeks and are frequently used in the *Iliad* and *Odyssey*.

Word Building: Synonyms for "Sea" and "Wave"

aequor, -oris n.: sea, level sea, 4

altus, -a, -um: high, tall; deep; the sea (the deep), 18

mare, -is n.: sea, 8

pelagus, -ī n.: sea, 1

pontus, -ī m.: sea, 2

salum, -ī n.: sea, swelling sea, 1

flūctus, -ūs m.: wave, 5

unda, -ae f.: wave, 6

Ēripiunt subitō nūbēs caelumque diemque	88
Teucōrum ex oculīs; pontō nox incubat ātra.	89
intonuēre polī et crēbrīs micat ignibus aethēr	90
praesentemque virīs intentant omnia mortem.	91
Extemplō Aenēae solvuntur frīgore membra;	92
ingemit et duplicēs tendēns ad sīdera palmās	93
tālia vōce refert: “Ō terque quaterque beātī,	94
quīs ante ōra patrum Troiae sub moenibus altīs	95
contigit oppetere! Ō Danaum fortissime gentis	96
Tydidē! Mēne Īliacīs occumbere campīs	97
nōn potuisse tuāque animam hanc effundere dextrā	98
saevus ubi Aeacidae tēlō iacet Hector, ubi ingēns	99
Sarpēdōn, ubi tot Simoīs correpta sub undīs	100
scūta virum galeāsque et fortia corpora volvit!”	101

Aeacides, -ae m.: Achilles, descendant of Aeacus

aether, -eris m.: aether, (upper) sky, 3

anima, -ae f.: breath, life; soul, 2

beātus, -a, -um: blessed, happy, 3

campus, -ī m.: field, 2

contingō, -ere, contigī: touch, border, 2

crēber, -bra, -brum: frequent, crowded, 2

duplex, -icis: double, twin

extemplō: immediately, 2

frīgus, -oris n.: cold, 2

galea, -ae f.: helmet, 2

Hector, -oris m.: Hector

Īliacus, -a, -um: of Ilium, Trojan, 2

incubō (1): lie on, 2

ingemō, -ere, -uī: groan, sob, sigh

intentō (1): threaten, aim

intonō, -ere, -uī: thunder

membrum, -ī n.: limb, 2

micō (1): flicker, flash

ne (-ne): (indicates a yes/no question), 3

occumbō, -ere, -cubū: lie (in death)

oppetō, -ere, ivī, itum: seek (death), encounter

palma, -ae f.: palm, hand, 3

polus, -ī m.: pole, sky, 2

pontus, -ī m.: sea, 2

praesēns, -ntis: present, be in person, 2

quater: four times, 3

Sarpēdon, -ōnis m.: Sarpedon

scūtum, -ī n.: shield

Simoīs, -entis m.: Simois river

subitō: suddenly, 3

ter: thrice, three times

Tydidēs, ae m.: son of Tydeus, Diomedes

88 **caelumque diemque:** *both...and...;* acc. objs. diem here refers to ‘daylight’

89 **Teucōrum:** *of the Trojans;* patronymic

pontō: *on...;* dat. of compound verb

90 **intonuēr(unt):** syncopated 3p pf.

crēbrīs...ignibus: *with...;* i.e. lightning; abl. of cause or means

91 **intentant:** *threaten* (dat) *with* (acc); ‘hold (acc) over (dat)’ a dat. of compound verb; omnia is nom. subject

92 **solvuntur:** *are loosened;* i.e. his knees buckle
frīgore: *by chilly fear;* i.e. cold shudder of fear;
metonymy (shudder suggests fear); abl. cause

93 **ingemit:** Aeneas is subject

94 **tālia:** *such things;* i.e. the following things; neut. acc. pl. substantive

vōce: *with (his) ...;* i.e. aloud; Aeneas yells into the wind

refert: *says;* ‘reports’

Ō...beātī: voc. direct address and apostrophe (turning off to address one not present); Aeneas addresses the Trojans who died at Troy below the city walls as their parents watched safely from the top of the walls

95 **quī(bu)s:** *to whom...;* dat. of interest

ōra: *faces;* ‘mouths,’ synecdoche

contigit oppetere: *it happened to meet (death)* impersonal pf. verb + inf.

96 **Ō...Tydidē:** *O Diomedes;* ‘O Son of Tydeus,’ voc. direct address; patronymic and apostrophe; Aeneas now addresses the Greek Diomedes, who almost killed Aeneas at Troy in the *Iliad*

Mē-ne...potuisse: *Was I not able to...;* or ‘could I not...’ acc. + inf. of exclamation (see also I.37) expressing surprise or bewilderment
tuā...dextrā (manū): abl. means
animam hanc: i.e. Aeneas’ last breath and life
 99 **ubi...ubi...(iacet et) ubi:** *where...;* anaphora, asyndeton, and ellipsis; add ‘et’ and a verb
Aeacidāe: *of Achilles;* ‘of the descendant of Aeacus,’ patronymic; Achilles is the grandson
telo: *by the spear;* abl. of cause

iacet: *lies (dead);* in Bk 22 of the *Iliad*, Achilles kills Hector with a spear and then drags his body around the walls of Troy
ubi ingēns Sarpēdon (iacet): ellipsis;
 Patroclus, a friend of Achilles, kills the Greek Sarpedon, son of Jupiter, in Bk 16 of the *Iliad*
 100 **tot:** adj. modifying all three acc. objects
correpta sub undis: PPP modifies all three objs. but agrees with neuter pl. scūta
 101 **vir(ōr)um:** of men; syncopated gen. pl.

Aenēas, -ae, acc. ān m.: Aeneas, 10
caelum, -ī n.: sky, 6
dexter, -tra, -trum: right (hand), 6
Ō: O! oh! ah!, 6
ōs, ōris n.: mouth; face, 10

sīdus, -eris n.: star, constellation, 10
tālis, -e: such, 9
tēlum, -ī n.: spear, arrow, projectile, 8
Teucrus, -a, -um: Teucrian, Trojan, 8
unda, -ae f.: wave, 6

What we Missed: Summary of Aeneid 1.34-84

The Trojans are sailing around Sicily in 20 ships to Italy. Juno, angry that she cannot destroy the Trojans, approaches Aeolus, whom Jupiter as patron set over the winds. Juno orders Aeolus to release the winds without Jupiter’s knowledge, and the Aeolus complies. The result is a storm at sea.

Aeneas’ 1st Speech and *Odyssey* Book 5

In the following speech from *Odyssey* Book 5, Odysseus is lost at sea during a storm and laments his fate. Note how Aeneas’ speech in ll. 92-101—particularly the underlined sections—is an imitation of this speech below.

Then were the knees of Odysseus loosened and his heart melted, and deeply moved he spoke to his own mighty spirit: 297

“Ah me, wretched that I am! What is to befall me at the last?

I fear me that verily all that the goddess said was true, when she declared that on the sea, before ever I came to my native land, 300

I should fill up my measure of woes; and lo, all this now is being brought to pass.

In such wise does Zeus overcast the broad heaven with clouds,

and has stirred up the sea, and the blasts

of all manner of winds sweep upon me; now is my utter destruction sure. 305

Thrice blessed those Danaans, aye, four times blessed, who of old perished in the wide land of Troy, doing the pleasure of the sons of Atreus.

Even so would that I had died and met my fate on that day

when the throngs of the Trojans hurled upon me bronze-tipped spears,

fighting around the body of the dead son of Peleus. 310

Then should I have got funeral rites, and the Achaeans would have spread my fame, but now by a miserable death was it appointed me to be cut off.”

Odyssey V.297-312 (tr. A. T. Murray, 1919)

This imitation tells us several things: (1) Vergil expected his readers to know the *Odyssey* in Greek and recognize the imitation. (2) By having Aeneas mimic Odysseus’ words, Vergil elevates Aeneas, who is a very minor figure in myth and legend, and encourages readers to view him as a hero of equal status to the famed Odysseus. (3) Vergil wishes for us to view Aeneas’ fear and wish for death as an expression of the heroic ideal (below).

The Traditional Epic Hero

At first glance Aeneas and Odysseus may appear to be cowards wishing for death, but in fact both are expressing the ideal of the epic hero. A traditional epic hero strives though deeds to achieve immortal glory. Both Aeneas and Odysseus express this same ideal when they wish that they had died in battle and were remembered rather than die without glory at sea. When Aeneas recalls the fallen Trojans Hector and Sarpedon, he is lamenting that, while they will be remembered for their heroism, though tumbling in the Simois river after death, Aeneas will most certainly be forgotten drowning at sea.

Tālia iactantī strīdēns Aquilōne procella	102
vēlum adversa ferit, flūctūsque ad sīdera tollit.	103
Franguntur rēmī, tum prōra āvertit et undīs	104
dat latus, insequitur cumulō praeruptus aquae mōns.	105
Hī summō in flūctū pendent; hīs unda dehīscēns	106
terram inter flūctūs aperit, furit aestus harēnis.	107
rēgīna ad templum, formā pulcherrima Dīdō,	496
incessit magnā iuvenum stīpante catervā.	497
Quālis in Eurōtae rīpās aut per iuga Cynthī	498
exercet Dīāna chorōs, quam mīlle secūtae	499
hinc atque hinc glomerantur Orēadēs; illa pharetram	500
fert umerō gradiēnsque deās superēminet omnēs	501
(Lātōnae tacitum pertemptant gaudia pectus):	502

aestus, -ūs f.: tide

Aquilō, -ōnis m.: Aquilo wind, north wind, 2

āvertō, -ēre, āvertī, āversum: turn away, 2

chorus, -ī m.: chorus, dance, band

cumulus, -ī m.: heap, mass

Cynthus, -ī m.: Mt. Cynthus in Delos, birthplace of Apollo and Diana

dehīscō, -ere: split open, yawn, gape, 2

Dīāna (Dīāna), -ae f.: Diana (Grk. Artemis), 3

Eurōtās, -ae m.: Eurotas river

exerceō, -ēre, -uī: exercise, train (on), 2

feriō, ferīre: strike

forma, -ae f.: form, shape; beauty, 3

frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum: break, 2

furō, -ere, -uī: rage, rave, be frantic

gaudium, -iī n.: gladness, joy

glomerō (1): gather, roll together

gradior, -ī, gressus sum: step, walk, proceed, 2

harēna, -ae f.: sand, 2

iacō (1): throw (back and forth), toss, 3

102 **Tālia:** *such things*; i.e. words; obj. of iactantī

iacantī: *for the (one)...*; i.e. Aeneas; pres.

pplē iactō and dat. of reference (i.e. point of view); iactō can mean ‘yell’ or ‘ponder’

103 **adversa:** *straight on*; nom. pred. adj. as adv.

Franguntur...(et) tum...(et) insequitur:

asyndeton, marking abrupt action in the storm

104 **dat latus:** a position a wave can overturn

105 **cumulō:** *in...*; abl. of manner

106 **Hī (virī):** i.e. the men on the ships; nom. pl.

summō: *top of...*; not ‘highest’

hīs (virīs): *to these*; dat. of reference/interest

107 **(et) furit**

harēnis: *with...*; abl. of association; the

incēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum: go, proceed, strut

insequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum: follow, ensue

iugum, -ī n.: (mtn) ridge; harness, 2

iuvenis, -is m.: juvenile, a youth, 2

Lātōna, -ae f.: Latona

mīlle pl. milia, ium n.: thousand, 2

Orēas, -adis f.: nymph, mountain-nymph

pertemptō (1): try; master, possess

pharetra, -ae f.: quiver, arrow-carrier, 3

praeruptus, -a, -um: abrupt, steep, sheer

procella, -ae f.: blast, gust

prōra, -ae f.: prow, bow (front of a ship)

rēmus, -ī m.: oar

rīpa, -ae f.: bank, river bank, 2

stīpō (1): pack around, crowd together

superēmineō, -ēre: tower above

tacitus, -a, -um: silent, 2

templum, -ī n.: temple, 2

vēlum, -ī n.: sail

water and land are mixing

497 **magnā...stīpante catervā:** abl. abs.

iuvenum: gen. pl.

498 **Quālis...Dīāna:** *Just as Diana...*; ‘which sort Diana,’ a relative adj. modifying Dīāna and introducing a **simile** that lasts through l. 503

500 **quam secūtae ...Orēadēs:** *whom...*; relative clause, quam is obj. of pf. dep. pplē sequor: (translate as ‘having Xed’), Orēadēs is subject

hinc atque hinc: *here and there*

illa: *that one*; i.e. Diana

501 **(in) umerō**

502 **tacitum...pectus:** neut. acc.

caterva, -ae f.: group, retinue, band, troop, 5

Dīdō, -ōnis f.: Dido, 8

flūctus, -ūs m.: wave, 5

pectus, -oris n.: chest, breast; heart, 4

pendeō, -ēre, pependī: hang, hang down, 4

strīdēns, -ntis: screeching, hissing, whistling, 4

umerus, -ī m.: shoulder, 6

Ancient Science: The Storm as Disorder of Natural Elements Note how the disorder stirred up by the winds is depicted as the unnatural mixing of the four primary elements (earth, water, air, and fire) from their natural places: e.g. water high in the air, land where there should be water, water described as land masses, etc. You will enjoy the storm passage much more if you notice these details.

What we Missed: Summary of Aeneid 1.107-496

- 1. Neptune calms the storm:** Neptune notices Juno's influence and summons the personified winds. He commands the winds to return to Aeolus and tell him not to interfere with his domain, the sea.
- 2. Aeneas recovers 7 of his 20 ships near Carthage:** As the Trojans feed on deer which Aeneas just hunted, Aeneas delivers a famous speech of encouragement—imitating Odysseus in the *Odyssey*.
- 3. Dido and Carthage:** Venus, disguised as a Spartan huntress, approaches Aeneas and Achates as they recon the unknown land. Venus explains that Phoenician Dido is sister to Pygmalion, the king of the city of Tyre. Pygmalion had secretly killed Dido's husband, Sychaeus. In a dream Sychaeus tells Dido what happened and reveals a hidden treasure. Dido and her Phoenician followers find the treasure, flee to North Africa, and use the treasure to buy land and found the city of Carthage.
- 4. Aeneas and Achates, enveloped in mist of invisibility by Venus, visit Carthage:** As they admire the city that is being built, they see a mural of the Trojan war and approach a large Temple of Juno.

Dido's Character and Leadership

Dido is portrayed very positively in Book 1, but readers will see her character decline as she gives in to unrestrained emotions such as love in Book 4 with consequences for both herself and her people. It is as if Vergil wants to instruct us on the negative effects of love even on those who seem virtuous.

Note **Dido's positive attributes**, which Vergil mentions, even before she meets Aeneas:

- (1) shows strong leadership when fleeing from Pygmalion, King of Tyre (1.340-68)
- (2) demonstrates piety in building Temple of Juno, under which she now sits (1.505-6)
- (3) is likened to the goddess Diana (1.498-503)
- (4) dispenses rights and laws to men (1.507)
- (5) avoids favoritism by assigning work fairly or even by lottery (1.508)
- (6) offers to help 13 lost Trojan ships depart or to rule Carthagians and Trojans as equals (1.569-74)

Words easily confused: *solum* (1.506) reminds us that it is good to review words with similar stems.

aura, -ae *breeze*³

aurum, -ī *gold*²

auris, -is *ear*⁴

aestās, -tātis *summer*⁰

aetās, -tātis *age, time*⁰

aestus, -ūs *tide*¹

labor, -ōris *work*³

labōrō, -āre *work*⁰

lābor, lābī *glide, slip*³

lātus, -a, -um *wide*⁵

latus, lateris *side*³

lateō, -ēre *lie hidden*¹

mora, -ae *delay*²

mors, mortis *death*⁷

mōs, mōris *custom*²

opera, -ae *effort*

ops, opis *help/resources*²

opus, operis *work*¹³

porta, -ae *gate*¹

portus, -ūs *harbor*¹

portō, -āre *carry*¹

volō, velle *want*⁷

volō, -āre *fly*³

vultus, -ūs *face, expression*³

ōra, -ae *beach*⁴

ōs, ōris *mouth*¹⁰

ōrō, -āre *plead*⁶

os, ossis *bone*¹

sōlus, -a, -um *only*¹⁰

solum, -ī *soil*²

sōl, sōlis *sun*³

solum, -ī *throne*¹

vīrēs (pl. vīs) *strength*⁴

vir, -ī, *man*¹²

fātum, -ī *fate*¹¹

for, ārī, fatus *speak*³

gēns, gentis *people, race*⁵

genus, -eris *kind, birth, people*⁴

turbō, turbīnis *whirlwind*²

turba, -ae *crowd*² turbō (1) *confuse*¹

tālis erat Dīdō, tālem sē laeta ferēbat	503
per mediōs instāns operī rēgnisque futūrīs.	504
Tum foribus dīvae, mediā testūdine templī,	505
saep̄ta armīs soliōque altē subnixa resēdit.	506
iūra dabat lēgēsque virīs, operumque labōrem	507
partibus aequābat iūstīs aut sorte trahēbat:	508
cum subitō Aenēas concursū accēdere magnō	509
Anthea Sergestumque videt fortemque Cloanthum	510
Teucōrumque aliōs, āter quōs aequore turbō	511
dispulerat penitusque aliās āvēxerat ōrās.	512

accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum: approach, 3

aequō (1): make equal, 3

Antheus, -ī (acc. -ea) m.: Antheus

āvehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum: carry away, 2

Cloanthus, -ī m.: Cloanthus (a Trojan)

conkursus, -ūs m.: gathering, running together

dispellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum: drive apart, disperse, scatter

foris, -is f.: door, gate, entrance

īnstō, -āre, -stītī: set on, press on, urge on, 3

iūs, iūris n.: justice, law, right, 3

iūstus, -a, -um: just

503 **Talis...** *such ...*; nom. pred. marking the end of the simile; the relative *quālis* and demonstrative *tālis* are correlatives

(et) tālem: (*and*) *as such...*; acc. pred.; *ferēbat* here governs a double acc. (obj. and pred.)

laeta: *happily*; nom. adj. as adv.

504 **per mediōs (virōs/hominēs):** add a noun

īnstāns: *pressing on*; + dat. of compound verb

505 **(in) foribus:** abl. of place where

dīvae: *of the goddess*; i.e. Juno; gen. sg. substantive from *dīvus*, -a, -um

(in) mediā testūdine: i.e. an archway or vault

506 **saep̄ta:** fem. nom. PPP, *saepiō*

armīs: *by armed guards*; *synecdoche*

soliō: abl. place where with *subnīxa*

altē: *on high, up high*; 'highly'

507 **virīs:** *to...*; dat. ind. obj.

operumque labōrem: *the labor of the*

labor, -ōris m.: labor, hardship, 3

lactus, -a, -um: happy

penitus: within, deeply

saepiō, -īre, -psī, -ptum: hedge in, enclose

Sergestus, -ī m.: Sergestus (Trojan leader)

solium, -ī n.: throne, seat

subitō: suddenly, 3

subnixus, -a, -um: resting/leaning on (*abl.*)

templum, -ī n.: temple, 2

testūdo, testūdinis f.: tortoise

trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum: drag (out), draw, 2

turbō, -binis m.: whirlwind, 2

projects; both *opus* and *labor* mean 'work', but *labor* denotes the toil and sweat while *opus* denotes the project or completed product

508 **partibus...iūstīs:** *with...*; abl. means; *pārs*, is 'portion' or 'share;' Dido distributes the work fairly to all

sorte: i.e. randomly, abl. of means; Dido is not playing favorites; she does the equivalent of drawing names from a hat to be fair to all

509 **cum...videt:** *when...*; temporal clause

conkursū...magnō: *with...*; abl. manner

accēdere...Anthea...aliōs: *that Antheus...*; ind. disc. with four acc. subjects governed by *videt*; *Anthea* is a Greek acc. sg.

511 **āter quōs turbō...ōrās:** *whom...*; relative clause; *āter* modifies nom. sg. *turbō*

(in) aequore

512 **(ad) aliās...ōrās:** acc. place to which

lēx, lēgis f.: law, decree, 4

sors, sortis f.: lot, luck, 4

Quālis⁷ introduces Relative Clauses of Comparison and Similes**Why do we translate quālis, ‘which sort,’ with the words ‘such as’ or ‘just as’?**

The adjectives *tālis* and *quālis* are correlatives (demonstrative and relative, respectively), and translate slightly differently when used together than when they are used separately:

tālis *this sort/such* *quālis* *which sort* *tālis*...*quālis* → *this sort which sort* → **such as**

As you see above, when the adj. *tālis* is part of the antecedent in the main clause and *quālis* introduces a relative clause, *tālis* is often translated as ‘such’ and *quālis* is translated as ‘as.’ In similes and other clauses of comparison, *tālis* is often missing but understood from context. And so, when we translate the relative *quālis* into English, we assume the antecedent *tālis* to make the translation clearer:

quālis → (*tālis*) *quālis* → **such as/just as**

Compare I.498-503 on p. 76-8, where Vergil offers a simile but includes *tālis* and a main clause:

Quālis...exercet Diana chorōs...tālis erat Dīdō *Which sort Diana busies...this sort was Dido*
→ **just as** *Diana busies the chorus...such was Dido*

If you are confused, be patient and reread this note as you encounter more similes. For now, use this rule of thumb: translate *quālis* as ‘such as/just as’ when alone and as ‘as’ when accompanied by *tālis*.

What Happens Next: Summary of the end of Aeneid Book 1

- 1. Dido offers Hospitality:** Aeneas and Achates watched unobserved behind the mist of invisibility as Trojan leaders of the 13 lost ships approach Dido who sits under the Temple of Juno. The Trojan leader Ilioneus requests hospitality, explains that they are Trojans, praises their lost leader Aeneas, and asks for safe passage to Sicily or their fated destination in Italy. Dido delivers a speech in reply where she assures the Trojans that their suffering is well-known, offers safe passage to Sicily or Italy, and even offers to rule over the Trojans as equals if they wish to stay.
- 2. Immediately after Dido finishes her speech, Aeneas emerges from the mist of invisibility** to the amazement of both the Carthaginians and Trojans. After he introduces himself to Dido, he reunites with his fellow Trojans. Dido escorts him to the palace for a banquet and arranges to have food sent to the ships.
- 3. At this point, Aeneas sends Achates back to the ship with a dual purpose:** (1) to retrieve several gifts for Dido and (2) to bring Aeneas’ son Ascanius to the palace for the evening banquet.
- 4. Venus intervenes and replaces Ascanius with a disguised Cupid to make Dido fall in love.** Venus puts her grandson Ascanius into a deep sleep and hides him away. We assume that he returns in Book 4 after the banquet ends, but Vergil never tells us. Venus’ son Cupid then disguises himself as Ascanius and joins Aeneas and Dido for the banquet. As Book 1 ends, Dido asks Aeneas to tell of his travels, and, as the disguised Cupid sits on Dido’s lap, Vergil says ‘unlucky Dido was drinking long draughts of love’ (*īnfēlīx Dīdō, longumque bibēbat amōrem*, I.749).

Synecdoche is a rhetorical device where the part signifies the whole. *Tectum* is a common example and Pliny has already used it numerous times. Note the use of *ferrum* as well.

aes ‘bronze’ → *armor, statue*² **ōs** ‘mouth’ → *face*^{1 time}

ferrum ‘iron’ → *sword*⁵ **tēctum** ‘roof’ → *house, shelter*⁹

Prīmus ibi ante omnēs magnā comitante catervā	40
Lāocoōn ardēns summā dēcurrit ab arce,	41
et procul: “Ō miserī, quae tanta insānia, cīvēs?	42
Crēditis āvectōs hostēs? Aut ūlla putātis	43
dōna carēre dolīs Danaum? Sic nōtus Ulixēs?	44
Aut hōc inclūsī lignō occultantur Achīvī,	45
aut haec in nostrōs fabricāta est māchina mūrōs,	46
inspectūra domōs ventūraque dēs super urbī,	47
aut aliquis latet error; equō nē crēdite, Teucrī.	48
Quidquid id est, timeō Danaōs et dōna ferentēs.”	49
Sic fātus validīs ingentem vīribus hastam	50
in latus inque ferī curvam compāgibus alvum	51
contorsit. Stetit illa tremēns, uterōque recussō	52
insonuēre cauae gemitumque dedēre cavernae.	53

Achīvus, -a, -um: Achaean
aliquis, -qua, -quid: some, any, 3
alvus, -ī m.: belly
āvehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum: carry away, 2
careō, -ēre, -uī: be lacking, be without (*abl*), 2
caverna, -ae f.: cavern, grotto
cavus, -a, -um: hollow, 2
cīvis, -is m/f: citizen
comitō (1): accompany, attend, 2
compāgēs, -is f.: seam, joint
contorqueō, -ēre, -torsī, -tortum: twist, hurl, 2
curvus, -a, -um: curved, bent
dēcurrō, -ere, -cururrī: to run down
dēs super: from above
dolus, -ī m.: trick, deceit
dōnum, -ī n.: gift, 3
equus, -ī m.: horse
error, -ōris m.: wandering, straying
fabricor, -ārī, -ātus sum: make, fashion
ferus, -a, -um: wild; *subs.* wild animal, 2

40 **Prīmus...Lāocoōn...dēcurrit:** i.e. Laocoon is in front of the group ; the adv. *prīmum* means first in time (e.g. first...then...) while the adj. means that Laocoon was the first to undertake an action
magnā comitante catervā: *abl. abs. pres. pple*

42 **procul (clāmat)**
Ō miserī...cīvēs: *voc. dir. address*
quae tanta insānia (est)?: *what...(is this)?*

43 **Crēditis, putātis:** 2p pres.
āvectōs (esse) hostēs: *that...; ind. disc. with pf. pass. inf. āvehō*
ūlla dona carēre: *that...; ind. disc., careō*

for, fārī, fātus sum: speak, say, tell, utter, 3
hostis, -is m./f.: enemy, 2
inclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum: close in, shut in
īnsānia, -ae f.: insanity, madness
īsonō, -āre, -uī: make sound in/on; resound, 2
īspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectum: look upon
lateō, -ēre, -uī: lie hidden
latus, -eris n.: side, 3
lignum, -ī n.: wood (material)
māchina, -ae f.: machine, crane, war engine, 3
occultō (1): hide, conceal
procul: from afar, far, at a distance, 2
quisquis, quicquid: whoever, whatever, 2
recūtiō, -īre, -cussī, -cussum: reverberate, strike back
timeō, -ēre, timuī: be afraid, fear, 3
tremō, -ere, -uī: tremble
Ulixēs, -is m.: Ulysses (Lat. for Odysseus)
uterus, -ī m.: belly, 2
validus, -a, -um: strong, sturdy, 2

governs an *abl.* of separation as object
Dana(ōr)um: *gen. pl. with dōna*

44 **nōtus (est):** *has been known;* Note how negatively Ulysses (Odysseus) is portrayed

45 **Aut...aut...:** *either...or...*
hōc...lignō: *abl. means with PPP inclūsī*
Achīvī: *the Greeks;* substantive, nom. subj.
46 **haec...māchina:** *nom. subj., i.e. the horse*
in nostrōs...mūrōs: *against...*

47 **inspectūra...ventūra:** *intending to...intending to...* ; fut. act. pples expressing purpose, *veniō urbī: into...* ; *dat. of direction (~purpose)*

48 **nē crēdite:** *Don't...; neg. imperative employs*

- nē rather than nōn; crēdō governs a dat. ind obj.
Teucrī: voc. dir. address
 49 **Quidquid id est:** *whatever*...; parenthetical
et dona ferentēs: *even (while)*...; pres. pple; et
 is an adv.; Laocoön mistrusts the Greeks, but
 even more when they offer gifts
 50 **fātus:** pf. dep. pple for, fārī: ‘having Xed’
validis vīribus: abl. means; vīrēs, pl. of vīs,
 means ‘strength’

- 51 **in-que ferī curvam...alvum:** et in curvam
 alvum ferī; gen. sg. ferī modifies fem. alvum
compagibus: abl. of means with curvam
 52 **stetit:** pf. stō; i.e. stuck
illa: i.e. hasta
uterō recussō: abl. abs.
 53 **insonuēr(unt):** syncopated 3p pf.
dedēr(unt): syncopated 3p pf., dō, dare

hasta, -ae f.: spear, 5

mūrus, ī m.: wall, 5

Lāocoön m. Grk. acc. **-onta:** Laocoon, 4

What we Missed: Aeneas’ First-Person Recollection in Books 2 and 3

Books 2 and 3 are Aeneas’ first person recollection of the fall of Troy (Book 2) and subsequent travels through the Mediterranean (Book 3). In Book 2 lines 1-39 Dido asks Aeneas to recall his travels at the banquet, and Aeneas begins by telling Dido and fellow banqueters that in the tenth year of the Trojan war the Greeks mysteriously disappeared with their ships, and the Trojans found a wooden horse marked *Minervae*, “to Minerva,” on the shore. While some argued that the horse should be honored in the center of Troy, others argued that it should be destroyed. As the Trojans debate on the shore, the priest **Laocoön** emerges from the city gates and yells at the Trojans as he runs closer.

Aeneas recalls Book 2 and 3 in the 1st person with Lots of Foreshadowing

Through most of the *Aeneid*, Vergil is an **omniscient narrator**, who describe events that no human could not know otherwise—the private conversations of the gods, for example. In Books 2 and 3, Aeneas recalls events...

- (1) in the 1st person singular (I) and 1st person plural (We Trojans),
 - (2) in a narrative that is limited to what Aeneas himself witnessed at Troy and at sea,
 - (3) with foreshadowing and knowledge that Aeneas gained from surviving these events.
- (Note how Aeneas will contrast the Trojans’ joy with his knowledge of the destruction.)

Aeneid Books 2-3 imitate *Odyssey* Books 9-12

Aeneas’ recollection of the fall of Troy (Book 2) and his wanderings at sea (Book 3) during a banquet with Dido is an imitation of *Odyssey* Books 9-12, where Odysseus tells the story of his own travels at sea and famous encounters with monsters at a banquet with the Phaeacian people.

Originality in Greco-Roman Art: Imitation and Variation

Vergil’s imitation of the *Odyssey* and *Iliad* is an example of originality in art and literature that was quite common in the Greco-Roman world. Many authors would imitate their predecessors in large and small ways and then offer a variation or twist to distinguish their own work from what came before.

Readers who view this imitation as a form of plagiarism or simple laziness in storytelling are missing the point. Vergil wishes to use the imitation not only to embed the *Aeneid* in the tradition of Homer’s *Odyssey* and *Iliad* but also to make intelligible how the *Aeneid* rivals and surpasses its predecessors.

In Book 2, Vergil will consistently characterize the Greek people as untrustworthy and Ulysses (Odysseus) in particular as untrustworthy and impious. And so, as Vergil continues to elevate Aeneas’ status as a hero, note how he lowers the reader’s opinion of Ulysses and the Greeks.

Et, sī fāta deum, sī mēns nōn laeva fuisset,	54
impulerat ferrō Argolicās foedāre latebrās,	55
Troiaque nunc stāret, Priamīque arx alta manērēs.	56
Lāocoōn, ductus Neptūnō sorte sacerdōs,	201
sollemnēs taurum ingentem mactābat ad ārās.	202
Ecce autem geminī ā Tenedō tranquilla per alta	203
(horrēscō referēs) immēnsīs orbibus anguēs	204
incumbunt pelagō pariterque ad litora tendunt;	205
pectora quōrum inter flūctūs arrēcta iubaeque	206
sanguineae superant undās; pars cētera pontum	207
pōne legit sinuatque immēnsa volūmine terga.	208
Fit sonitus spūmante salō; iamque arva tenēbant	209
ardentēs oculōs suffectī sanguine et ignī	210
sībila lambēbant linguīs vibrantibus ōra.	211

anguis, -is m./f.: snake

āra, -ae f.: altar, 2

Argolicus, -a, -um: Argive, Greek

arrigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum: raise, prick up

autem: however, moreover, 2

cēterī, -ae, -a: the remaining, rest, others, 3

ecce: behold, 3

fiō, fierī, factus sum: become, be made, 2

foedō (1): befoul, make ugly, 3

geminī, -ae, -a: twin, double, two, 3

horrescō, -ēre, -uī: begin to shudder, bristle

immensus, -a, -um: immense, 2

impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum: impel, push, 3

incumbō, -ere, -cubūi: lie on, lean over, 2

iuba, -ae f.: crest, mane, 2

laevus, -a, -um: left (hand); unfavorable

lambō, -ēre, -ī: lick

latebra, -ae f.: lair, hiding-place

lingua, ae f.: tongue, language, 2

mactō (1): sacrifice, make sacrifice

Neptūnus, -ī m.: Neptune

orbis, -is m.: coil, circle (of a shield); sphere, 3

pariter: equally; side by side, 3

pelagus, -ī n.: sea

pōne: *adv.* behind, after, 2

pontus, -ī m.: sea, 2

Priamus, -ī m.: Priam (king of Troy), 2

sacerdōs, -dōtis m. f.: priest(ess)

salum, -ī n.: sea, swelling sea

sanguineus, a-, -um: bloody

sībilus, -a, -um: hissing

sinuō (1): twist, wind, curve, 1

sollemnis, -e: solemn, annual

sonitus, -ūs m.: sound, noise, clang, 2

spūmō (1): spume, foam, froth, spit, 2

sufficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: fill, imbue, steep

superō (1): surpass, be above, 2

taurus, -ī m.: bull, 2

Tenedus (ōs), -ī m.: island Tenedos

tranquillus, -a, -um: tranquil, calm

vibrō (1): vibrate, brandish, shake, 2

volūmen, -inis n.: roll; scroll

54 sī fāta de(ōr)um (et) sī mēns (deōrum)...

fuisset, impulerat...stāret...manērēs: *if the fates... (and) if the purpose had been..., (the spear) would have impelled (us)...would*

...would...; a mixed contrary to fact (sī plpf.

subj., plpf. ind. and impf. subj.); plpf. subj. sum

stō and maneō; **impulerat** is a vivid plpf. ind.,

where one expects plpf. subj. the ellipsis and

asyndeton reflect Aeneas' heightened emotions

ferrō: abl. means, i.e. the spearpoint

arx alta Priamī: voc. dir. address and gen.

manērēs: *you would...*; impf. subj. in the same condition; apostrophe, a device where a speaker

'turns away' to address someone not present

201 **ductus:** *drawn*; as if from a hat; PPP, dūcō

Neptūnō: *for...*; dat. of interest

sorte: abl. means

sacerdōs: nom. in apposition to Lāocoōn

203 **geminī...anguēs:** nom. subject

ā Tenedō: The 1000-ship Greek fleet is hiding behind the island of Tenedos. Some suggest that the serpents symbolize Agamemnon and

- Menelaus, the two brothers who led the Greeks to Troy and will capture the city.
alta: *the deep (sea)*; **metonymy**
 203 **horrescō**: Aeneas inserts 1s commentary as he recalls the events
 204 **referēns**: (*while*) *recalling*; i.e. the events
immēnsis orbibus: *of...*; abl. of quality
 205 **pelagō**: *on...*; dat. of compound verb
pariter: *side by side*; ‘equally’
 206 **pectora quōrum**: *whose chests...*; neut. nom. pl. and gen. pl. relative
arrēcta (sunt): the serpents lift their chests and heads out of the water
pars cētera: i.e. below the serpents’ chests
 208 **legit**: *skims*; ‘traverses’

- volūmine**: *with...*; abl. manner; i.e. in the form of a corkscrew
 209 **fit**: 3s pres., serves as the passive of *facere*
spūmante salō: abl. abs. with pres. pple
tenēbant: i.e. take hold of; i.e. the serpents
 210 **ardentēs oculōs suffectī**: *having filled + acc.*; lit. ‘having been filled in respect to...’ a PPP + acc. of respect; this acc. of respect, usually with body parts, is more common in Greek than in Latin; cf. 4.216
sanguine et ignī: abl. of means; abl. ignī is a 3rd decl. i-stem noun
 211 **sibila ōra**: neut. nom. pl. subject
linguīs vibrantibus: abl. means

arvum, -ī n.: field, arable/cultivated field, 5

Contrary to Fact (Contrafactual) Conditions

We identify conditions (if-then clauses) by the tense and mood of the two main verbs. A present contrary to fact condition (*were, would*) has impf. subj. in both the **protasis** (if-clause) and **apodosis** (then-clause). A past contrary to fact (*had, would have*) has plpf. subj. in both parts. See below:

present contrary to fact: **sī audīrēs, hoc scīrēs.** *If you were listening, you would know this.*
 past contrary to fact: **sī audīvissēs, hoc scīvissēs.** *If you had listened, you would have known this.*

In 2.54-6 the sentence is a mixed contrary to fact: the **protasis** is plpf. subj. (*had...*) but the **apodosis** has not only a plpf. (*would have*) but also two impf. subj. verbs (*would*). The sentence is even more complicated because Vergil uses plpf. indicative (*impulerat*) where we expect plpf. subj. (*impulisset*) in order to make the verb even more vivid to readers:

Sī mēns (deōrum)...**fuisset**, (1) **impulerat**, (2) **stāret**, (3) **manērēs** 2.54-6
If the purpose of the gods had been...,...would have impelled (us)...would stand... would remain

What happens next: Sinon’s deceit and Trojan hospitality (2.57-200)

1. From Sinon’s deceit, know all the Greeks!: After Laocoön throws the spear at the horse, a deceitful Greek named Sinon is captured and wins the trust of King Priam. Sinon tells King Priam that the Greeks had built the wooden horse to honor Minerva on their journey home. Sinon says that, when the Greeks were told by an oracle to sacrifice a human before they left, Ulysses (Odysseus), who had a private dispute with Sinon, cleverly arranged for Sinon to be the sacrifice. Sinon broke free from his Greek captors and remained hidden until the Trojans found him. Sinon, as we ill learn, is lying.

2. Ulysses is deceitful and untrustworthy Unknown to the Trojans, Odysseus had come up with (a) the idea of the Trojan horse and (b) conspired with Sinon to persuade the Trojans to trust the horse.

3. Trust and Hospitality lead to Troy’s downfall. Priam welcomes Sinon and is persuaded that the horse is not a trick but a gift to be protected. It is at this time that the serpents attack Laocoön.

The Two Serpents Represent Agamemnon and Menelaus

The Greeks were led to Troy by Agamemnon of Mycenae and his brother, Menelaus of Sparta, who was married to Helen and had invoked the oath of Tyndareus that gathered the Greeks against Troy. All of the Greek ships now lie hidden behind the island of Tenedos. And so, when the two serpents come from Tenedos, they symbolize these two Greek leaders and the destruction that they will bring.

Diffugimus vīsū exsanguēs. Illī agmine certō	212
Lāocoōnta petunt; et p̄rimum parva duōrum	213
corpora nātōrum serpēns amplexus uterque	214
implicat et miserōs morsū dēpascitur artūs;	215
post ipsum auxiliō subeuntem ac tēla ferentem	216
corripiunt sp̄rīsque ligant ingentibus; et iam	217
bis medium amplexī, bis collō squāmea circum	218
terga datī superant capite et cervīcibus altīs.	219
Ille simul manibus tendit dīvellere nōdōs	220
perfūsus saniē vittās ātrōque venēnō,	221
clāmōrēs simul horrendōs ad sīdera tollit:	222
quālis mūgītus, fūgit cum saucius āram	223
taurus et incertam excussit cervīce secūrim.	224

agmen, -inis n.: column, line, formation, 3
amplector, -plectī, -plexus sum: embrace, enclose, 3
āra, -ae f.: altar, 2
artus, -ūs m.: joint, limb, 2
auxilium, -ī n.: help, aid, assistance, 2
bis: twice, 2
cervīx, -īcis f.: neck, 2
clāmōr, -ōris m.: shout, cry, scream, 2
collum, -ī n.: neck, 2
dēpascor, -ī, -pāstus sum: feed/graze from
diffugiō, -ere, -fūgī: flee apart, escape
dīvellō, -ere, -vellī, -vulsum: tear apart/away
duo, duae, duo: two, 3
excutiō, -ere, -cussī: strike/shake off, 2
exsanguis, -e: bloodless; pale
horrendus, -a, -um: horrible, horrendous, 3
ligō (1): tie down, fasten
morsus, -ūs m.: bite
 212 **vīsū:** *by...*; ‘because of...’ abl. of cause
illī: i.e. the serpents, nom. pl.
agmine certō: *in fixed formation*; abl. manner
 213 **Lāocoōnta:** Grk. acc. sg.
p̄rimum...post...: *first...afterwards...*; advs.
parva corpora duōrum nātōrum: note the interlocking word word (synchysis), likely reflecting the coiling of the bodies
amplexus: pf. dep. pple: ‘having Xed’
 215 **morsū:** *with a...*; abl. manner
 216 **post:** *afterwards, later*; adv.
(Lāocoōnta) ipsum: (*Laocoon*) *himself*
auxiliō: *for...*; dat. of purpose
subeuntem: pres. pple subeō
 217 **sp̄rīs ingentibus:** abl. means

mūgītus, -ūs m.: mooing, bellowing
nātus, -ī m.: son (male born)
nōdus, -ī m.: knot, 2
parvus, -a, -um: small, 3
perfundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum: pour/shed over
saniēs, -ēī f.: blood
saucius, -a, -um: injured, wounded
secūris, -is f.: axe
serpēns, -ntis f.: serpent
simul: at the same time, together, 3
spīra, -ae f.: coil
squāmeus, -a, -um: scaly
subeō, -īre, -ī, itum: go up to, approach, 2
superō (1): surpass, be above, 2
taurus, -ī m.: bull, 2
venēnum, -ī n.: poison
vīsus, -ūs m.: vision, sight
vitta, -ae f.: ribbon, band, fillet
 218 **medium:** *his waist*; ‘middle of (his body)’
plexī (sunt): 3p pf. dep.: translate active
collō: *around...*; dat. of compound verb
circum...datī: *having put (acc) around (dat)*;
mesis for PPP circumdō, ‘put around’
capite...altīs: abl. means or absolute
 219 **Ille:** i.e. Laocoon
simul...simul: *both...and at the same time*
manibus: abl. means
tendit: *strives + inf.*, ‘stretches’
 220 **perfūsus:** *having soaked*; PPP, reflexive in sense; saniē and venēnō are abl. of means
 223 **quālis mūgītus:** *just as...*; ‘which sort (of) mooing...’ relative adj. introducing a simile
fūgit cum: *when...*; cum fūgit + acc. obj.

i.e. a sacrificial bull when it flees the altar
224 **excussit**: a sacrificial blow behind the neck

that is not fatal stirs the bull to flee the altar
cervīce: *from...*; abl. of separation

Interlocking Word Order (Synchysis) and the Entwining of the Snakes and Children

Interlocking word order is a rhetorical device where at least two pairs of words—often noun-adjective pairs—are arranged in an A B A B order that must be unteased when interpreted.

Vergil uses interlocking word order to great effect when he describes how the serpents entwine the limbs of the sons with their coils, and the words themselves reflect the scene that they are describing:

parva duōrum corpora nātōrum 2.213-4

Readers also note that *tmesis*, ‘cutting up,’ (the compound *circumdātī* → *circum...dātī*) creates a sort of interlocking word order to great effect when Vergil describes how the serpents entwine Laocoon:

squāmea circum terga datī... 2.218-9

Finally, there are two more selections in this passage that are not technically examples of this device but create the same effect with pairs of verbs and a noun-adjective pair.

implicat et miserōs morsū dēpascitur artūs 2.215

corripiunt spīrīsque ligant ingentibus 2.217

Subeuntem

The prefix *sub-* often means ‘up’ (i.e. up from under), and so the participle *subeuntem* (from *sub-eō*) means “coming up to” or “approaching,” and the verb *subit* is often translated “approaches.” It is also worth noting that the adverb *subitō*, “suddenly,” literally means “comes up.”

The present participle of *eō, ire* (*iēns, euntis*) is used four times and the gerund (*eundī*) is used two times. Readers should note that before the letter “u,” the stem vowel “i” becomes “e.”

	<u>participle</u> ⁴		<u>gerund</u> ²
Nom.	<i>iēns</i>	<i>euntēs</i> <i>going</i>	-- <i>going</i>
Gen.	<i>euntis</i>	<i>euntium</i>	<i>eundī</i> ¹
Dat.	<i>euntī</i>	<i>euntibus</i>	<i>eundō</i>
Acc.	<i>euntem</i> ⁴	<i>euntēs</i>	<i>eundum</i>
Abl.	<i>euntī/e</i>	<i>euntibus</i>	<i>eundō</i> ¹

Word Building: I-, EUNT-, EUND- “go”

eō, ire, ī, itum: go, come, 7	go
abeō, -ire, -ī, itum: go away, 4	+ away from
adeō, -ire, ī, itum: go to, approach, 4	+ to
obeō, -ire, -ī, -itum: go to/against, die, 1	+ to/against
pereō, perire, perī: pass away, perish, 2	+ through
praetereō, -ire, -ī: go past, pass, 1	+ past
subeō, -ire, -ī, itum: go up to, approach, 2	+ up to, under
trānseō, -ire, -ī, -itus: go across, cross, 1	+ across

The Two Serpents as a Microcosm of the Trojan War: If we assume that the serpents symbolize the two Greek leaders, Agamemnon and Menelaus, why is it appropriate that the Trojan children suffer in front of their father before he dies? How is this scene a microcosm of the Trojan war itself?

At geminī lāpsū dēlūbra ad summa dracōnēs	225
effugiunt saevaeque petunt Trītonidis arcem	226
sub pedibusque deae clipeīque sub orbe teguntur.	227
Tum vērō tremefacta novus per pectora cūctīs	228
insinuat pavor, et scelus expendisse merentem	229
Lāocoōnta ferunt, sacrum quī cuspide rōbur	230
laeserit et tergō scelerātam intorserit hastam.	231
Dūcendum ad sēdēs simulācrum ōrandaque dīvae	232
nūmina conclāmant.	233
Dīvidimus mūrōs et moenia pandimus urbis.	234
Accingunt omnēs operī pedibusque rotārum	235
subiciunt lāpsūs, et stuppea vincula collō	236
intendunt: scandit fātālis māchina mūrōs	237

accingō, -ere, -cinxī, cinctum: belt, gird; equip
clipeus, -ī m.: (round) shield, 3
collum, -ī n.: neck, 2
conclamō (1): cry out together, shout
cūctus, -a, -um: all, whole, entire
cuspis, -idos f.: point, spearpoint, 2
dēlūbrum, -ī n.: temple, shrine, 2
dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsum: divide, 2
dracō, -ōnis m.: serpent; dragon
effugiō, -ere, -fūgī: flee away, escape
expendō, -ere, -pendī: pay, expend, weigh out
fātālis, -e: deadly, fatal, 3
geminī, -ae, -a: twin, double, two, 3
īnsinuō (1): insinuate, twist/wind/bend into
intorqueō, -ēre, -torsī, -tortum: hurl, twist, 2
laedō, -ere, -sī, -sum: hurt, harm; offend, 3
lāpsus, lapsūs m.: gliding, sliding, slipping, 2

225 **geminī dracōnēs:** nom. subj.

lāpsū: *with...*; abl. of manner

dēlūbra ad: ad dēlūbra summa; anastrophe

226 **saevae Trītonidis:** *of savage Minerva*; gen. sg. patronymic; in one tradition, Minerva was the daughter of Neptune and Tritonis, who was in turn the daughter of the god Triton

227 **sub pedibusque:** Athena is often represented in statues as clothed in armor and holding the top edge of a clipeus (circular shield) in her left hand with the bottom of the shield on the ground. Images of serpents were often placed between the thin shield and legs of Minerva to make the base of the statue structurally sound. Vergil has his serpents assume the same position under the shield in lines 226-7.

228 **cūctīs:** *for...*; dat. of interest

māchina, -ae f.: machine, crane, war engine, 3
mereō, -ēre, -uī: deserve, merit, earn, 3
nūmen, -inis n.: divine power/approval, 3
orbis, -is m.: coil, circle (of a shield); sphere, 3
pandō, -ere, -ī, passum: expand, spread
pavor, pavōris m.: pale fear, panic, terror, 2
rōbur, ōris n.: hard wood; oak wood, 2
rota, -ae f.: wheel
scandō, -ere, scandī: climb
scelerātus, -a, -um: wicked, criminal, 2
scelus, sceleris n.: wickedness, crime
simulācrum, -ī n.: image; ghost, likeness, 2
stuppeus, -a, -um: made of rope
subiciō, -ere, -iēcī: throw/place under, 2
tegō, -ere, texī, tectum: cover, protect
tremefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum: make tremble
Trītōnis, -idis: Tritonian (one), Athena

229 **scelus expendisse...Lāocoōnta:** *that Laocoon had paid for...*; ind. disc. with pf. act. inf.; Lāocoōnta is Greek acc. subject
merentem: *deservingly*; ‘deserving,’ the pres. ppl here is predicative and behaves as an adv.

230 **ferunt:** *they say*; ‘they report’

quī...laeserit...intorserit: *who damaged...*; causal relative clause of characteristic (quī = cum is, ‘since he...’) with pf. subj.: translate as pf. indicative

cuspide: abl. means

231 **tergō:** *into...*; dat. of compound verb

232 **ducendum (esse)...simulācrum:** *that...must be...*; ‘that...is to be led’ ind. disc. with pass. periphrastic (gerundive + esse) expressing necessity; all governed by conclāmant

ōranda (esse)...nūmina: *that...must be...*;
 ‘that...are to be prayed to...’ ind. disc. with
 pass. periphrastic (gerundive + esse)
 expressing necessity or obligation
 234 **moenia:** likely refers to ‘defenses’ in general
 235 **accingunt:** *put on their belts*; i.e. prepare
 themselves by putting on belts

operī: *for...*; dat. of purpose
pedibus: *under...*; dat. of compound verb
 236 **lapsūs rōtārum:** acc. pl. obj.; note that the
 motion of the horse is the same as that of the
 serpents (serpent motif)
 237 **collō:** *on...*; dat. of compound verb

at, ast: but; at least, 4
pēs, pedis m.: foot, 5

sacer, -cra, -crum: sacred, holy; sacrifice, rite, 4

Why do the Serpents Seek the Statue of Athena (Tritonis)?

1. Athena is the goddess of victory. This resting place symbolizes how victory favors the Greeks.
2. Vergil is being artistically clever. Athena is often represented in statues and figurines as clothed in armor and holding the top edge of a circular shield in her left hand with the bottom of the shield on the ground. Since a stone shield is fragile, sculptors often placed a stone serpent between Athena’s feet and the shield to support the weight of the shield at its base. Vergil has the serpents find refuge in the very spot where his fellow Greeks and Romans would expect to find a serpent on Athena’s statue.

Review of Gerundive ¹²

A **gerundive** is a future passive participle (stem + nd + 2-1-2 decl. endings) and, just as any adjective, agrees with a noun in case, number, and gender. It can be translated (a) “going/about to be written,” but the most common translations are (b) ‘worthy to be written,’ (i.e. writable) and (c) ‘to be written.’

(1) **A Gerundive as Adjective** ⁸ can mean ‘worthy/able to be Xed’ or simply ‘Xable.’

scribenda	worthy to be written	→	writable	p. 2
legenda	worthy to be read	→	readable	p. 2
mīranda	worthy to be amazed at	→	amazing	p. 24
horrenda/ōs/um	worthy to be shuddered at	→	horrible	pp. 26, 84, 94
īnfandum	not worthy to spoken	→	unspeakable	p. 90
miserandae	worthy to be pitied	→	pitiable	p. 130

(2) **Passive Periphrastic** ⁴ (**gerundive + sum**) expresses necessity and governs a dative of agent.

Note the raw and polished (must/has to) translations below:

	raw		polished	
nōscendum erat	it was to be learned	→	it had to be learned	p. 6
pars agenda erit	part will be to be carried out	→	part will have to be carried out	p. 52
simulācrum ducendum est	the likeness is to be led	→	the likeness must be led	p. 86
nūmina ōranda sunt	the gods are to be prayed to	→	the gods must be prayed to	p. 86

The Serpent Motif: Words for “sliding” and “twisting”

Vergil deliberately applies the imagery of “sliding” and “twisting” that characterize the serpents to other objects that will contribute to the fall of Troy. Note, for example, that the “panic” (pavor) that leads Trojans to misjudge the purpose of the horse “twists” (insinuat) into their hearts in 2.229, and the horse itself has “slippings” (lāpsūs, 2.236) of wheels and “slips” (īnlābitur, 2.240) into the city. The Trojans are unaware that the panic and horse are as destructive as the serpents themselves.

lābor, -ī, lapsus sum: glide, slide, slip, 2

dīlābor, -ī, lapsus sum: slip/glide apart, 1

īnlābor, -ī, lapsus sum: slip/glide on, 1

lāpsus, lapsūs m.: gliding, sliding, slipping, 2

sinuō (1): twist, wind, curve, 1

īnsinuō (1): insinuate, twist/wind/bend into

sinus, -ūs m.: bay, curve; bosom, lap, 2

fēta armīs. Puerī circum innūptaeque puellae	238
sacra canunt fūnemque manū contingere gaudent:	239
illa subit mediaeque mināns inlābitur urbī.	240
Ō patria, Ō dīvum domus Īlium et incluta bellō	241
moenia Dardanidum! Quater ipsō in līmine portae	242
substitit atque uterō sonitum quater arma dedēre;	243
instāmus tamen immemorēs caecīque furōre	244
et mōnstrum infēlix sacrātā sistimus arce.	245
Tunc etiam fātīs aperit Cassandra futūrīs	246
ōra deī iussū nōn umquam crēdita Teucrīs.	247
Nōs dēlūbra deum miserī, quibus ultimus esset	248
ille diēs, festā vēlāmus fronde per urbem.	249

caecus, -a, -um: blind; hidden
canō, -ere, cecinī, cantum: sing, 3
Cassandra, -ae f.: Cassandra
contingō, -ere, contigī: touch, border, 2
Dardanidēs, -ae m.: Dardanian, Trojan
dēlūbrum, -ī n.: temple, shrine, 2
festus, -a, -um: festive
fētus, -a, -um: pregnant, teeming
frons, frondis f.: leaf, foliage
fūnis, -is m.: rope, cord
furor, -ōris m.: rage, fury, madness
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum: enjoy, rejoice, 2
Īlium, -ī n.: Ilium, Troy, 2
immemor, -oris: unmindful, forgetful, 2
inclutus, -a, -um: famed, renowned
inlābor, -ī, lapsus sum: slip/glide on
innūptus, -a, -um: unmarried

238 **circum (eam):** *around (it)*; i.e. machina
 239 **sacra:** *sacred (songs)*
manū: *with a hand*; abl. means
 240 **illa:** *that one*; i.e. the horse as fem. machina
mediae...urbī: *into...*; dat. of compound verb
Ō patria, Ō dīv(ōr)um domus...moenia:
 voc. direct address; **apostrophe** (turning off to
 address someone not present); dīvum is gen.
 pl.; Īlium is an alternative name for Troy and
 is in apposition to domus
 241 **bellō:** *in...*; abl. of respect with incluta
 242 **Dardanidum:** gen. pl.
ipso in līmine: in līmine ipsō, i.e. there was a
 slight rise in the pavement stone as the Trojans
 pull the wheeled horse from the dirt outside
 the city over the gateway and into the city
substitit: the horse as subject
 243 **(in) uterō**

instō, -āre, -stīfī: set on, press on, urge on, 3
minor, -ārī, -ātus sum; menace, threaten, tower
mōnstrum, -ī n.: monster, 3
patria, -ae f.: fatherland, country, 3
porta, -ae f.: gate
puella, -ae f.: girl
quater: four times, 3
sacrō (1): make sacred, make holy
sistō, -ere, -stīfī: stand, stop, 2
sonitus, -ūs m.: sound, noise, clang, 2
subeō, -īre, -ī, itum: go up to, approach, 2
substō, -āre, -stīfī: stand firm
ultimus, -a, -um: farthest, extreme, last, 2
umquam: ever, 2
uterus, -ī m.: belly, 2
vēlō (1): veil, cover, 2

dedēr(unt): syncopated 3p pf. dō, dare
 244 **immemorēs caecīque:** both nom. pl.
 245 **mōnstrum infēlix:** neut. acc. sg.
(in) sacrātā...arce
 246 **etiam:** *also*
fātīs...futūrīs: *for future...*; dat. of purpose
 with fut. act. pple sum
 247 **ōra:** *her mouth*; the neut. plural suggests
 repeated action: ‘repeatedly opens...’
deī iussū: *by...*; ‘because of...’ abl. of cause
 and gen. sg.; Apollo gave Cassandra the gift of
 prophecy but, when she would not love him in
 return, he brought it about that no one believed
 Cassandra’s prophecies
crēdita: PPP with ōra
Teucrīs: *for...*; dat. of interest
 248 **Nōs...miserī:** nom. pl.; the adj. foreshadows
 the destruction that Aeneas knows will come

dēlūbra de(ōr)um: acc. obj. of velāmus
quibus...eset: *for whom that day was the last*; causal relative of characteristic + impf.

subj. sum (quibus=cum nōbīs, ‘since for us...’)
festā...fronde: abl. means; i.e. garlands

infēlix, -īcis: unlucky, unfortunate, 4

The Trojans’ Triumphant Joy vs. Aeneas’ Knowledge of Impending Doom

Throughout Aeneas’ account of the horse being brought into the city (2.234-49), scenes of Trojan joy are juxtaposed with Aeneas’ knowledge that the Trojans are creating their own destruction. Note the many ways Aeneas uses **diction** (word choice) to foreshadow the fall of Troy.

Cassandra is the daughter of King Priam and Queen Hecuba. According to tradition, Apollo offered Cassandra the gift of prophecy in exchange for an opportunity to sleep with her. Once Cassandra received the gift, however, she rejected Apollo’s advances. Since Apollo could not take away the gift, he added a curse so that no one who heard Cassandra’s prophecies would believe or trust them.

Word Building: MINA- “threaten,” “tower” or “project out”

minor, -ārī, -ātus sum; menace, threaten, tower, 1 Note that common derivatives include
immineō, -ēre: tower over, menace over, 3 menace, imminent, eminent, and prominent.
superēmineō, -ēre: tower above, 1
minae, -ārum f.: towers; threats, menaces, 1

What Happens Next: Outline of Book 2

Throughout Book 2, Aeneas wavers—often frantically—between fight and flight. Again and again Aeneas is urged to protect the gods and his family and yet impulsively rushes off to fight to his death. The details can be overwhelming, but the pattern of wavering between flight and fight is very clear:

Roman heroic ideal (*pietas*)

Traditional epic ideal (*gloria*)

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Hector in a dream urges flight and hands over Vesta and Penates (city gods) to Aeneas (289-95) | → Aeneas wakes up to see Troy is being sacked and ‘mindlessly’ rushes to fight (298-317) |
| 2. The priest Panthus meets Aeneas in the street and entrusts the Penates to him, urges flight (318-335) | → Aeneas gives the Penates (city gods) to his father Anchises, rushes to fight: ‘Let us die’ (336-437) |
| 3. On a rooftop Aeneas sees King Priam killed in a courtyard below, sets out to family (438-566) | → Aeneas spots Helen hiding in Temple of Vesta, and sets out to kill her in a rage (567-87) |
| 4. Venus appears, stops Aeneas from killing Helen, reveals the gods’ roles, and urges flight (588-633) | → Aeneas returns, but father Anchises refuses to leave, and Aeneas dutifully obeys (634-78) |
| 5. Divine signs (comet and son Ascanius’ hair catches fire) convince flight from Troy (679-704) | → Aeneas carries father, leads son by hand from city, loses his wife Creusa in flight (735-74) |
| 6. Aeneas returns to find Creusa. Creusa’s ghost urges flight. Aeneas obeys and flees with family (775-804) | |

How do we make sense of Aeneas’ behavior?

Some scholars believe that Aeneas is making a transition in Book 2 from a traditional Homeric epic hero, who strives through brave deeds to achieve immortal glory, to Vergil’s ideal of the Roman epic hero, who embodies pietās, devotion to family, community, and the gods. This transition is gradual and imperfect. On this interpretation Vergil contrasts these views of heroism in Book 2 in order to draw attention to the role that *pietās* (devotion to family, community, and gods) plays in the epic.

Nunc media Aenēan sēcum per moenia dūcit,	74
Sīdoniāsque ostentat opēs urbemque parātam;	75
incipit effārī, mediāque in vōce resistit;	76
nunc eadem lābente diē convīvia quaerit,	77
Īliacōsque iterum dēmēns audīre labōrēs	78
exposcit, pendetque iterum narrantis ab ōre.	79
Post, ubi dīgressī, lūmenque obscūra vicissim	80
lūna premit suādentque cadentia sīdera somnōs,	81
sōla domō maeret vacuā, strātīsque relictīs	82
incubat, illum absēns absentem auditque videtque;	83
aut gremiō Ascanium, genitōris imāgine captā,	84
dētinet, īnfandum sī fallere possit amōrem.	85

absēns, absentis: absent, 2

Ascānius, -ī m.: Ascanius, 2

cadō, cadere, cecidī: fall

convīvium, -ī n.: banquet, feast

dēmēns, -ntis: out of (her) mind, mindless

dētineō, -ēre, -uī: hold back, detain, 3

dīgredior, -ī, -gressus sum: step away, depart

effor, -ārī, -ātus sum: speak out, say

exposcō, -ere, -poposcī: ask, request, demand

fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsum: deceive, 1

genitor, -ōris m.: begetter, father, 2

gremium, -ī n.: lap

Īliacus, -a, -um: of Ilium, Trojan, 2

incubō (1): lie on, 2

īnfandus, -a, -um: unspeakable, 2

iterum: again, 3

lābor, -ī, lapsus sum: glide, slide, slip, 3

labor, -ōris m.: labor, hardship, 3

lūna, -ae f.: moon, 2

maereō, -ēre: grieve, mourn

obscūrus, -a, -um: dim; dark; obscure 3

ops, -is f.: resources, power, wealth, 3

ostentō (1): show, point out

parō (1): prepare, 3

quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, -sītum: search, ask, 2

resistō, -ere, -stītī: resist (dat); stop, stand still

Sīdōnius, -a, -um: Sidonian, Carthaginian

suādeō, -ēre, -āsī, -āsum: persuade, urge

vacuus, -a, -um: empty, purposeless, 2

vicissim: in turn, in turns

74 **media...per moenia:** i.e. around the city

Aenēan: Greek acc. sg. ending

sēcum: cum sē

(Dīdō) dūcit

75 **Sīdoniās...opēs:** i.e. Carthaginian; Sidon and Tyre are both Phoenician cities. ‘Sidonian’ is here a synonym for ‘Carthaginian’

76 **(Dīdō) incipit effārī:** complementary inf.; pres. dep. inf. effor: translate as active

mediā in vōce: i.e. just as she begins to speak

77 **eadem...convīvia:** i.e. Dido requests again and again the same sort of banquet as the one in which Aeneas sat and recalled the fall of Troy and subsequent travels in Books 2 and 3

lābente diē: (as)..., (while)...; abl. abs.

78 **Īliacōs...labōrēs:** i.e. fall of Troy and travels

79 **narrantis ab ōre.:** of (the one)...; gen. sg., pres. pple; i.e. Dido hangs on Aeneas’ words and does not pay attention to others

80 **Post:** afterwards; here, adv. equiv. to postea

ubi dīgressī (sunt): when...; 3p pf. dīgredior

lūmen (suum): neut. acc. obj.

81 **cadentia sidera:** neut. pl. subject; i.e. the rotation of the fixed stars as night passes

somnōs: poetic pl.: translate as singular

82 **(Dīdō) sōla**

domō...vacuā: in...; abl. place where

strātīs relictīs: on abandoned bedcoverings; i.e. the couch that Aeneas lay on at banquet;

83 **absēns absentem:** (the one) absent...(the one) absent; **juxtaposition;** i.e. Dido and Aeneas; Dido is mentally absent and fantasizing about Aeneas, who is physically absent

auditque videtque both...and...; i.e. fantasies

84 **genitōris imāgine captā:** abl. abs., by holding Ascanius, Dido holds a likeness of Aeneas

85 **sī...possit:** as if she is able...; sī + pres. in implied ind. disc.; īnfandum modifies amōrem

amor, -ōris m.: love, 10**capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum:** take, seize, catch, 5**Final note on Aeneas' Wavering in Book 2**

The interpretation of Book 2 on p. 89 leads to attractive conclusions: (1) Vergil's hero develops over time. While literature and film often depict heroes who unrealistically do not learn and change, Vergil presents Aeneas as an imperfect man who is still struggling to find the best course of action. (2) The contrast between traditional hero and Roman hero allows Vergil to make intelligible to his audience just how his ideal differs from previous Greek epic ideals. While Vergil continues to imitate the *Odyssey* in Book 1-6 and the *Iliad* in Books 7-12 and rely on his audience's knowledge of the tradition, he hints that *pietas* will allow Aeneas not merely to rival but surpass his predecessors.

What We Missed: Book 3 – an Imitation of Odysseus' Wanderings

In Book 3 Aeneas gives Dido and the banqueters an account of the seven years that he and the Trojans wandered the eastern Mediterraeon, where he frequently settled in one place only to receive a divine omen that he and the Trojans must keep moving. Eventually, the gods reveal the Trojans' destination in Italy. The Trojans had just visited King Acestes, a Trojan ally, in Sicily at the end of Book 3, when the storm mentioned in Book 1 sent the twenty Trojan ships off course to Carthage.

Importantly, Dido is listening as Aeneas recalls the divine omens in Book 3, and so she is **well aware** that Aeneas and the Trojans think they are fated to settle in Italy and not to stay in Carthage.

What We Missed: Aeneid 4.1-73

After the banquet ends at the beginning of Book 4, Dido confesses to her sister Anna that she feels the spark of the old flame of love. When Anna advises Dido to seek the gods' approval, Dido renews animal sacrifices all day—evidence that the gods do not give her the approval that she seeks. Dido, however, becomes even more enflamed by love and continues to keep her love a secret.

The Negative Effects of Love in 4.75-89

Love is not always a positive emotion. In Vergil and many Latin and Greek authors love is a destructive force that leads to a loss of self control and, in Dido's case, to the loss of her reputation, life, and kingdom. Note the various ingenious ways that Vergil fills lines 4.74-89 with examples that show how Dido, the once strong and just leader from Book 1, is losing control to love and becoming obsessed with Aeneas.

Word Building: sternō, -ere, strāvī, strātum: lay (low/out), layer, 4

Derivatives include “street” (laid out pavement) and “stratification.” In this book **sternō** is used twice to describe people “laid out” on the ground and twice to describe bedding “laid out” on a bed/couch:

iubet sternī	<i>he orders (a bed) to be laid out</i>	p. 42
nē in viā strāfī ...obterāmur	<i>lest we having been laid out on the street be trampled</i>	p. 28
strāfisque relictīs	<i>on abandoned laid out (coverings)</i>	p. 90
quem vulnere Turnus strāverat	<i>whom Turnus had laid low with a wound</i>	p. 140

Word Building: QUAER-, QUIR-, “search for” “ask”

quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, -sītum: search, ask, 2	search/ask for
adquirō, -ere, -quisivī, -quisītum: acquire, 1	+ and attain to
requirō, -ere, -sī, -sītum: search/seek/ask for, 3	+ back

Nōn coeptae adsurgunt turrēs, nōn arma iuventus	86
exercet, portusve aut prōpugnācula bellō	87
tūta parant; pendent opera interrupta, minaeque	88
mūrōrum ingentēs aequātaque māchina caelō.	89
Spēluncam Dīdō dux et Troiānus eandem	165
dēveniunt. Prīma et Tellūs et prōnuba Iūnō	166
dant signum; fulsere ignēs et cōnsciūs aethēr	167
cōnubiūs, summōque ululārunt vertice nymphae.	168
Ille diēs prīmus lētī prīmusque malōrum	169
causa fuit; neque enim speciē fāmāve movētur	170
nec iam furtīvum Dīdō meditātur amōrem:	171
coniugium vocat, hōc praetexit nōmine culpam.	172

assurgō, -ere, assurrēxī: rise, 3
aequō (1): make equal to (dat), 3
aether, -eris m.: aether, (upper) sky, 3
coniugium, -ī n.: marriage
consciūs, -ī m.: witness, fellow-knower
cōnubium, -iī n.: marriage, wedlock, 3
culpa, -ae m.: blame, fault
dēveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum: arrive
dux, ducis m./f.: leader, guide, 2
exerceō, -ēre, -uī: exercise, train (on), 2
fulgeō, -ēre, -fulsī: flash, shine, 2
furtīvus, -a, -um: hidden, secret, concealed
interrumpō, -ere, -rūpī: interrupt, break in
iuventūs, -ūtis f.: the youth, 2
lētum, -ī n.: death, destruction
 86 **coeptae:** PPP coepī with nom. subject turrēs;
 nōn modifies adsurgunt
 87 **(nōn) portusve aut prōpugnācula...tūta:** *and
 neither...or...;* ‘(not) either...or,’ -ve and aut
 are correlatives and together mean ‘either...or,’
 both portus and prōpugnācula tūta and the
 mīnae and māchina are subject of pendent
bellō: *for...;* dat. of purpose
 88 **pendent:** i.e. remains unfinished
opera: neut. pl. subject
interrupta: pf. pass. pple, interrumpō
mīnae mūrōrum: *towers of the walls;* mīnae
 refer to things towering or menacing above
 165 **aequāta:** PPP aequō + dat. of special verb
 165 **iuventus:** nom. sg. subject
A storm drives Dido and Aeneas to the same cave
 165 **eandem:** acc. sg. īdem modifying spēluncam
 166 **Prīma Tellūs:** *First Earth;* i.e. primeval earth
 167 **fulsēr(unt):** syncopated 3p pf. fulgeō
ignēs: i.e. lightning

māchina, -ae f.: machine, crane, war engine, 3
meditor, -ārī, meditātus sum: consider
minae, -ārum f.: menaces, towers, threats
nympha, -ae f.: nymph, 3
parō (1): prepare, 3
portus, -ūs m.: port, harbor
praetegō, -ere, -xī, -ctum: cover over
prōnuba, -ae f.: bridesmaid
prōpugnāculum, -ī n.: rampart, defence
signum -ī n.: signal, gesture, 3
species, -ei f.: appearance, sight, 2
spēlunca, -ae f.: cave
turris, -is f.: turret, tower, 2
tūtus, -a, -um: safe, secure
ululō (1): howl, ululate
cōnsciūs (erat): nom. pred., supply verb
 168 **conūbiūs:** *for...;* dat. of purpose or dat. of
 special adj.
ululā(vē)runt: syncopated 3p pf.
summō vertice: *from...;* abl. of place where
 or place from which; i.e. hilltops
 169 **ille diēs (fuit) prīmus prīma (causa) lētī et
 prīmus prīma causa malōrum fuit:** *that day
 (was)...;* prīmus logically agrees with fem.
 causa but is attracted into the masc. by masc.
 diēs: translate as prīma causa (pred. nom.)
malōrum: *of evils, of troubles;* substantive
 170 **neque enim:** *for...not...;* or ‘indeed not’
fāmā: *reputation*
 171 **meditātur:** pres. dep. governing a double
 acc. (obj. and pred.)
 172 **vocat:** *calls it (y);* governs a double acc.;
 ‘it’ refers to ‘amōrem’ above
(et) hōc...nōmine: *and...;* asyndeton; abl. of
 means: this comment is Vergil’s own opinion

fāma, -ae f.: fame, rumor, reputation, 4

nōmen, -inis n.: name, 5

neque: nor, and not: **neque...neque,** neither...nor, 4

tellūs, -ūris f.: land, earth (~terra), 4

Dido, now in Love, Stops Building and Leading Carthage

Lines 86-89 are far more significant when we contrast them with passages that readers did not read in Book 1. Aeneas, enveloped in a mist of invisibility by Venus but not yet having met Dido, marvels at the work of the Carthaginians in designing and building their entire city at once (just as Romans build their own colonies!) (1.418-29); and in a famous simile Vergil likens the work of the Carthaginians which Aeneas admires to the harmonious common purpose of a hive of bees (1.430-40).

Dido's love has now stopped all that construction which Aeneas admired when he first arrived.

What Happened Next: 4.90-164

When Juno notices that Dido is distraught with love, she proposes to Venus an alliance of marriage between Dido and Aeneas. Juno secretly believes that this action will shift future power from Rome to her beloved Carthage. Venus agrees—as long as Juno seeks Jupiter's approval—and Juno says that she will seek Jupiter's approval but never does. While the Trojans and Carthaginians gather for a hunt, Juno brings a storm, which sends everyone running for shelter. At this time, Dido and Aeneas find shelter alone in the same cave.

Traditional Wedding Procession

A traditional Roman wedding procession (*deductio*) began after a short ceremony in the house of the bride and the lighting of the wedding torch (*spina alba*, 'white thorn'). The bride was pulled from the embrace of her mother and, while veiled, escorted by three boys, one of whom carried the torch, from her house to the house of the groom. Along the way, participants would sing traditional bridal songs—some invoking the god Hymen Hymenaeus, others quite risqué—and tell jokes. When the bride arrived, she would be lifted over the threshold and entered the house of the groom. The bride and groom would then consummate their relationship as the procession sang songs outside the home.

One popular explanation for this procession is the belief that the bride was moving from the protection of her family's household gods to those of her husband, and the procession itself occurred at a vulnerable time when the bride was protected by neither set of gods. Once she is separated from her mother's embrace, the veil, escort, torch, and songs served as protection from curses and physical harm until she was carried over the threshold and accepted by the groom's gods.

The marriage torch (*taeda*) held symbolic value similar to wedding rings today.

Are Aeneas and Dido legitimately married? Dido says “yes” but Aeneas and Vergil say “no”

- Note how each aspect of the narrative in 4.165-8 corresponds to a traditional wedding procession.
 - Spēluncam Dīdō dux et Troiānus eandem dēveniunt.*
 - Prīma et Tellūs et prōnuba Iūnō signum dant*
 - fulsēre ignēs*
 - cōnsciūs aethēr (est) cōnūbiīs*
 - The *nymphae ululārum* likely corresponds to songs sung by processioners as the marriage is consummated. Readers can therefore assume that Aeneas and Dido were intimate in the cave.
- What two things in 4.170 no longer motivate Dido, according to Vergil? Is this a positive outcome?
- What does Dido call her love in 172? What does Vergil say that she is covering up with that word?

Extemplō Libyae magnās it Fāma per urbēs,	173
Fāma, malum quā nōn aliud vĕlōcius ūllum:	174
mōbilitāte viget vīrēsque adquīrit eundō,	175
parva metū p̄mō, mox sēsē attollit in aurās	176
ingrediturque solō et caput inter nūbila condit.	177
Illam Terra parēns īrā inrītāta deōrum	178
extrēmum, ut perhibent, Coeō Enceladōque sorōrem	179
prōgenuit pedibus celerem et pernīcibus ālīs,	180
monstrum horrendum, ingēns, cui quot sunt corpore plūmae,	181
tot vigilēs oculī subter (mīrabile dictū),	182
tot linguae, totidem ōra sonant, tot subrigit aurēs.	183
Nocte volat caelī mediō terraeque per umbram	184
strīdēns, nec dulcī dēclīnat lūmina somnō;	185

adquīrō, -ere, -quīsivī, -quīsītum: acquire
ala, -ae f.: wing

attollō, -tolle, attulī, allātum: raise, lift up

aura, -ae f.: breeze, wind, air, 3

celer, -eris, -ere: swift, quick, 3

Coeus, -ī m.: Coeus, Titan father of Latona

dēclīnō (1): turn down, decline

Enceladus, -ī m.: Enceladus

exemplō: immediately, 2

horrendus, -a, -um: horrible, horrendous, 3

ingredior, -ī, -gressus sum: step in, enter, 2

inrītō (1): incite, stir up

Libya, -ae f.: Libya, 2

lingua, ae f.: tongue, language, 2

mīrābilis, -e: wonderful, amazing, marvelous

mōbilitās, -tātis f.: mobility

mōnstrum, -ī n.: monster, 3

173 **Fāma:** *Rumor*; personification; Rumor is personified as a flying monster.

174 **Quā nōn ūllum aliud malum (est) vĕlōcius:** *than which not any other evil is faster*; ellipsis; the relative pronoun is an abl. of comparison; neut. malum, 'evil,' is a substantive; vĕlōcius is a neut. nom. sg. comparative of vĕlōx

175 **vīrēs:** *strength*; acc. pl. vīs

eundō: abl. means, gerund (-ing) for eō, īre

176 **parva (est):** (*it is*)...

metū: *because of*...; abl. of cause

p̄mō...mōx: *at first... (but) soon*; abl. as adv.

177 **ingreditur:** pres. dep.

solō: *on*...; dat. of compound or abl. place where, solum, -ī n.

178 **Illam:** *that one*; i.e. Fāma; lines 178-80 explain the mythological origins of Fama

nūbilum, -ī (pl. nūbila): cloud, 2

parvus, -a, -um: small, 3

perhibeō, -ēre, -uī: assert, maintain, hold

pernix, -īcis: nimble, swift, quick

plūma, -ae f.: feather

prōgignō, -ere, -genuī: bring forth

quot: how many

solum, -ī n.: soil; ground, 2

sonō, -āre, -uī: sound, resound, roar, 2

soror, -is f.: sister

subrigō, -ere, -rēxī: raise, straighten up

subter: beneath, below

totidem: as many, so many

vĕlox, vĕlocis: swift, rapid, 2

vigeō, -ēre: grow vigorous/strong

vigil, vigilis: watchful

volō (1): fly, 3

Terra parēns...prōgenuit

extrēmum...sorōrem: in apposition to illam

ut perhibent: *as they say*; i.e. as people say

Coeō Enceladōque: *to*...; dat. of interest

pedibus...et pernīcibus ālīs: *in*...; abl. of respect

celerem: modifies illam

181 **monstrum:** in apposition to illam in l. 178

cui...sunt: *who has*...; 'to whom are...' dat. of possession

quot...tot...tot...totidem: *as many...so many...so many...just as many*...; demonstrative tot and relative quot are correlatives; the monster has as many as the people who spread rumors

181 **(in) corpore**

182 **mīrabile:** neut. sg. modifying the entire passage

dictū: <i>to speak of</i> ; a supine; in the abl. a supine behaves as an abl. of respect: ‘in respect to speaking’	(I.102) and hissing air leaving Dido’s lungs (IV.689)
184 nocte: <i>at...</i> ; abl. time when	185 lūce: <i>in...</i> ; abl. time when, in contrast to nocte above
caeli (in) mediō terraeque	
strīdēns: <i>screeching</i> ; as a bird; pres. pple; the same verb is used to describe whistling wind	custōs: <i>as...</i> ; in apposition to the subject
dulcis, -e: sweet, pleasant, 4	umbra, -ae f.: shade, shadow; ghost, 5
extrēmus, -a, -um: farthest, outermost, 4	

Fama Personified as a Monster (4.173-97)

Note line by line all the various ways that the monster Fama corresponds to the qualities of an uncontrollable *fama*, “rumor.” Although Vergil acknowledges the power of rumor by personifying it as a monster, does rumor possess any positive qualities for those who receive it?

The Steady Progression of Cause and Effect in Book 4

Every event in Book 4 follows from the preceding event. The passages in Book 4 that are read in this commentary are highlighted in boldface. Note that the spread of Fama about Aeneas and Dido will lead to Aeneas’ decision to depart and a very emotional encounter between Dido and Aeneas.

- 1-30 Dido confides to Anna after the banquet that she feels the spark of old flame
- 31-55 Anna supports such a marriage, but Dido must first consult the gods; the spark is now a fire
- 56-89 Dido renews sacrifices all day. She is engulfed by love and relaxes her sense of *pudor*.
- 90-128 Juno proposes an alliance of marriage and plans storm; Venus agrees, if Jupiter approves.
- 160-72 Dido and Aeneas in the cave. Dido is not motivated by rumor (fama) or appearance.**
- 173-197 Rumor (Fama) personified spreads like a monster**
- 198-218 Iarbas, a North African king, hears the rumor and prays to father Jupiter to intercede
- 219-258 Jupiter takes note and sends Mercury to tell Aeneas to depart for Italy.
- 259-278 Mercury visits Aeneas and repeats Jupiter’s command.
- 279-295 Aeneas plans to depart with his men but delays telling Dido.
- 296-330 Dido realizes Aeneas’ plans, confronts him about the secrecy and betrayal of marriage**
- 331-361 Aeneas defends himself, appeals to family and gods, argues that it was not a marriage**
- 362-387 Dido angrily replies and rejects Aeneas’ claim that the gods pursue this course
- 388-650 As Aeneas prepares to depart, Anna and Dido build a pyre to burn his belongings.
- 651-671 Dido climbs on top of the pyre and falls on Aeneas’ sword, while Anna is away
- 672-685 Anna arrives and comforts the dying Dido.
- 686-705 Juno sends Iris, who releases Dido’s soul from her body.

A **Supine**¹ is a verbal noun formed by adding **-ū** in ablative and **-um** in accusative to the 4th principal part stem. The ablative is an ablative of respect and is often translated as an infinitive in English. These forms are rare but easy to spot. There is only one supine in the entire commentary:

mīrabile dictū *amazing to speak of (in speaking)* 4.182

lūce sedet custōs aut summī culmine tectī	186
turribus aut altīs, et magnās territat urbēs,	187
tam fictī prāvīque tenāx quam nuntia vērī.	188
Haec tum multiplicī populōs sermōne replēbat	189
gaudēns, et pariter facta atque infecta canēbat:	190
vēnisse Aenēān Troiānō sanguine crētum,	191
cui sē pulchra virō dignētur iungere Dīdō;	192
nunc hiemem inter sē luxū, quam longa, fovēre	193
rēgnōrum immemorēs turpīque cupīdine captōs.	194
Haec passim dea foeda virum diffundit in ōra.	195
Prōtinus ad rēgem cursūs dētorquet Iarbān	196
incenditque animum dictīs atque aggerat Irās.	197

aggerō (1): heap up, pile

canō, -ere, cecinī, cantum: sing, 3

crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētum: grow, 3

culmen, -minis n.: peak, rooftop

cupīdō, -dinis f.: desire, longing

custōs, -ōdis m. (f.): guard, guardian, 2

dētorqueō, -ēre, -rsī, -tum: twist off, turn from

diffundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum: pour/spread out, 2

dignor, -ārī, -ātus sum: deem worthy

foedus, -a, -um: foul, ugly

foveō, -ēre, fōvī, fōtum: foster, cherish, caress, 2

gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum: enjoy, rejoice, 2

hiems, hiemis f.: winter, storm

Iarbās, -ae m.: Iarbas, 2

immemor, -oris: unmindful, forgetful, 2

incendō, -ere, -ī, -ēsum: kindle, burn, 2

infectus, -a, -um: not done, unfinished

iungō, -ere, iunxī, iunctum: join, 2

lūx, lūcis f.: light

luxus, -ūs m.: luxury, extravagance

multiplex, multiplicis: multiple

nūntia, -ae f.: messenger

pariter: equally; side by side, 3

passim: here and there, to and fro

prāvus, -a, -um: wrong, depraved

prōtinus: immediately, instantly

repleō, -ēre: fill up, fill again

sedeō, -ēre, sēdī: sit, 3

tam: so, such, 2

tenāx, tenācis: tenacious, holding, clinging

terrītō (1): terrify, keep terrifying

turpis, -e: shameful, ugly

turris, -is f.: turret, tower, 2

186 **aut (in) culmine...aut (in) turribus:**

either...or...; abl. place where

188 **tam...tenāx quam nuntia:** *as tenacious a*

messenger of...as of...; tam...quam are

correlatives and quam introduces a clause of

comparison; nuntia, 'messenger,' is fem. sg.

189 **haec:** *this one;* i.e. Fama

multiplicī sermōne: *with...; abl. means, abl.*

sg. of a 3rd decl. i-stem adj.; i.e. different

versions of the same event

190 **facta:** *things...; neut. PPP as substantive*

infecta: *things...; i.e. nōn facta, see above*

191 **vēnisse Aenēān...:** *that...; ind. disc. in*

apposition to facta above; -ān is Grk acc. sg.

crētum: PPP *crecō*

192 **cui...virō:** *to whom, as a husband;* or 'to

which man,' dat. of interest with iungere and

dat. apposition or just dat. of interest

dignētur: 3s pres. dep. subj. of subordinate verb (relative clause) in ind. disc.: make active

193 **hiemem...(eōs) fovēre:** *that (they)...*; ind.

disc., assume the acc. subject

hiemem: *for...; acc. duration of time*

inter sē: *one another;* 'between themselves'

(tam longam) quam longa (hiems est): *as*

long as (the winter is); 'as long as (the

winter is) long' clause of comparison as often

with heavy ellipsis; see note on quam below

194 **immemorēs...captōs:** acc. modifying the

understood acc. subj. of fovēre (eōs)

turpī cupīdine: abl. of means; 3rd decl i-stem

195 **haec:** *these things;* neuter acc. obj.

dea foeda: nom. subj., i.e. Fama

vir(ōr)um: gen. pl. with ōra

ōra: acc. pl. ōs

196 **ad rēgem Iarbān:** Grk. acc. Iarbas

197 **animus**: i.e. of Iarbas**dictis**: *with...*; abl. means, substantive**Antony and Cleopatra**

- 44 BC Julius Caesar is assassinated.
 43 **Second Triumvirate** (Octavian, Marcus Antonius, Lepidus)
 40 Marcus Antonius and Octavia, Octavian's sister, marry, have two daughters
 36 Second Triumvirate dissolves, Lepidus is forced to retire
 Octavian oversees western Mediterranean; Antonius, the eastern Mediterranean
 33 Marcus Antonius divorces Octavia
 32-31 **Marcus Antonius and Cleopatra marry, have two children**
 Sept. 31 **Battle of Actium**, Greece; Octavian wins naval battle; Antonius and Cleopatra flee
 30 Marcus Antony and Cleopatra commit suicide, Octavian captures Egypt

Both the love affair between Aeneas and Dido and the entire account of Dido's life appears to have been made up by Vergil alone and are not found in any historical record. Many readers assume that Vergil based this relationship in part on the well-known and tragic relationship between Cleopatra and Marcus Antonius, whom we call Mark Antony today.

After the death of Julius Caesar in 44, power in Rome was divided among three men, who formed what we call the **Second Triumvirate**: Marc Antony, Octavian, and Lepidus. Julius Caesar adopted his 17-year old grand-nephew Gaius Octavius in his will, and so the nephew was thereafter called Gaius Julius Caesar Octavianus, or just Octavian by modern readers. We will later know him as Caesar Augustus, the first emperor. Over time, Octavian consolidated power in the western Roman Empire, while Marc Antony did the same in the east. Marc Antony even married Octavia, the sister of Octavian, in 40 BC to reaffirm the Second Triumvirate. Finally, as tensions continued to rise, Mark Antony divorced Octavia and married Cleopatra, Queen of Egypt, with whom he had two children.

On the 2nd of September 31 BC at **Actium**, off the western coast of Greece, Octavian and his forces defeated the fleet of Marc Antony and Cleopatra, and the latter two fled to Alexandria, Egypt, where nearly one year later they committed suicide as Octavian's naval fleet approached.

What is relevant for our current lesson is that Octavian was careful to avoid the view that he and Marc Antony were engaged in a civil war. Instead, Octavian's supporters asserted (a) that Rome was fighting against Cleopatra and the Egyptians, and (b) that Marc Antony had betrayed his duty toward Rome in order to join Cleopatra's cause.

Aeneas' dilemma in Book 4 is similar to Antony's—Aeneas must choose between (a) building the kingdom of his new love or (2) fulfilling his duty to Italy and the future of Rome. While Marc Antony, according to the propaganda of Octavian and his supporters, chose love and luxury, Vergil's Aeneas decisively chooses duty.

Who is Iarbas in 4.196?

Iarbas is a Northern African king and a son of Jupiter, who asked Dido to marry him and was rejected. When he learns from rumor about Aeneas and Dido, he prays to his father Jupiter to intercede.

“Dissimulāre etiam spērāstī, perfide, tantum	305
posse nefās tacitusque meā dēcēdere terrā?	306
Nec tē noster amor nec tē data dextera quondam	307
nec moritūra tenet crūdēlī fūnere Dīdō?	308
Quīn etiam hībernō mōlīris sīdere classem	309
et mediīs properās Aquilōnibus īre per altum,	310
crūdēlis? Quid, sī nōn arva aliēna domōsque	311
ignōtās peterēs et Troia antīqua manēret,	312
Troia per undōsum peterētur classibus aequor?	313

aliēnus, -a, -um: of another, another's, 3

antīquus, -a, -um: ancient, old, 3

Aquilō, -ōnis m.: Aquilo wind, north wind, 2

classis, -is f.: fleet, 3

crūdēlis, -e: cruel, bloody, 3

dēcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum: depart; die, 2

dissimulō (1): hide, dissimulate disguise

fūnus, fūneris n.: burial; death, 2

hibernus, -a, -um: of winter, wintry

ignōtus, -a, -um: unknown

Dido confronts Aeneas who is planning to sail away with the Trojans but has not told Dido.

305 **spērā(vi)stī...posse:** *Did you...?*; 2s pf.

spērō and inf. possum; dissimulāre is a complementary inf. governed by posse

perfide: voc. dir. address

tantum nefās: neut. obj. of dissimulāre

306 **tacitus:** nom. adj.: translate as an adv.

meā...terrā: *from...*; abl. of separation

307 **Nec tē...nec tē...nec (tē):** *Neither...nor...nor...*; anaphora

dextera: *pledges*; neut. nom. ; metonymy: marriages pledges given with the right hand

308 **moritūra...Dīdō:** fut. act. pple morior

tenet: 3s verb of all three subjects

crūdēlī fūnere: *with...*; abl. of manner; 3rd decl. i-stem adj.

mōlior, -īrī, -ītus sum: move, set in motion

morior, morī, mor(i)tuus sum: die, 3

nefās: unrighteous, unlawful, wrong, 3

perfidus, -a, --um: traitorous; *subs.* traitor

properō (1): hasten, hurry, 3

quīn: nay (even), (but) that

quondam: formerly, previously, 2

spērō (1): hope (for), expect, 2

tacitus, -a, -um: silent, 2

undōsus, -a, -um: wavy, full of waves

309 **Quīn etiam:** *Nay...even, but rather...even*

hībernō sīdere: *in...*; abl. time when; Dido

says that it is the winter/storm season, when it is too dangerous to sail safely.

mōlīris: 2s pres. dep.: translate as active

310 **(in) mediīs Aquilōnibus**

īre: complementary inf. eō following properās

per altum: *through the deep sea*; metonymy

311 **crūdēlis:** either voc. direct address, ‘cruel one’ or nom. predicative adj., ‘cruelly’

312 **Quid:** *Why?*

Sī...peterēs...et...manēret...peterētur: *if you were...and...were...,...would be...;* a pres. contrary to fact (sī impf. subj., impf. subj.)

313 **per undōsum aequor:** *over...*

classibus: abl. means

What We Missed: 4.197-304

When rumor about the relationship between Aeneas and Dido comes to Iarbas, a North Africa King who had recently been rejected by Dido, Iarbas prays to Jupiter for help. Jupiter in response sends Mercury to encourage Aeneas to leave for fated Italy. When Mercury appears and speaks to Aeneas, Aeneas is startled and immediately makes secret plans with the Trojans to depart. **While he hesitates to approach Dido**, Dido realizes what the Trojans are planning and confronts the Trojan leader.

How long did Aeneas stay in Carthage?

The answer to this question is still debated among scholars. Some argue that Aeneas stays almost a year, while others argue that Aeneas remains for several months. The crux of the problem are the words *hiems* and *hibernus*, which can refer to 'winter' or more generally 'storm season.'

We know from Ilioneus' mention of *adsurgēns Orīōn* in Book 1.535 that the Trojans arrived in mid-June, when the storm season begins. If Dido's mention of 'hibernō sīdere' in 4.309 refers to the storm season, Aeneas may be leaving no later than September or October in the same year. If Dido's 'hibernō sīdere' refers to the winter, then Aeneas may be leaving in early spring of the following year.

Contrary to Fact (Contrafactual) Conditions

As we saw earlier, we identify conditions (if-then clauses) by the tense and mood of the two main verbs. A present contrary to fact (*were, would*) has impf. subj. in both the **protasis** (if-clause) and **apodosis** (then-clause). A past contrary to fact (*had, would have*) has plpf. subj. in both parts.

present contrary to fact *sī audīrēs, scīrēs hoc.*

*If you **were** listening, you **would** know this.*

past contrary to fact *sī audīvissēs, scīvissēs hoc.*

*If you **had** listened, you **would have** known this.*

The sentence in 4.311-4 is a present contrary to fact condition:

sī...peterēs et Troia antīqua manēret,

Troia...peterētur?

If you were seeking...were remaining/remained..., would Troy be sought...?

Mēne fugis? Per ego hās lacrimās dextramque tuam tē	314
(quandō aliud mihi iam miserae nihil ipsa reliquī),	315
per cōnūbia nostra, per inceptōs hymenaeōs,	316
sī bene quid dē tē meruī, fuit aut tibi quicquam	317
dulce meum, miserēre domūs lābentis et istam,	318
ōrō, sī quis adhūc precibus locus, exue mentem.	319
Tē propter Libycae gentēs Nomadumque tyrannī	320
ōdēre, infensī Tyriī; tē propter eundem	321
exstinctus pudor et, quā sōlā sīdera adībam,	322
fāma prior. Cui mē moribundam dēseris,—hospes	323
(hoc sōlum nōmen quoniam dē coniuge restat)?	324
Quid moror? An mea Pygmalion dum moenia frāter	325
dēstruat aut captam dūcat Gaetūlus Iarbās?	326

bene: well, 2

cōnūbium, -iī n.: marriage, wedlock, 3

dēstruō, -ere, -uī: destroy, ruin, tear down, 2

exstinguō, -ere, -nxī, -ctum: extinguish, 3

exuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum: take off, put off

frāter, -tris m.: brother, 3

Gaetūlus, -ī m.: Gaetulian

hospes, -itis m.: guest/host, stranger

hymenaeus, -ī m.: wedding, 2

Iarbās, -ae m.: Iarbas, 2

infensus, -a, -um: hostile, aggressive

iste, ista, istum: that, those (of yours), 3

lābor, -ī, lapsus sum: glide, slide, slip, 3

Libycus, -a, -um: Libyan, of Libya, 2

mereō, -ēre, -uī: deserve, merit, earn, 3

misereor, -ērī: pity, have compassion for, 2

314 **Mē-ne fugis?:** -ne begins a yes/no question

per...tē...(et) per... (et) per...ōrō: *I beg you by... and by...and by...;* hyperbaton (distortion of normal word order) likely reflecting Dido's emotional state; translate *ōrō tē* first; *per* 'by' + acc. marks the reasons for the begging

315 **quando...ipsa reliquī:** *since I myself...;* 1s **aliud...nihil:** acc. obj.

mihi iam miserae: *for...;* dat. of interest

317 **sī bene...meruī, (aut) fuit...meum...:** *if I...*

the protasis (if-clause) of a mixed condition

quid: *anything;* indefinite after *sī*

fuit aut: *or was...;* aut fuit

quicquam...meum: *anything of mine;* subject

318 **miserēre:** imperative sg. dep. governs a gen.

lābentis: *collapsing;* pres. pple

istam...mentem: *that purpose of yours;* 'that thought of yours,' obj. of imperative *exue*

moribundus, -a, -um: dying, deadly

ne (-ne): (indicates a yes/no question), 3

Nomas, Nomadis m./f.: Nomads; Numidians

ōdī, -isse: hate

precēs, -um: prayer, entreaty

prior, prius: earlier, before, 3

propter: on account of, because of, 3

pudor, -ōris m.: shame, proper sense of shame

Pygmalion, -ōnis m.: Pygmalion

quandō: when, since

quisquam, quae-, quic-: any(one), any(thing)

quoniam: seeing that, 2

restō, -āre, -stīti: remain, survive, 2

tyrannus, -ī m.: tyrant, ruler

Tyrius, -a, -um: Tyrian, Carthaginian, 3

319 **sī quis...locus (est):** *if any...;* ellipsis: supply a linking verb; *quis* is an indef. adj.

precibus: *for...;* dat. of purpose

exue: sg. imperative

320 **Tē propter...Tē propter:** *because of... because of...;* *propter tē...propter tē...;*

anastrophe (inverted order) and anaphora

321 **ōdēr(unt mē):** syncopated 3p pf.; add obj.

ōdī is a defective pf.: translate as present

Tyriī (sunt)

eundem: acc. sg. *īdem* modifying *tē*

exstinctus (est): 3s pf. pass. with 3p subject

322 **pudor (meus):** *my sense of shame*

quā...adībam: *by which...;* the antecedent is

fāma; abl. means, 1s impf. *adeō*

(ad) sīdera

323 **fāma prior:** *my earlier reputation...;* second

subject of 3s *exstinctus est*

Cui: <i>for...?</i> ; dat. of interest	<i>until...?</i> dum + pres. anticipatory subj.; Dido answers her own question: she fears that her brother Pygmalion or Iarbas will attack.
hospes: voc. direct address	
324 hoc solum nomen quoniam... : <i>since...</i>	
dē : <i>from...</i> ; he is not a coniunx but hospes	326 (mē) captam: (<i>me</i>)...; PPP capiō
325 Quid: <i>Why...?</i>	dūcat: i.e. lead away to execution or slavery
An...dum...dēstruat...dūcat: <i>or (do I delay)</i>	

lacrima, -ae f.: tear, 4

Dido's Disordered Speech reflects a Disordered Mind

This speech is difficult to read precisely because it reflects Dido's heightened emotional state, and emotion is often identified with disorder. Below is a sample of the rhetorical devices Vergil employs:

Mēne fugis? Per ego hās lacrimās dextramque tuam tē	314
(quandō aliud mihi iam miserae nihil ipsa reliquī),	315
per cōnūbia nostra, per inceptōs hymenaeōs,	316
sī bene quid dē tē meruī, fuit aut tibi quicquam	317
dulce meum, miserēre domūs lābentis et istam,	318
ōrō , sī quis adhūc precibus locus, exue mentem.	319

1. **Mēne fugis?** A rhetorical question can express anxiety. Dido does not wait for a response.
2. **Ego...tē...ōrō** Hyperbaton (distortion of normal word order) reflects a lack of continuity in Dido's thinking. Even a native Latin speaker would find this very difficult to follow (it's six lines apart!).
3. **Per...Per...Per...** Anaphora (repetition), asyndeton (lack of conjunctions) and parallelism elsewhere would be pleasing to experience but in this context reflect how Dido's agitated state affects her rushed thinking: People who are caught up in emotion often repeat themselves over and over.
4. (**quandō...reliquī**) Parentheses (insertion that interrupts normal word order) and exaggeration Dido's interruption reflects her fragmented thinking. Is it really true that the queen has nothing left?
5. **istam...mentem** Hyperbaton reinforces the previous example and supports the view that there is lack of linearity and order in Dido's thinking. Dido responds out of emotion.

Tē propter Libycae gentēs Nomadumque tyrannī	320
ōdēre, infensī Tyrīī; tē propter eundem	321
exstinctus pudor et, quā sōlā sīdera adībam,	322
fāma prior...	

6. **Tē propter...tē propter eundem** Anastrophe (inversion of normal word order) and anaphora (repetition) in light of the earlier examples of hyperbaton reflect a disordered mind and emphasize Dido's accusatory tone. Dido's vulnerability at times becomes anger.
7. **infensī (sunt)...exstinctus (est)** Asyndeton and ellipsis (omission), though common in Vergil, here highlight the rapid flood of accusations. Dido hurriedly lists topics that deserve lengthier reflection.

Pudor et Prior Fāma, "A Sense of Shame and Prior Reputation"

Pudor, "an appropriate sense of shame" is a virtue valued in men and women alike but often emphasized as a virtue in women in contrast to **virtūs**, "courage" or "manliness," in men. **Pudor** is not a "feeling of shame" but rather a "proper sense of right and wrong" that allows a Roman to avoid shameful actions. **Pudor** is the most important word in this speech.

As for **fāma**, "reputation," recall that after the cave scene Vergil said that because of love Dido "is motivated neither by appearance nor by reputation" (*neque...speciē fāmāve movētur*, 4.170). With these words Dido admits that her love for Aeneas made her less motivated (a) to act with a proper sense of shame and (b) to react properly when her reputation faltered.

saltem sī qua mihi dē tē suscepta fuisset	327
ante fugam subolēs, sī quis mihi parvulus aulā	328
lūderet Aenēās, quī tē tamen ōre referret,	329
nōn equidem omnīnō capta ac dēserta vidērer.”	330
Dīxerat. Ille Iovis monitīs immōta tenēbat	331
lūmina et obnixus cūram sub corde premēbat.	332
Tandem pauca refert: “Ego tē, quae plūrima fandō	333
ēnumerāre valēs, numquam, rēgīna, negābō	334
prōmeritam; nec mē meminisse pigēbit Elissae	335
dum memor ipse meī, dum spīritus hōs regit artūs.	336
Prō rē pauca loquar. Neque ego hanc abscondere furtō	337
spērāvī (nē finge) fugam, nec coniugis umquam	338
praetendī taedās aut haec in foedera vēnī.	339

abscondō, -ere, -ī, -itum: hide away, conceal, 2
artus, -ūs m.: joint, limb, 2
aula, -ae f.: hall, palace
cor, cordis n.: heart
Elissa, -ae f.: Elissa (i.e. Dido)
ēnumerō (1): reckon, count up, enumerate
foedus, -eris n.: treaty, agreement, 2
for, fārī, fātus sum: speak, say, tell, utter, 3
furtum, -ī n.: theft, robbery
immōtus, -a, -um: unmoved, motionless
loquor, -ī, locūtus sum: speak, say
lūdō, -ere, -sī, -sum: play, mock
meminī, -isse: remember, recall, 3
memor, -oris: mindful, remembering (*gen*), 3
monitum, -ī n.: warning, advice
negō (1): deny, say that...not; refuse (*dat.*), 3
numquam: never, 3

obnitor, -nitī -nixus sum: struggle, strive
omnīnō: altogether, wholly, entirely
parvulus, -a, -um: very little, very small
paucī, -ae, -a: few, 3
piget, -ēre, -guit: it disgusts, it causes regret
plūrimus, -a, -um: very many, most, 2
praetendō, -ere, -tendī: extend/stretch in front, 2
prōmereor, -ērī, prōmeritus sum: merit, deserve
rēs, rei f.: thing, matter, affair, 2
saltem: at least
spērō (1): hope (for), expect, 2
subolēs, is f.: sprout, shoot, offspring
suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: undertake, take up, 2
taeda, -ae f.: torch; pine wood
umquam: ever, 2

327 **sī...suscepta fuisset (et) sī...lūderet,...**

vidērer: *If...had been taken up, if...were..., I would seem...*; mixed contrary to fact (sī plpf. subj., impf. subj.); suscepta fuisset is equiv. to plpf. suscepta esset but stresses the completion of the action; impf. subj. videor, ‘seem’
qua...subolēs: *some offspring...*; nom. subject qua becomes indefinite following sī
mihi: *for...*; *dat. of interest*
dē tē: *from...*

328 **quis...parvulus...Aenēās:** *some very small Aeneas;* i.e. a child; quis is indefinite after sī

329 **quī...referrent:** *who would recall...*; impf. subj. in a relative clause of characteristic

ōre: *in appearance;* ‘in face,’ *abl. of respect*

330 **capta ac dēserta:** i.e. by love; PPP and nom. pred. after vidērer (see note l. 327)

331 **Ille:** i.e. Aeneas

Iovis monitīs: *because of...*; *abl. of cause* and *gen. sg. Iuppiter*

332 **lūmina:** *eyes;* ‘lights,’ *metonymy*

obnixus: *struggling;* *dep. ‘having struggled,’*

333 **pauca:** *a few things/words;* *neut. substantive*
refert: *says;* ‘reports’

quae plūrima ...valēs: *very many things*

which you...; *obj. of prōmeritam (esse);*

plūrima is *neut. pl. antecedent;* valēs = 2s pres.

fandō: *by...*; *abl. means, gerund (-ing) for, fārī*

335 **tē...prōmeritam (esse):** *that you have...*;

ind. disc. translate the pf. dep. inf. as active;

‘plūrima quae...vālēs’ is the *object*

meminisse: *to recall;* *defective pf. and logical*

subject of pigēbit; translate as pres. + gen.

pigēbit: *it will...*; *impersonal fut.*

- Elissae:** another name for Dido; Aeneas talks about Dido here in the 3rd person, not 2nd
- 336 **dum (sum) memor...**: *While (I) myself (am)*
meī: *of myself*; i.e. conscious; partitive gen. sg. of ego (not from meus) governed by memor
(et) dum: *(and) while...*
- 337 **prō rē:** *for (on behalf of) this matter*
pauca: *a few things/words*; ironically, Aeneas has many things to say
- loquar:** 1s fut. dep.
hanc...fugam: acc.
- 338 **nē finge:** *Don't...*; neg. imperative
 339 **taedas coniugis:** i.e. marriage-torches, symbolizing the wedding and marriage just as wedding rings do today; see note on p. 77
aut: *nor...*; include the negative from nec
in haec foedera: *into...*; i.e. marriage pacts

Iuppiter, Iovis m.: Jupiter, 4

Dido's Unfulfilled Wish (Contrary to fact condition)

When a speaker uses a contrary to fact condition, just as in 4.327-30 on the facing page, to convey a wish about the past that did not come true, she expresses an 'unfulfilled wish.' Note how Dido's wish emphasizes her vulnerability and lack of control.

Stī...suscepta fuisset (et) sī...lūderet, *If (only)...had been undertaken...and if...were playing...*
 nōn vidērer *I would not seem...*

Dum ⁶ (while/as long as, until)

Dum + indicative ⁴ denotes an actual event.

dum memor ipse meī (sum), dum spīritus hōs regit artūs. *while (I am)...*, *while...rules* 4.336

Dum + subjunctive ² denotes an anticipated or intended event.

dum moenia frāter dēstruat aut captam dūcat *until...destroys...or...leads* 4.325-6
 dum conderet urbem inferretque deōs Latiō *until...might found...and bring* 1.5-6

The present anticipatory subj. is often translated as present with future sense (e.g. 4.325-6), while the imperfect anticipatory subj. is translated with modal 'would,' 'might,' or 'could' (e.g. 1.5-6).

Aeneas' Speech Part 1: Does Aeneas seem Cold and Unfeeling?

Some scholars criticize Aeneas' response and suggest that it is possible for Aeneas to be pious, depart for Italy, and yet to show far greater empathy, gratitude, and even *pietas* toward Dido than he does. Note a few of the features that make Aeneas appear unfeeling toward Dido.

1. **Vergil says Aeneas kept holding his eyes fixed on the ground** (4.331): Eye contact demonstrates compassion and intimacy, and Aeneas denies Dido this gesture.
2. **Vergil says Aeneas kept suppressing his true feelings** (4.332). We expect the same in the speech.
3. **Prō rē pauca loquar**, "I will speak a few words on this matter" Aeneas uses formulaic speech that seems more appropriate for an orator in a lawcourt than an intimate exchange between loved ones.
4. **Aeneas lies to Dido (4.337-8)** Aeneas denies that he is hiding his departure from her, but Vergil has already said that Aeneas delayed telling Dido while he made plans to leave with the Trojans.
5. **Dido later criticises Aeneas for being unfeeling in her reply to this speech** (4.365-370):
6. **When Aeneas meets Dido in the Underworld in Book 6, Dido will keep her eyes fixed on the ground and show no feeling, while Aeneas cries and calls out to her to stay** (6.450-76). Vergil has Dido show the same lack of feeling to Aeneas that he shows to her in this speech in Book 4.

‘Mē sī fāta meīs paterentur dūcere vītam	340
auspiciīs et sponte meā compōnere cūrās,	341
urbem Trōiānam p̄rimum dulcēsque meōrum	342
relliquiās colerem, Priamī tecta alta manērent,	343
et recidīva manū posuissem Pergama victīs.	344
Sed nunc Ītaliā magnā Gr̄ynēus Apollō,	345
Ītaliā Lyciae iussēre capessere sortēs;	346
hic amor, haec patria est. Sī tē Karthāginis arcēs	347
Phoenissam Libycaeque aspectus dētinet urbis,	348
quae tandem Ausoniā Teucrōs cōnsidere terrā	349
invidia est? Et nōs fās exera quaerere rēgna.	350

Apollo, Apollinis m.: Apollo

aspectus, -ūs m.: sight, view, 2

Ausonia, -ae f.: Ausonia, Italy, 2

auspicium, ī n.: auspices; will, power

capessō, -ere, -ivī, -itum: seize, take up

colō, -ere, coluī, cultum: farm, cultivate, 3

compōnō, -ere, -suī: put together; calm, 2

cōnsidō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum: settle, sit down, 2

dētineō, -ēre, -uī: hold back, detain, 3

exterus, -a, -um: outward; foreign, strange

fās: right, righteous; **fās (est),** it is right

Gr̄ynēus, -a, -um.: Grynean

invidia, -ae f.: envy, hatred, 2

340 **sī...paterentur,...colerem...manērent...**

posuissem: *if...allowed...,...would...would...*

would have...; mixed contrary to fact

condition (sī impf., impf./impf./plpf. subj.)

meīs...auspiciīs: *by my own auspices...;* i.e.

by my own wishes or power; abl. of manner

paterentur: *allowed* + inf.; impf. patior;

neut. pl. fātum is subject

342 **p̄rimum:** *first (of all);* adv.

meōrum: *of my own (people)*

343 **colerem:** *I would...;* 1s impf. subj. apodosis

(et)...manērent: *(and)...would...;* impf. subj.

344 **manū (meā):** abl. means

posuissem: *I would have...;* plpf. subj. pōnō

victīs: *for (those)...;* i.e. for the Trojans; dat.

interest; PPP vincō

345 **Gryneus Apollō (iussit mē capessere)**

346 **Lyciae sortēs:** *Lycian oracles;* i.e. the oracles

of Lycian Apollo. Recall that an oracle can

Karthāgō, -inis f.: Carthage, 2

Libycus, -a, -um: Libyan, of Libya, 2

Lycius, -a, -um: Lycian, of Lycia (Apollo), 2

patria, -ae f.: fatherland, country, 3

Pergama, -ōrum n.: Pergama (Troy’s citadel)

Phoenissa, -ae f.: Phoenician (woman), 2

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum: put, place (aside), 2

quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, -situm: search, ask, 2

recidivus, -a, -um: repeating, returning

relliquiae, -ārum f.: survivors, remains, 2

sponte: of one’s own will, voluntarily, 2

vīta, -ae f.: life, 3

denote (a) a place for prophecy and (b) the

prophecy itself. In Book 3, where Aeneas

recalls his journey from Troy to Sicily, Aeneas

receives many omens, including one from

Apollo himself on the island of Delos, sacred

to Apollo.

iussēr(unt mē): syncopated 3p pf.

347 **Hic (est) amor (meus)**

Haec patria (mea) est: add possessive

Sī...dētinet, quae....invidia est?: *if..., what*

envy is there...?; simple present condition (sī

pres. ind. pres. ind.) Aeneas draws attention to

how the Trojans and Phoenicians share a

similar history

arcēs...aspectus: two subjects of 3s verb

(in) Ausoniā terrā: i.e. in Italy

Teucrōs cōnsidere: *that...;* ind. disc.

350 **fās (est):** *it is right* + inf.; impersonal verb

nōs...quaerere: *that...;* ind. disc.

Aeneas' Speech Part 2: He Responds Directly to Dido's Complaints

This speech is the longest which Aeneas makes in the entire *Aeneid*. Unlike Dido, Aeneas devotes several hexameter lines to each topic and responds directly to Dido's speech:

1. **Hiding my departure?:** What does Aeneas say in 337-8 in response to Dido's claim at the beginning of her speech that 'you hoped to be able to hide so great a unrighteous act' (*dissimulāre etiam spērāstī... nefās*, 305-6)?
2. **Is this a marriage?:** What does Aeneas say in 338-9 in response to Dido's claim that they are bound by marriage?
3. **Unfulfilled wishes?:** While Dido expresses an unfulfilled wish that she had a child with Aeneas, what unfulfilled wish does Aeneas express in 340-4 if the fates had allowed him?
4. **Obligation toward the gods during travels:** What two groups in 345-6 urge Aeneas to seek Italy?
5. **Obligation toward the Trojans:** How does Aeneas suggest that by the Carthaginians' own example the Trojans are right to pursue Italy? (348-50).

Aeneas Unfulfilled Wish (Contrary to fact condition)

Lines 4.311-4 are a mixed contrary to fact condition and Aeneas' unfulfilled wish. But while Dido's unfulfilled wish expresses a wish to be with Aeneas, Aeneas' wish sets up that expectation and then surprisingly admits that Aeneas would rather be back at Troy than be with Dido!

<i>sī...paterentur...et...</i> ,	<i>colerem (et)...tectā manērent, et...posuissem</i>	4.311-4
<i>If...allowed (were allowing)...</i>	<i>I would....would...would have been...</i>	

Negative Imperatives ⁴

Vergil uses **nē + imperative** rather than **nōlī/nōlīte + infinitive** to express a negative command.

<i>nē crēdite</i>	<i>Don't trust</i>	(2.48)	<i>nē finge</i>	<i>Don't make it up</i>	(4.338)
<i>nē subtrahe</i>	<i>Don't withdraw</i>	(6.465)	<i>nē tende</i>	<i>Don't extend</i>	(12.938)

Word Building: Synonyms for "allow"

Patior, "suffer" + complementary infinitive is often translated as "allow." **Licet** is translated only as "although" in this book. **Sinō** is best translated "allow," while the compound **dēsinō** means "cease."

patior, -ī, passus sum: suffer, endure; allow, 7

licet: it is allowed or permitted, although, 2

sinō, -ere, sīvī, situm: allow, permit, leave, 2

dēsinō, -ere: cease, leave off, 2

Mē patris Anchīsae, quotiēns ūmentibus umbrīs	351
nox operit terrās, quotiēns astra ignea surgunt,	352
admonet in somnīs et turbida terret imāgō;	353
mē puer Ascanius capitisque iniūria cārī,	354
quem rēgnō Hesperiae fraudō et fātālibus arvīs.	355
Nunc etiam interpres dīvum Iove missus ab ipsō	356
(testor utrumque caput) celerēs mandāta per aurās	357
dētulit: ipse deum manifestō in lūmine vīdī	358
inrantem mūrōs vōcemque hīs auribus hausī.	359
Dēsine mēque tuīs incendere tēque querēlīs;	360
Ītaliā nōn sponte sequor.”	361

admoneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum: warn, advise, admonish, 2

Anchīsēs, -ae (acc. ēn) m.: Anchises, 2

Ascānius, -ī m.: Ascanius, 2

astrum, ī n.: star, constellation

aura, -ae f.: breeze, wind, air, 3

celer, -eris, -ere: swift, quick, 3

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum: report, offer, 3

dēsino, -ere: cease, leave off, 2

fātālis, -e: deadly, fatal, 3

fraudō (1): defraud from, cheat from (abl.)

hauriō, -īre, hausī: drain, exhaust, 3

Hesperia, -ae f.: Hesperia, Italy

igneus, -a, -um: fiery, of fire, 2

351 **patris Anchīsae...turbida imāgō:**

hyperbaton (distortion of normal word order for emphasis); turbida imāgō patris Anchīsae is the subject of two verbs

quotiēns...(et) quotiēns...: anaphora and asyndeton; these are relative advs. introducing relative clauses

ūmentibus umbrīs: abl. means; i.e. dew

353 **in somnīs:** *in dreams*

354 **mē puer Ascanius -que iniūria capitis cārī (mōvērunt):** ellipsis and metonymy; caput Here refers to 'life' (e.g. per capita); gen. sg. **rēgnō Hesperiae...et fātālibus arvīs:** *from...;* abl. of separation governed by verb fraudō

356 **dīv(ōr)um:** i.e. deōrum, gen. pl.

Iove...ab ipsō: *by...;* abl. of agent, Iuppiter

incendō, -ere, -ī, -ēsum: kindle, burn, 2

iniūria, -ae f.: injury, injustice, insult, 2

interpres, -pretis m./f.: messenger

intrō (1): enter, go into

mandō (1): mandate, order, command

manifestus, -a, -um: manifest, visible

operiō, -īre, -uī: cover, conceal, 3

querēla, -ae f.: complaint, complaining

quotiēns: how many times; as many times as, 2

sponte: of one's own will, voluntarily, 2

terreo, -ēre, -uī, -itum: terrify

testor, -ārī: attest, bear witness, 2

turbidus, -a, -um: cloudy, muddy

ūmens (hūmens), ūmentis: moist

357 **utrumque caput:** *on both of our heads;* 'on each head (of ours)' i.e. lives, metonymy
mandāta: *orders;* 'things ordered,' PPP as substantive

358 **dētulit:** pf. dēferō

(ego) ipse: *I myself*

359 **inrantem mūrōs:** pres. pple

360 **Dēsine:** *Cease to...;* imperative + inf.

mēque...tēque...: *both...and...*

tuīs querēlīs: abl. means

361 **sponte (meā):** *by my own will, willingly;* a common expression, often with a possessive adj. (meus, tuus, etc.); abl. of manner that can often be translated as an adv.; Note that the end of the line is missing because Vergil died before he could finish the poem

Aeneas' Speech Part 3: Obligations to his father, his son, and the gods

Aeneas continues to devote several hexameter lines to each topic and responds directly to Dido's speech:

1. **Obligations toward Anchises:** What reminds Aeneas of his obligations toward his father in 351-3? Is there a message or does the repeated appearance urge Aeneas to act?
2. **Obligations toward Ascanius:** What does Aeneas think that he owes to his son in 334-5?
3. **Obligations to the gods at present** Which god visited Aeneas? Who sent that god? (Although we did not read this section in Book 4, what is the message that urged Aeneas to depart?)
4. **Obligations toward Dido:** As the speech ends, does not Aeneas acknowledge the hospitality that Dido and the Carthaginians have offered to the Romans. Does he acknowledge the personal cost to Dido?

What Happens Next: the end of Book 4

After Aeneas admits that he sails to Italy unwillingly, Dido offers her final words to the Trojan leader, in which she accuses him of being unfeeling, argues that the gods would not disturb their own tranquility and be concerned with Aeneas' endeavors (a very Epicurean point of view!), and finally curses Aeneas as she sends him off.

After Dido sends her sister Anna to convince Aeneas to stay and Aeneas refuses, Dido tells Anna that she plans to bring closure to the relationship by building a bonfire and burning all of Aeneas' possessions, including his bed and a *gladius*, which she had given to him but he had left behind. Anna, unaware of Dido's plan to commit suicide, agrees to help and arranges the bonfire. While Anna is away, Dido sees Aeneas' ships set sail and offers a final curse that there will be no peace between the Carthaginians and the descendants of Aeneas. This curse presages the Punic Wars (261-143 BC).

Dido climbs on top of Aeneas' bed which is on top of the bonfire, and falls on the sword which Aeneas left behind—to the horror of all in the courtyard of her house. This form of suicide involves placing the hilt on the bed with the point below the ribcage so that it strikes the heart. The victim falls on the sword and allows her weight to drive the sword to her heart. Dido, however, does not die immediately because the sword strikes her lungs. Dido's sister Anna, distraught, climbs the bonfire and comforts Dido.

Juno sends Iris, goddess of rainbows and messenger of the gods, to perform the ritual of cutting Dido's hair so that Dido can finally perish.

Below is the final part of the outline of Book 4 first presented on p. 95:

- 296-330 Dido realizes Aeneas' plans, confronts him about the secrecy and betrayal of marriage**
331-361 Aeneas defends himself, appeals to family and gods, argues that it was not a marriage
 362-387 Dido angrily replies and rejects Aeneas' claim that the gods pursue this course
 388-650 As Aeneas prepares to depart, Anna and Dido build a pyre to burn his belongings.
 651-671 Dido climbs on top of the pyre and falls on Aeneas' sword, while Anna is away
 672-685 Anna arrives and comforts the dying Dido.
 686-705 Juno sends Iris, who releases Dido's soul from her body.

Inter quās Phoenissa recēns ā vulnere Dīdō	450
errābat silvā in magnā; quam Trōius hērōs	451
ut prīmum iuxtā stetit agnōvitque per umbrās	452
obscuram, quālem prīmō quī surgere mense	453
aut videt aut vīdisse putat per nūbila lūnam,	454
dēmisit lacrimās dulcīque adfātus amōre est	455
“Infēlīx Dīdō, vērus mihi nuntius ergō	456
vēnerat exstinctam ferrōque extrēma secūtā?	457
Fūneris heu tibi causa fuī? Per sīdera iūrō,	458
per superōs et sī qua fidēs tellūre sub īmā est,	459
invītus, rēgīna, tuō dē lītore cessī.	460
Sed mē iussa deum, quae nunc hās īre per umbrās,	461
per loca senta sitū cōgunt noctemque profundam,	462
imperīis ēgēre suīs; nec crēdere quīvī	463
hunc tantum tibi mē discessū ferre dolōrem.	464

adfor, -fārī, -fātus sum: address, speak to
agnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtum: recognize, 2
cēdō, -ere, -cessī: go (away), withdraw; yield, 2
cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum: collect; compel, 2
dēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum: drop, sink
discessus, -ūs m.: departure, departing
dolor, -ōris m.: pain, grief, 3
ergō: therefore, then, 2
errō (1): wander, 2
exstinguō, -ere, -nxī, -ctum: extinguish, 3
fidēs, eī f.: loyalty, trust, belief, 2
fūnus, fūneris n.: burial; death, 2
hērōs, -hērōis m.: hero
heu: alas! ah! ah me!
īmus, -a, -um: lowest (part) of, bottom
invītus, -a, -um: unwilling, 2

iūrō (1): to swear, take an oath
iuxtā: close by, near
lūna, -ae f.: moon, 2
mensis, -is m.: month
nūbilum, -ī (pl. nūbila): cloud, 2
nūntius, -ī m.: messenger, 2
obscurus, -a, -um: dim; dark; obscure 3
Phoenissa, -ae f.: Phoenician (woman), 2
profundus, -a, -um: profound, deep
queō, quīre, quīvī: be able
recēns, -ntis: fresh, recent, 2
sentus, -a, -um: rough, harsh
silva, -ae f.: woods
situs, -ūs m.: situation, position
superus, -a, -um: above, higher; *subs.* god, 3
Troius, -a, -um: Trojan

450 **inter quās:** *among these*; ‘among whom,’ a connective relative is often translated as a demonstrative; the quās refers to souls who have committed suicide out of love
quam Trōius hērōs...ut prīmum...: *whom as soon as...;* ‘whom when first...’ ut introduces a temporal clause and prīmum is an adv.; quam is within this temporal clause
453 **obscuram:** modifies acc. quam
quālem surgere ...lūnam: *just as a moon someone sees...;* ‘which sort of moon...,’ simile; ind. disc. with videt and vīdisse putat
prīmō...mense: *at the first of...;* abl. time when; the first of the month is a new moon, when the moon does not reflect any light

quī: *someone*; indefinite (ali)quī
454 **vīdisse:** *to...;* object of putat or ind. disc. with missing acc. subject sē: ‘that (one) has seen...’
455 **dulcī...amōre:** *with...;* abl. of manner; 3rd decl. i-stem adj.
adfātus est: 3s pf. adfor: translate active
456 **nūntius:** *message*; elsewhere ‘messenger’
457 **(tē) exstinctam (esse)...secūtā (esse):** *that (you)...*; ind. disc. with pf. pass. inf. and pf. dep. inf., in apposition to vērus nūntius
ferrō: *by sword*; synecdoche
extrēma: *extreme ends*; i.e. death, neut. pl.
458 **fuī?:** *Was I...?;* pf. sum; a question without an interrogative often indicates surprise
tibi: *for...;* dat. of interest

459 **Per...Per...**: *by...by...*; per + acc. is used to mark the reason for swearing an oath
sī qua...est: *if there is any...*; qua is indefinite after sī, nisi, num, and nē
 460 **invītus**: *unwillingly*; nom. adj. as adv.
cessī: *I departed*; ‘went (away),’ pf. cēdō
 461 **iussa**: *orders*; ‘things ordered,’ PPP
de(ōr)um: gen. pl.
quae...(mē) ire...cogunt: *which compel...*; relative; supply mē as acc. object of cogunt
has...per umbrās: per hās umbrās

462 **(et) per loca senta sitū**: *thorny with neglect*; ‘because of neglect,’ abl. of cause
 463 **ēgēr(unt)**: *drove*; iussa de(ōr)um is subject
imperīis suīs: abl. means
quīvī: *I was able*; 1s pf. queō, = potuī
 464 **hunc...mē...ferre**: *that I...*; ind. disc. with mē as acc. subject; irreg. inf. ferō, ‘bring’
tibi: *to...*; dat. ind. obj.
discessū: *because of...*; abl. of cause

vulnus (volnus), -eris n.: wound, 4

What We Missed: Book 5 and 6.1-449

In Book 5 Aeneas and the Trojans travel to Sicily and celebrate funeral games on behalf of Aeneas’ father Anchises. In a dream Anchises summons Aeneas to Italy to visit his father in the Underworld.

When the Trojans arrive in the Bay of Naples in Italy, Aeneas goes to the Temple of Apollo at Cumae, where he meets the Sibyl, a priestess of Apollo. Aeneas requests to see his father in the Underworld, and after Aeneas completes two tasks—(1) he buries a comrade Misenum and (2) obtains a golden bough/branch—Sibyl escorts Aeneas through the Underworld to meet Anchises at the end of their journey in the Elysian Fields.

Aeneas and Sibyl meet Charon, cross the river Styx, and pass Cerberus. Before the path splits into Tartarus, where souls are punished, and Elysium, where souls are reward, they pass the land of the Untimely Dead. Here, Aeneas and Sibyl walk through woods (there are woods in the Underworld!!) where there are souls who commit suicide out of love, and Aeneas sees Dido walking in the woods.

Outline of Book 6

Trojans arrive at **Cumae** in Italy (6.1-32)

Aeneas, Achates visit **Sibyl**, priestess of Apollo (33-97)

Aeneas requests to see Anchises (98-123)

Sibyl requests Aeneas complete two tasks: (124-235)

Retrieval of the **Golden Bough/Branch**

Burial of companion **Misenum**

Aeneas is led by Sibyl into the Underworld (236-267)

Death-Bringing Powers and Monsters (268-94)

Charon by the **River Styx** (295-336)

Palinurus and unburied dead by the river, (337-383)

Charon sees Bough, leads Aeneas over Styx (384-416)

Cerberus passed afer Sibyl drugs him (417-425)

King Minos judges; Untimely Dead (426-547)

Dido, untimely dead because of love (450-476)

Deiphobus, last Trojan husband to Helen (477-547)

Tartarus on the left: souls are punished (548-627)

House of **Dis** and **Proserpina** (628-636)

Elysium (Elysian Fields) on the right (637-665)

Anchises reveals destiny of Rome (666-892)

Future heroes of Rome wait along the river **Lethe**

Romulus and **Augustus**

Rome will spare the weak and war down the proud

Marcellus, heir to Augustus

Gate of Ivory and **Gate of Horn** (893-901)

Dido as a Dimly Lit Moon

Vergil’s decision to liken Dido to a dimly lit moon may seem very strange, but the moon is sacred to the goddess Diana. When Aeneas first sees Dido as a strong and just leader in Book 1, she is likened to Diana surrounded by a throng of supporters (1.498-502). This new simile, therefore, invites readers to revisit the comparison to Diana in Book 1 and witness how much Dido has changed between then and now as a result of love: what once was brilliant is now a shadow of its former self.

Siste gradum tēque aspectū nē subtrahe nostrō.	465
Quem fugis? Extrēmum fātō quod tē adloquor hoc est.”	466
Tālibus Aenēas ardentem et torva tuentem	467
lēnībat dictīs animum lacrimāsque ciēbat.	468
Illa solō fixōs oculōs āversa tenēbat	469
nec magis inceptō vultum sermōne movētur	470
quam sī dūra silex aut stet Marpēsia cautēs.	471
Tandem corripuit sēsē atque inimīca refūgit	472
in nemus umbriferum, coniūnx ubi prīstinus illī	473
respondet cūrīs aequatque Sychaeus amōrem.	474
Nec minus Aenēas cāsū concussus inīquō	475
prōsequitur lacrimīs longē et miserātur euntem.	476

adloquor, -ī, -locūtus sum: address, speak to, 2
aequō (1): make equal, 3
aspectus, -ūs m.: sight, view, 2
āvertō, -ēre, āvertī, āversum: turn away, 2
cautēs, -is m.: sharp rock
cieō, -ēre, cīvī, citum: arouse, stir up
concutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussum: shake, strike, 2
dūrus, -a, -um: hard, harsh, stern, 2
figō, -ere, fixī, fixum: fix, fasten
gradus, -ūs m.: step, 3
inimīcus, -a, -um: unfriendly, 3
inīquus, -a, -um: unjust, not fair
lēniō, -īre, -ivī: soothe, soften, 2
Marpēsius, -a, -um: Marpesian

465 **Siste:** imperative + acc.
aspectū nostrō: *from...*; abl. of separation;
nē...subtrahe: *Don't...*; neg. imperative
466 **Extrēmum...hoc est:** *this is the last (time)*
fātō: *by...*; 'because of...' abl. cause
quod tē adloquor: *that...*; relative clause
with neut. inner acc.
467 **Tālibus...dictīs:** *with...*; abl. of means;
marking the end of the speech
ardentem et torva tuentem...animum: *the spirit (of Dido)...*; pres. pples with animum
torva: *grimly, fiercely*; nom. adj. as adv.
468 **lēni(e)bat...ciēbat:** *tried to...and tried to...*;
conative impf.; Aeneas tries but does not
succeed at these tasks
469 **Illa:** i.e. Dido
(in) solō
tenēbat: *was holding* (x) (y); governs a
double acc. (obj. and pred.)
470 **nec magis...quam:** *and not more...than...*;
quam introduces a clause of comparison

miseror, -ārī, -ātus sum: pity, commiserate, 3
prīstinus, -a, -um: former, pristine
prōsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum: pursue, escort, 2
refugiō, -ere, -fūgī: flee back
silex, -icis m./f.: flint
sistō, -ere, -stifī: stand, stop, 2
solum, -ī n.: soil; ground, 2
subtrahō, -ere, -trāxī: draw away, withdraw
Sychaeus, -ī m.: Sychaeus
torvus, -a, -um: grim, fierce, gloomy
tueor, tuērī: look on, watch, 2
umbrifer, -a, -um: shady, shade-bearing
vultus, -ūs m.: face, expression, 3

inceptō...sermōne: abl. abs., PPP incipiō
vultum: *in...*; acc. of respect
471 **sī...stet:** *if...should stand there*; pres. subj.;
The Greek Mt. Marpesus was known for its
quarries of marble, a hard and durable stone
472 **corripuit sēsē:** i.e. moved abruptly; Dido is
the subject; sēsē is an emphatic form for sē
inimīca: nom. adj.: translate as an adv.
473 **ubi coniūnx prīstinus:** *where...*; i.e.
Sychaeus, Dido's previous husband
illī: *that one's*; i.e. Dido's; dat. of possession
modifying cūrīs
474 **cūrīs:** dat. ind. obj. of respondet
Nec minus: *and no less*; comparative adv.
cāsū...inīquō: abl. means
concussus: PPP concutiō
476 **prōsequitur:** pf. dep. pple: translate active
lacrimīs: *with...*; abl. of manner
longē: *far*; adv.
miserātur: pf. dep. pple: translate active
euntem: *(the one)...*; pres. pple eō, ire

nemus, -oris n.: wood, forest, grove, 4

The Tables have Turned: Aeneas Cries and Chases after an Unresponsive Dido!

Aeneas' encounter with Dido in Book 6 mirrors the conversation between the two in Book 4. While Dido pleaded with Aeneas emotionally to stay in Book 4, Aeneas kept his eyes fixed and showed little feeling. Here, Aeneas tearfully pleads with Dido to stay, but Dido keeps her eyes fixed on the ground and is not responsive. These and other verbal similarities between the speeches,—e.g. use of rhetorical question (*Quem fūgis?*) and anaphora (*per...per...per*)—suggest Vergil is encouraging the comparison.

The Conative Imperfect is named after the verb *cōnor, cōnārī*: *attempt, try*. While most imperfects are actions not yet completed but eventually will be, a conative imperfect is an action that is not yet completed and will likely fail. The imperfects indicate that Aeneas did not succeed as he wished:

<i>lēnībat dictīs animum</i>	<i>he tried to soothe her spirit with such words</i>
<i>lacrimāsque ciēbat.</i>	<i>and he tried to incite tears</i>

Who is Sychaeus? Recall from p. 77 that Sychaeus was Dido's first husband. Pygmalion, King of Tyre and brother of Dido, killed Sychaeus secretly for his money. Sychaeus revealed all to Dido in a dream, and Dido was able to leave with her followers and a hidden treasure to found Carthage.

The Underworld as a Metaphor for Aeneas' Past Sufferings and Future Reward

Readers note that, while Vergil depicts Book 6 as a physical journey to the Underworld, it is also a metaphysical one where Aeneas relives his past sufferings and learns about future rewards. In short, it answers the question posed in the invocation of the poem: **Why must the pious suffer?** Aeneas encounters four people in the Underworld whom he knew during his lifetime, and each person symbolizes a different aspect of his life:

Palinurus	suffering at sea	6.337-383
Dido	suffering at Carthage	6.450-76
Deiphobus	suffering in war at Troy	6.477-547
Anchises	the reward for piety	6.666-892

Aeneas' encounters with Dido and Anchises are included in this book, but it worth mentioning the encounters with Palinurus and Deiphobus, which this commentary omits. Aeneas meets **Palinurus**, the helmsman of one of Aeneas' ships, before the crossing of the river Styx and learns that Palinurus fell overboard and drowned unburied as the Trojans skirted the coast of Italy. Palinurus pleads for Aeneas to arrange his burial, but the Sibyl intervenes and says that Palinurus' body will be found along the coastline by natives and properly buried.

After Aeneas encounters Dido, he travels through the area of the Underworld reserved for warriors who died before their time and meets **Deiphobus**, whose face is horribly mutilated. Deiphobus was a son of Priam who married Helen after the death of Paris but before the fall of Troy. According to Deiphobus, when the Greeks descended from the horse, they straightaway tortured, mutilated, and killed him for his relationship with Helen. After Deiphobus finishes his account, Sibyl again intervenes and urges Aeneas to continue his journey.

Through these encounters with Palinurus, Deiphobus, and Dido not only Aeneas but also the readers relive Aeneas' suffering at sea (Book 1, 3), at Troy (Book 2), and finally in Carthage (Book 1, 4). It is only when Aeneas meets his father Anchises, who was the reason for the funeral games in Book 5 and the inspiration for Aeneas' journey to the Underworld, that the suffering of the pious is justified.

“Hūc geminās nunc flecte aciēs, hanc aspice gentem	788
Rōmānōsque tuōs. Hīc Caesar et omnis Iūli	789
prōgeniēs magnum caelī ventūra sub axem.	790
Hīc vir, hic est, tibi quem prōmittī saepius audīs,	791
Augustus Caesar, dīvī genus, aurea condet	792
saecula quī rūsus Latiō rēgnāta per arva	793
Sātūrnō quondam, super et Garamantas et Indōs	794
prōferet imperium: iacet extrā sīdera tellūs,	795
extrā annī sōlisque viās, ubi caelifer Atlās	796
axem umerō torquet stēllīs ārdentibus aptum.	797

aciēs, -ē f.: battleline; sword-edge; pupil, eye, 2
aptus, -a, -um: fitting, suitable
aspiciō, -ere, spexī, spectum: look at, see
Atlās, Atlantis m.: Atlas
Augustus, -ī m.: Augustus
aureus, -a, -um: golden, of gold
axis, -is m.: (revolving) axis, sky, 2
caelifer, -a, -um: sky-carrying, sky-bearing
Caesar, -aris m.: Caesar, 2
extrā: outside; beyond, outside of (acc), 2
flectō, -ere, -xī, -ctum: bend, turn, 3
Garamantēs, -um m.: Garamantes (people)
geminī, -ae, -a: twin, double, two, 3
hūc: to this place, hither, 2

Anchises speaks to Aeneas about future Romans, whose souls wait by the river Lethe to be reborn

788 **geminās...aciēs:** (*your*) twin eyes; via **metonymy**; Anchises turns Aeneas' attention to future Roman lives; hūc and hīc suggest Anchises is pointing as he speaks
(et) hanc aspice gentem: i.e. the Romans
789 **Hīc (sunt):** *Here (are)...*; hīc is an adv.
Caesar: it is unclear whether this refers to Julius Caesar or Caesar Augustus
Iūli: of Iulus; Caesar and his Julian family claimed that Ascanius was their ancestor, and Ascanius' alternate name was Iulus; Iulius is a patronymic: 'son/descendant of Iūlus'
790 **ventūra:** fut. pple modifying prōgēniēs
sub magnum axem caelī: i.e. the world of the living above the underworld; the axis refers to the point or pole that the stars revolve around in the sky
791 **Hīc (est) vir, hic est...:** *Here (is) the man, this is...;* adv. hīc means 'here,' and hic means 'this one' Metrically, the second hic must be short (short -i) and interpreted as 'this'
quem...audīs...: (*the one*) whom you hear is

Indī, -ōrum m.: Indians (people)
Iūlus, -ī m.: Iulus (another name for Ascanius)
prōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus: bring forth
prōgeniēs, ē f.: progeny, offspring
prōmittō, -ere: promise, send forward; let go, 2
quondam: formerly, previously, 2
rēgnō (1): reign, rule as a king
saeculum, -ī n.: age; generation, 3
saepe: often, 3
Sātūrnus, -ī m.: Saturn, 2
sōl, sōlis m.: sun, 3
stella, -ae f.: star
via, -ae f.: way, road, path, 2

promised...; the missing antecedent is nom. pred. of est; quem is acc. subject of pres. pass. inf. prōmittere, 'promise'

saepius: *rather often;* comparative adv.

792 **Augustus Caesar:** nom. sg. in apposition

Dīvī genus: *son of a god;* 'offspring of a god,' nom. apposition; Julius Caesar had been deified, and Augustus was his adopted son

aurea condet...quī...: *who will found a golden age...;* a relative clause with Augustus Caesar as antecedent; fut. condō, 'put together'

(in) Latiō: abl. place where with condet

793 **rēgnāta...quondam:** PPP with arva

794 **Sātūrnō:** *by...;* a rare dat. of agent with PPP

(et) super et...et: (*and*) over both...and...; power will extend beyond these people

795 **prōferet:** fut. prōferō

iacet..tellūs: (*his*) land lies...; i.e. his power will extend beyond the known limits

796 **annī sōlisque viās:** *the courses of the year and sun;* i.e. the yearly course of the sun;

(in) umerō

797 **stēllīs ārdentibus aptum:** *suitable for...;* modifies axem with dat. of special adj.

What We Missed: 6.477-788

After Aeneas leaves Dido, he walks among heroes who have died before their time and encounters **Deiphobus**, who, as noted earlier, was a son of Priam and last Trojan husband to Helen. After the Sibyl urges Aeneas to press on, the two pass **Tartarus** on their left side, where the Sibyl describes the horrors suffered by those who have committed crimes against the gods or against other humans. From there, the two proceed on the right to the **house of Proserpina and Dis**, where Aeneas leaves the golden bough by the doorway as a gift to Proserpina.

At last, Aeneas arrives in the **Elysian Fields** (also named “Elysium”), where he sees souls enjoy doing whatever each soul enjoyed while living. He then reunites with Anchises, who takes Aeneas and the Sibyl to the river Lethe, the river of “forgetfulness,” where souls after 1000 years wait in a line to drink the water of the river, forget their past lives, and be reborn. Here, Anchises points out the figures that will give rise to Rome: the Alban kings, the kings of Rome, many of Rome’s famous generals, and Augustus Caesar himself, who shall extend his power to the ends of the world.

Iūlus¹, Ascanius², and Political Propaganda

Iūlus is just an alternative name for Aeneas’ son Ascanius. The Julian clan, *gēns Iūlia*, which included **Gaius Julius Caesar** and his adopted grand-nephew, the emperor **Augustus Caesar**, claimed that Iūlus was their ancestor (Iūlius is a patronimic and means ‘son or descendant of Iūlus’) and therefore that the family descended from Aeneas and ultimately from Venus. When Vergil uses the name Iūlus, he offers readers an opportunity to connect Aeneas directly with the emperor and his family.

Who is Caesar Augustus (63 BC – AD 14) mentioned in line 792?

63-44 named “Gaius Octavius”

43-27 named “Octavian” (Gaius Julius Caesar Octavianus)

27- AD 14 named “Caesar Augustus” (Gaius Julius Caesar Octavianus Augustus)

Gaius Octavius, Octavian, and Caesar Augustus refer to the same person at different periods of time. When Gaius Julius Caesar (100-44 BC) was assassinated in 44 BC, his only child Julia had already died while giving birth in 54. And so, Julius Caesar adopted his 17-year old grand-nephew Gaius Octavius posthumously in his will and made him his heir. Since it was common for an adoptee to assume the name of his adopted father and make his own nomen a cognomen, Gaius Octavius was renamed in 44 BC as Gaius Julius Caesar Octavianus, whom we today call Octavian. In 27 BC, the Senate bestowed on the emperor the honorific name Augustus, “Venerable” or “Enricher” (from *augeō*, “increase”). Today, we typically call him Octavian between 44 and 31 BC (Battle of Actium) and either Augustus or Caesar Augustus when he became sole ruler and emperor from 31 BC until his death in AD 14.

Huius in adventum iam nunc et Caspia rēgna	798
respōnsīs horrent dīvum et Maeōtia tellūs,	799
et septemgeminī turbant trepida ōstia Nīlī.”	800
“Excūdent alī spīrantia mollius aera	847
(crēdō equidem), vīvōs dūcent dē marmore vultūs,	848
ōrābunt causās melius, caelīque meātūs	849
dēscribent radiō et surgentia sīdera dīcent:	850
tū regere imperiō populōs, Rōmāne, mementō	851
(hae tibi erunt artēs), pācisque impōnere mōrem,	852
parcere subiectīs et dēbellāre superbōs.”	853

adventus, -ūs m.: arrival, approach

aes, aeris n.: bronze, copper, 2

ars, artis f.: art, skill

Caspian, -a, -um: of the Caspian sea

dēbellō (1): war down, conquer

dēscribō, -ere, -psī, -ptum: describe, represent

excūdō, -ere: strike out, hammer out, 2

impōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum: place on, 2

Maeōtius, -a, -um: Maeotian (Black sea region)

marmor, -oris n.: marble

meātus, -ūs m.: motion, course, path, 2

melior, melius: better, superior

meminī, -isse: remember, recall, 3

mollis, -e: soft, 2

796 **huius:** *of this one*; i.e. of Caesar; gen. sg. hic
et Caspia rēgna...et Maeōtia tellūs: *both the Caspian kingdoms and Maeotian land...*; nom. subj.; i.e. Augustus will rule ver far-off places. The Maeotian lands are identified as bordering the Sea of Azov (North and Northeast region of the Black Sea) and the Caspian sea is the large sea east of the Black sea in central Asia (a northern border for modern Iran)

797 **respōnsīs...dīvum:** *by the responses of the gods*; abl. of cause and alternate gen. pl. dīvum
septemgeminī...Nīlī: of...; gen. sg. modifying nom. pl. trepida ōstia
turbant: i.e. grow muddy and overflow

Anchises points out to Aeneas the future excellence of the Greeks and then the Romans

847 **excūdent:** 3p fut., Anchises is describing the future to Aeneas and uses many future verbs
alī: *some, others*; i.e. the Greeks
spīrantia...aera: i.e. lifelike bronze statues; neut. acc. pl., pres. pple

mōs, mōris m.: custom, way, 2

Nīlus, -ī m.: Nile river

ōstium, -ī n.: mouth, entrance, 2

parcō, -ere, pepercī: spare (dat)

pāx, pācis f.: peace, 3

radius, -ī m.: measuring-rod, compass

septemgeminus, -a, -um: seven-fold

spīrō (1): breathe

subiciō, -ere, -iēcī: throw/place under, 2

superbus, -a, -um: proud, arrogant, 3

trepidus, -a, -um: trembling, agitated

turbō (1): disturb, confuse

vīvus, -a, -um: living, alive

vultus, -ūs m.: face, expression, 3

mollius: *more...*; comparative adv.

848 **dūcent:** *will draw out*; 3p fut.

vīvōs vultūs: again, in statues

849 **ōrābunt causās:** *will plead cases*; an idiom, Anchises refers to the Greek art of oratory

melius: comparative adv. bonus

850 **dēscribent...dīcent:** 3p fut.

radiō: abl. of means; a radius is here a mechanical compass used to draw circles

surgentia sīdera: neut. acc. pl. and pres. pple
dīcent: *will predict*

851 **tū...Rōmāne:** voc. direct address; Anchises addresses his son Aeneas as a Roman

imperiō: abl. of means

mementō: *remember to...!* fut. sg. imperative
meminī + four infinitives

852 **tibi:** *your*; dat. of possession

erunt: 3p fut. sum

impōnere: governed by mementō

853 **parcere...superbōs:** governed by mementō

subiectis: *the subjected*; i.e. those conquered by Rome; PPP and dat. obj. of parcere

The Future Excellence of the Greeks and Romans (6.847-853)

Beginning at line 847, Anchises contrasts the excellence of others—whom we can assume are the Greeks—with the primary excellence of the Romans. Note that all of the verbs are in the future tense, because Anchises is talking about the future consequences of Aeneas' efforts to settle in Italy.

Rōmāne

Rōmāne in line 851 may refer to Aeneas as well the reader. It would not be unusual for Anchises to refer to his son as a Roman. In Book 1 when Jupiter foretells the future for Venus and connects Aeneas to the future fo Rome, he refers to Caesar as 'Troianus Caesar' (1.283) in a clear attempt to connect Caesar with his Trojan ancestry. It would not, therefore, be strange for Vergil to identify Aeneas by the name of his descendants—even if Aeneas does not know what *Rōmāne* means.

Of course, readers could also view Anchises as speaking to them directly and not to Aeneas alone.

Outline of Book 6 Revisited and the End of Book 6

Trojans arrive at **Cumae** in Italy (6.1-32)

Aeneas, Achates visit **Sibyl**, priestess of Apollo (33-97)

Aeneas requests to see Anchises (98-123)

Sibyl requests Aeneas complete two tasks: (124-235)

Retrieval of the **Golden Bough/Branch**

Burial of companion **Misenus**

Aeneas is led by Sibyl into the Underworld (236-267)

Death-Bringing Powers and Monsters (268-94)

Charon by the **River Styx** (295-336)

Palinurus and unburied dead by the river, (337-383)

Charon sees Bough, leads Aeneas over Styx (384-416)

Cerberus passed afer Sibyl drugs him (417-425)

King Minos judges; Untimely Dead (426-547)

Dido, untimely dead because of love (450-476)

Deiphobus, last Trojan husband to Helen (477-547)

Tartarus on the left: souls are punished (548-627)

House of **Dis** and **Proserpina** (628-636)

Elysium (Elysian Fields) on the right (637-665)

Anchises reveals destiny of Rome (666-892)

Future heroes of Rome wait along the river **Lethe**

Romulus and **Augustus**

Rome will spare the weak and war down the proud

Marcellus, heir to Augustus

Gate of Ivory and **Gate of Horn** (893-901)

Rēx arva Latīnus et urbēs	45/46
iam senior longā placidās in pāce regēbat.	46
Hunc Faunō et nymphā genitum Laurente Maricā	47
accipimus, Faunō Pīcus pater isque parentem	48
tē, Sāturē, refert, tū sanguinis ultimus auctor.	49
fīlius huic fātō dīvum prōlēsque virīlis	50
nūlla fuit prīmāque oriēns ērepta iuventā est.	51
Sōla domum et tantās servābat filia sēdēs,	52
iam mātūra virō, iam plēnīs nūbilis annīs.	53
Multī illam magnō ē Latiō tōtāque petēbant	54
Ausoniā. Petit ante aliōs pulcherrimus omnēs	55
Turnus, avīs atavisque potēns, quem rēgia coniūnx	56
adiungī generum mīrō properābat amōre;	57
sed variīs portenta deum terrōribus obstant.	58

adiungō, -ere, iunxī, iunctum: join, attach
atavus, -ī m.: great-great-grandfather; ancestor
auctor, -is m.: author, source
Ausonia, -ae f.: Ausonia, Italy, 2
avus, -ī m.: grandfather, 3
Faunus, -ī m.: Faunus (Greek god Pan), 2
filia, -ae f.: daughter
filius, -ī m.: son
gener, -ī m.: son-in-law
gignō, -ere, genuī, genitum: beget; *pass.* be born
iuventa, -ae f.: youth, age of youth
Latīnus, -ī m.: Latinus (king of the Latins)
Laurēns, -entis m./f.: Laurentian, of Laurentia
Marīca, -ae f.: Marica (a nymph)
mātūrus, -a, -um: mature; timely, early
mīrus, -a, -um: miraculous, amazing, 2
nūbilis, -e: marriageable, nubile, grown up
nūllus, -a, -um: not any, no, 3
nympha, -ae f.: nymph, 3

obstō, -āre: stand in the way, oppose, 2
orior, -īrī, ortus sum: rise; be born, 2
pāx, pācis f.: peace, 3
Pīcus, -ī m.: Picus (grandfather of Latinus)
placidus, -a, -um: placid, peaceful, calm
plēnus, -a, -um: full, full of
portentum, -ī n.: omen, portent
potēns, -entis: powerful, 2
prōlēs, -is f.: offspring
properō (1): hasten, hurry, 3
rēgius, -a, -um: of a king/queen, royal, 2
Sāturnus, -ī m.: Saturn, 2
senior: older (comp. of senex); aged, old
servō (1): save, persevere, keep
terror, -is m.: terror, 2
ultimus, -a, -um: farthest, extreme, last, 2
varius, -a, -um: various, 3
virīlis, -e: of a man, masculine

Book 7: the origin of Latinus, King of the Latins

45 **arva...et urbēs...placidās:** acc. obj.
 46 **iam senior:** *now elderly, now old;* ‘older’ a common translation for this comparative adj.
 47 **Hunc genitum:** *this one...;* Latinus, PPP gignō
Faunō et nymphā...Maricā: *from...;* abl. of source; parents of Latinus; Marica is a nymph
Laurente: *Laurentian;* adj. modifying Marica
accipimus: *we...;* i.e. we learn from tradition
 48 **Faunō (est):** dat. of possession: ‘to Faunus is’ or ‘Faunus has’ and make subject the obj.
isque: *et he...;* i.e. Picus, Latinus’ father
 49 **Saturne:** voc. dir. address; father of Picus
refert: *reports (x) (y);* verb governs a double

acc. (obj. and pred.); tē is the obj.
Tū (es)...auctor: *you (are)...*
 50 **filius (nūllus)...prōlēsque virīlis nūlla:** both denote the same single subject; Latinus did not have a male heir to his throne
huic...fuit: dat. of possession: ‘to this one \ was’ or ‘this one had...’ i.e. to King Latinus
fātō divum: *by fate of the gods;* abl. of cause
 51 **prīmā...iuventā:** *in earliest youth;* time when
oriēns erepta...est: *(while) being born was snatched away;* pf. pass. ēripiō; Latinus and Amata’s son died during childbirth
sōla...filia: i.e. Lavinia, Latinus’ daughter
 53 **virō:** *for a husband;* dat. of interest

plēnis..annīs: <i>with full years</i> ; abl. of quality; i.e. at a marriageable age	quem...: <i>whom...</i>
54 Multī...petēbant: <i>many...</i> ; i.e. in marriage	56 rēgia coniūnx: i.e. Amata, Latinus' wife
55 pulcherrimus: <i>most handsome</i> ; superlative	57 generum: <i>as a...</i> ; predicative acc.
56 avis atavisque potēns: <i>powerful in grandfathers and forefathers</i> ; abl. of respect	mīrō...amōre: <i>with...</i> ; abl. of cause
	58 variīs...terrōribus: <i>with...</i> ; abl. of means i.e. the gods do not want Turnus as husband

Turnus, -ī m.: Turnus, 5

Brief Outline of Book 7

- 1-285 **Latinus**, king of the Latins, welcomes the Trojans to Laurentum, a coastal city in Latium, south of Rome. In response to divine signs Latinus gives his daughter **Lavinia** to **Aeneas** in marriage. The marriage signifies that Aeneas will rule both the Trojans and the Latins.
- 286-474 **Juno** sends the fury **Allecto** to enflame **Amata**, wife of Latinus, and **Turnus**, king of the Rutulians, a Latin tribe, against the marriage. Turnus was engaged to Lavinia and had hoped to succeed Latinus as king of the Latins, but now he has lost both Lavinia and the kingship.
- 475-end While Amata and Turnus rally the Latins against the Trojans, war breaks out when young **Ascanius** kills a deer, which unknowingly was a favorite pet and sacred to the Latins. **Juno** opens the Gates of Janus as an indicator of war, and both sides prepare to fight.

Books 7-12 are an Imitation of Homer's *Iliad*

- War arises between the Trojans and Latins, when **Aeneas** is accused of stealing **Lavinia** from the Rutulian King **Turnus**, just as war arises between the Trojans and Greeks when **Paris** is accused of stealing **Helen** from the Greek King **Menelaus**.
- Aeneas** befriends and fights alongside a young **Pallas**, son of a local Greek leader Evander, just as **Achilles** befriends and fights alongside **Patroclus**. **Turnus** will kill young **Pallas** and puts on parts of his armor, just as the Trojan hero **Hector** kills **Patroclus** and puts on parts of his armor/
- Aeneas** and **Turnus** fight a duel, and Aeneas kills Turnus because of the death of **Pallas**, just as **Achilles** and **Hector** fight a duel, and Achilles kills Hector because of the death of **Patroclus**. Just as **Hector's death** leads to the fall of Troy. so **Turnus' death** marks the end of the war in Italy.

What to Take away from Lesson 58: Latinus has no male heirs.

- King Latinus is the great-grandson of **Saturn** (Saturn-Picus-Faunus-Latinus) and rules peacefully.
- Since Latinus has no male heirs, he must pass his kingship not to his daughter **Lavinia** but to the husband whom Latinus chooses for Lavinia. Many, including **Turnus**, seek marriage with her.
- Portents and omens** (*portenta*, l. 58) stand in the way. Latinus will later marry her off to Aeneas.

Word Building: GENE-, GIGN- “beget” “give birth to” “bring forth”

Gene- and **gign-** refer to (a) “birth” or “source” but also to (b) “humans of the same origin” (i.e. race or people) or (c) “things of the same origin” (i.e. kinds). For this reason, the noun **genus** can mean “birth” or “lineage” but often refers to “people” or “kinds.” (Compare ‘kin’ and ‘kind’ in English.)

gēns, gentis f.: people, clan, 6

genus, -eris n.: birth, lineage; people, kind, 4

genitor, -ōris m.: begetter, father, 2

gener, -ī m.: son-in-law, 1

gignō, -ere, genuī, genitum: beget, *pass.* be born, 1

prōgignō, -ere, -genuī: bring forth, 1

prōgeniēs, ēī f.: progeny, offspring, 1

Ipse inter primōs praestantī corpore Turnus	783
vertitur arma tenēns et tōtō vertice suprā est.	784
Cui triplici crīnīta iubā galea alta Chimaeram	785
sustinet, Aetnaeōs efflantem faucibus ignēs:	786
tam magis illa fremēns et trīstibus effera flammīs,	787
quam magis effūsō crūdēscunt sanguine pugnae.	788
At lēvem clipeum sublātis cornibus Iō	789
aurō insignībat, iam saetīs obsita, iam bōs	790
(argūmentum ingēns), et cūstōs virginis Argus	791
caelātāque amnem fundēns pater Inachus urnā.	792

Aetnaeus, -a, -um: Etnean, of Mt. Etna,
amnis, -is m: stream; river, 2
argūmentum, -ī n.: subject, topic; proof
Argus, -ī m.: Argus (100-eyed monster)
aurum, -ī n.: gold, 3
bōs, bovis m. f.: cow, ox, bull
caelō (1): engrave, carve, chisel
Chimaera, -ae f.: Chimera (monster)
clipeus, -ī m.: (round) shield, 3
cornū, -ūs n.: horn
crīnītus, -a, -um: crested, long-haired
crūdēscō, -ere: become cruel or violent
custōs, -ōdis m. (f.): guard, guardian, 2
efferus, -a, -um: very wild (ē + ferus)
efflō, -āre, -flāvī, -flātus: blow out
faucēs, -ium f.: throat, gullet; narrow pass
fremō, -ere, -uī, -itum: roar, 2

Turnus' appearance, helmet, and shield described

783 **inter primōs:** among the first (fighters), among the foremost; i.e. the leaders
praestantī corpore: of...; abl. of quality
784 **vertitur:** turns himself about; pass. 'is turned (by himself)' is here reflexive in sense
tōtō vertice suprā: above by an entire head; i.e. taller by a whole head; suprā is here an adverb with abl. of degree of difference
785 **Cui:** Whose; 'to whom,' dat. of possession
triplici...iubā: with...; abl. of means following alta; triplici is a 3rd-decl. i-stem abl. adj.
sustinet: holds (the image of)...; the image is engraved on the helmet
786 **Aetnaeōs...ignēs:** fires of Mt. Etna; Chimera is the name of a monster but also the name of a volcanic mountain in Asia Minor just like Mt. Etna, the well-known volcano in Sicily
efflantem: pres. pple modifying Chimaeram
faucibus: from...; dat. of compound verb; this word can refer to a throat or narrow mtn. pass

fundō, -ere, -fūdī, fūsum: pour (out), lay low
galea, -ae f.: helmet, 2
Inachus, -ī m.: Inachus (river and father of Io)
insigniō, -īre, -ī, -ītum: mark on, distinguish
Iō, -ūs f.: Io (human, daughter of Inachus)
iuba, -ae f.: crest, mane, 2
levis, -e: light, 3
obserō, -ere, -sēvī, -situm: sow or plant upon
praestāns, -ntis: outstanding, standing in front
saeta, -ae f.: a bristle; stiff hair
suprā: above, over (acc.)
sustineō, -ēre, -uī: hold up, sustain, endure, 3
tam: so, such, 2
triplex, triplicis: three-fold, triple
trīstis, -e: sad
urna, -ae f.: urn, vessel

787 **tam magis frēmēns...quam magis crūdēscunt...:** the more...the more...; 'so much more...as much more,' tam...quam, 'so/as...as' are correlative advs., and quam introduces a clause of comparison; in English idiom, we can leave tam...quam untranslated
illa: that one; nom. subj. modified by two adjs.
trīstibus...flammīs: with...; abl. of means
788 **effūsō...sanguine:** with effusive blood; either abl. means with PPP as an adj. or abl. abs. with PPP effundō, 'pour/shed out'
789 **At:** =sed; the narrative moves on to the shield
sublātis cornibus Iō insignībat: with horns lifted, Io marks...; i.e. Io was turned into a cow by Juno and is represented as such on the shield (see p. 119); abl. of quality, PPP tollō
790 **aurō:** with...; abl. means, embossed on front
Iam...obsita, iam bōs: already overgrown with hair, already a cow; in apposition to Iō
791 **argūmentum ingēns:** a huge representation; in apposition to nom. subj.; argūmentum here

denotes the 'subject' or 'theme' of the work
et...Argus...-que...Inachus: *and Argus...and Inachus...*; both are subjects parallel with Io;
 3p subject of 3s verb 'clipeum insignibat';
 Argus is the hundred-eyed monster guarding

Io, and the river-god Inachus is Io's father (for more, see below)

792 **caelātā...urnā:** *from...*; abl. of source, as if the river-god derives its stream from an engraved pot

pugna, -ae f.: fight, 4

virgō, virginis f.: maiden, unmarried woman, 6

What Happened Next: A Catalogue of Italian Fighters Ends with Turnus and Camilla

Book 7 ends with a catalogue, i.e. list, of Italian warriors that culminates with detailed descriptions of two heroes: **Turnus** and the female warrior **Camilla**. Turnus is king of the Rutulians, a minor Latin tribe in Ardea, a town 7 miles southeast of King Latinus' city Laurentum. Turnus lost both a marriage with Lavinia and the future kingship of the Latins because of Aeneas, and Turnus will lead the Rutulians and allied Italians against the Trojans in Books 7-12. Camilla, leader of the Volscians, a non-Latin Italian tribe south of Ardea, is a unique female hero whose life and death will be the focus of readings in Lessons 61 through 65 in Book 11.

Vergil's decision to list the warriors with short descriptions is a convention of epic poetry. Homer devotes Book 2 of the *Iliad* to a catalogue of the Greek warriors who sailed their ships to Troy, and Vergil appears to be imitating the *Iliad* or epic convention with this catalogue of Italian warriors.

Turnus' Helmet 7.785-8: Is Chimera a Mountain or a Monster?

The **Chimera** is represented as a monster on the helmet, but it is described as both a mountain and a monster in lines 785-8. **Mt. Chimera**, located in Asia Minor (modern Turkey), is not an active volcano but produces methane and other gases that burn constantly and give the mountain the reputation for being fire-breathing. It is this reputation that likely gave rise to the myth of the **monstrous Chimera**, a fire-breathing monster from the same region, which is the form of a lion with a goat's neck and head protruding from its back and with a serpent's neck and head as its tail.

Lines 785-6 hint at Chimera's origin as a mountain and go so far as to compare its fires to the fires of Mt. Etna, an active volcano well-known to Romans on the eastern coast of Sicily. But lines 787-8 clearly identify Chimera as the monster, which roars (*fremēns*) like a lion, is wild (*effera*), breathes fire (*flammīs*), and foments bloody battles (*effusō sanguine*).

The symbolism suggests that Turnus is as fierce a fighter as the monstrous Chimera.

Turnus' Shield 7.789-92: Io, Argus, and Inachus

Io symbolizes Juno's wrath. Jupiter once had an affair with the human Io, a priestess of Juno. When Juno was about to discover the affair, Jupiter turned Io into a cow to hide her. Juno noticed the deceit and sent a **gadfly** to sting and torture the cow Io continuously and ordered **Argus**, a one-hundred-eyed monster, to guard her night and day to prevent Jupiter from approaching her.

Io and her father Inachus, the river god mentioned in 792, are ancestors of Turnus himself (see 7.373ff.). And so, while some readers may see Io as a symbol of the wrath that Juno will heap upon Aeneas through Turnus, others see Io as a symbol of history repeating itself: just as Juno provoked Turnus' ancestor Io with the gadfly, so Juno provokes Io's descendant Turnus with the fury **Allecto**.

There is truth to this second reading. Turnus, while angry about losing Lavinia, is initially unwilling to foment a war. It is only when Juno sends the fury **Allecto** to instill *fury* in Turnus' heart that Turnus incites violence. While Turnus sees his ancestors on his shield, we readers see something else.

The symbolism hints that Turnus, a fierce fighter, is also a victim of Juno's intervention.

Hōs super advēnit Volscā dē gente Camilla	803
agmen agēns equitum et flōrentēs aere catervās,	804
bellātrīx, nōn illa colō calathīsve Minervae	805
fēmineās adsuēta manūs, sed proelia virgo	806
dūra patī cursūque pedum praevertere ventōs.	807
Illa vel intāctae segetis per summa volāret	808
grāmina nec tenerās cursū laeisset aristās,	809
vel mare per medium flūctū suspēnsa tumentī	810
ferret iter celeris nec tingeret aequore plantās.	811
Illam omnis tēctīs agrīsque effūsa iuventūs	812
turbaque mīrātur mātrum et prōspectat euntem,	813
attonitīs inhiāns animīs, ut rēgius ostrō	814
vēlet honōs lēvēs umerōs, ut fībula crīnem	815
aurō internectat, Lyciam ut gerat ipsa pharetram	816
et pāstōrālem praefixā cuspidē myrtum.	817

adsuēscō, -ere, -ēvī: accustom oneself to (dat.)

adveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum: arrive

aes, aeris n.: bronze, copper, 2

ager, agrī m.: field, land

agmen, -inis n.: column, line, formation, 3

arista, -ae f.: head of grain, head of wheat

attonitus, -a, -um: thunder-struck, astonished, 2

aurum, -ī n.: gold, 3

bellātrix, -icis f.: warrior, female warrior

calathus, -ī m.: basket, workbasket

celer, -eris, -ere: swift, quick, 3

cōlus, -ī m.: distaff (for weaving)

crīnis, -is m.: locks, hair

cuspidis, -idos f.: point, spearpoint, 2

dūrus, -a, -um: hard, harsh, stern, 2

eques, equitis m.: equestrian, horseman

fēmineus, -a, -um: womanly, of a woman

fībula, -ae f.: fibula, pin

flōrēns, -entis: flowering

grāmen, -inis n.: grass

honor (-os), -ōris m.: honor; offering, 3

inhiō (1): stand agape (mouth open); yawn

intāctus, -a, -um: untouched, intact

internectō, -ere: connect, bind together

iter, itineris n.: journey, route

803 **Hōs super:** *in addition to these*; ‘on top of...’
suprā means ‘above,’ super is ‘on top of’

804 **agēns:** *leading...*; ‘pres. pple with two objs.’

aere: *with...*; i.e. bronze arms; with flōrentēs

805 **nōn illa...adsuēta:** *that one not having been accustomed to...*; appositive; PPP governs a

iuventūs, -ūtis f.: the youth, young, 2

laedō, -ere, -sī, -sum: hurt, harm; offend, 3

levis, -e: light, 3

Lycius, -a, -um: Lycian, of Lycia (Apollo), 2

Minerva, -ae f.: Minerva, Athena

mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum: wonder, be amazed at

myrtus, -ī m.: myrtle tree

ostrum, -ī n.: purple, purple (dye, cloth)

pāstōrālis, -e: pastoral, of a shepherd

pharetra, -ae f.: quiver, arrow-carrier, 3

planta, -ae f.: sole of a foot, foot, 2

praefigō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum: fix in front

praevertō, -ere: go/turn before, surpass

proelium, -iī n.: battle, 3

prōspectō (1): look out at, look at

rēgius, -a, -um: of a king/queen, royal, 2

seges, segitis f.: crop, harvest, field of grain

tener, -a, -um: tender, soft, delicate, 3

tinguō, -ere, tīnxī, tīnctum: tinge, wet, dye

tumeō, -ēre, -uī: swell

turba, -ae f.: crowd, mob, 2

vēlō (1): veil, cover, 2

ventus, -ī m.: wind, 2

volō (1): fly, 3

Volscus, -a, -um.: Volscian (Italian tribe)

dat. of compound verb or abl. of association

fēmineās...manūs: *in (her)...*; acc. of respect
common with PPP adsuēta (reflexive in sense)

Minervae: gen.; i.e. the goddess of weaving

806 **virgō (adsuēta):** *but a maiden having been accustomed to...*; + inf.; pres. dep. inf. pātor

- 807 **patī...praevertere:** *to endure...and to surpass*
cursū...pedum: *in...; abl. of respect + gen. pl.*
- 808 **Illa vel...volāret...nec...laesisset:** *that one either could fly...and would not have harmed*
 potential subj. impf. volō and plpf. laedō
vel...vel...: *either...or...; correlatives*
intāctae segetis: *of...; i.e. not yet harvested*
- 809 **cursū:** *with her running; abl. of means*
- 810 **vel (illa)... ferret iter...nec tingeret:** *or (that one) could bear a journey ...and would not touch...; potential subj. impf. subj. ferō and tinguō; iter is acc. obj. of ferret*
mare per medium: *per mare medium*
flūctū...tumentī: *on...; abl. place where, pres. pple tumō as a 3rd decl. i-stem adj. in the abl.*
suspēnsa: *nom. sg. PPP*
- 811 **celeris:** *swiftly; nom. fem. adj. as an adverb*
(in) aequore: *on...; abl. place where*
- 812 **illam:** *that one; i.e. Camilla*
omnis...iuentūs turbaque...matrum: *a crowd of all the youth and mothers; nom. subj. and partitive gens.; the youth are young men*
- tectīs agrisque:** *from...; dat. compound or abl. pfw with nom. sg. PPP effūsa*
effūsa: *having poured out; 'having been poured (by themselves), 'this PPP is reflexive in sense and should be translated actively*
euntem: *pple pple eō, ire with illam*
- 813 **attonitīs...animīs:** *their minds thunderstruck; abl. abs. or abl. of attendant circumstances*
- 814 **ut rēgius ostrō vēlet honōs lēvēs umerōs:** *how royal honor...; three ind. exclamatory sentences introduced by ut, 'how' + pres. subj. (Verbs in indirect exclamatory sentences use subj. in the same way indirect questions do.)*
ostrō: *with...; abl. means*
- 815 **ut fibula crīnem...aurō internectat:** *how her fibula...; second exclamatory sentence with ut, 'how' + pres. subj.*
- 816 **Lyciam ut gerat...:** *(and) how she wears...; third ind. exclamatory sentence; ut, 'how' + pres. subj.; Lyciam modifies pharetram*
- 817 **praefixā cuspidē:** *of...; abl. of quality; PPP praefigō*

Camilla, -ae f.: Camilla, 4

Camilla, the Female Warrior

Turnus' armor characterizes Turnus through **contrasting imagery**: he is both a fierce fighter like the Chimera and a victim of Juno's provocations like his ancestor Io.

Camilla, the last warrior mentioned in the catalogue, is also described through **contrasting imagery**. The list below is not comprehensive but meant to encourage readers to read with contrasts in mind:

she leads troops flowering...	but flowering with bronze
a warrior unaccustomed to weaving...	but an unmarried woman who endures war
she could graze the tops of grain and waves...	but she has not done so in reality
young men marvel at her...	but older mothers marvel at her
decorated in gold and royal purple...	but equipped with an arrow-quiver and spear
men marvel at a warrior wearing gold & purple...	but mothers marvel at a woman bearing arms
a quiver is for hunting, a staff for shepherding	but she carries these as weapons of war

This juxtaposition of contrasting images is called **antithesis**. The Greeks and Romans viewed female warriors as unique and oddly paradoxical, and Vergil ingeniously uses **antithesis** again and again to highlight that uniqueness and prepare us for the much greater role Camilla will play in Book 11.

Camilla recalls Penthesilea, Harpalyce, and Atalanta!

Vergil likely modeled Camilla after several female warriors known in myth. The **Amazon queen Penthesilea** led female warriors at Troy in the lost Greek epic *Aethiopsis* and was killed by no other than Achilles himself. **Harpalyce** was a famous, swift-footed hunter, who was left motherless and raised by her father as a warrior, just as Camilla will be described in Book 11. There is also swift-footed **Atalanta**, the sole female Argonaut, who outran every man in races and could not be beaten without deceit. Camilla seems to embody characteristics of all three of these mythical figures.

Vēlōcem intereā superīs in sēdibus Ōpim,	532
ūnam ex virginibus sociīs sacrāque catervā,	533
compellābat et hās trīstis Lātōnia vōcēs	534
ōre dabat: “Graditur bellum ad crūdēle Camilla,	535
Ō virgō, et nostrīs nēquīquam cingitur armīs,	536
cāra mihi ante aliās. Neque enim novus iste Diānae	537
vēnit amor subitāque animum dulcēdine mōvit.	538
Pulsus ob invidiam rēgnō vīrēsque superbās	539
Prīvernō antīquā Metabus cum excēderet urbe,	540
īnfantem fugiēns media inter proelia bellī	541
sustulit exsiliō comitem mātrisque vocāvit	542
nōmine Casmillae mūtātā parte Camillam.	543

antīquus, -a, -um: ancient, old, 3
Casmilla, -ae f.: Casmilla (Camilla’s mother)
cingō, -ere, cinxī, cinctum: belt, gird; equip, 3
compellō (1): address, accost, speak to
crūdēlis, -e: cruel, bloody, 3
Diāna (Dīāna), -ae f.: Diana (Grk. Artemis), 3
dulcēdō, -inis f.: sweetness, 2
excēdō, -ere, cessī, -cessum: go out, depart, 2
exsilium, -iī n.: exile
gradior, -ī, gressus sum: step, walk, proceed, 2
intereā: meanwhile, in the meantime, 2
invidia, -ae f.: envy, hatred, 2
iste, ista, istum: that, those (of yours), 3
Lātōnia, -ae f.: Diana, daughter of Latona, 2

Bk 11: Diana tells the nymph Opis about Camilla
532 **superīs in sēdibus:** *in dwellings above, in homes on high*; i.e. of the gods on Olympus
533 **ūnam ex virginibus...catervā:** in apposition to Ōpim; lengthy object of preposition ex
534 **compellābat.Lātōnia:** *Diana...*; **patronymic:** ‘the Latonian one,’ Latona is mother of Diana
trīstis: *sadly*; translate nom. pred. as an adv.
hās...vōcēs: i.e. words, the speech that follows
535 **ōre:** *from...*; abl. of source, ōs
graditur: *is walking/going*; pres. progressive
536 **Ō virgō:** voc. direct address; i.e. Opis
536 **nostrīs...armīs:** *with my weapons*; means; i.e. weapons like mine; the **royal we**: gods often use the 1p for 1s for emphasis
nēquīquam: Diana knows she is fated to die
cingitur: *is equipped*; ‘is fit with a belt with’
537 **cāra mihi:** modifies Camilla; dat. of interest
ante aliās: i.e. compared to other followers
538 **Neque enim...mōvit:** *nor indeed has a new love for you come and moved the mind of*

Metabus, -ī m.: Metabus (father of Camilla), 2
nēquīquam: in vain, to no purpose
ob: on account of, because of (*acc.*), 2
Ōpis, -is (acc. Ōpim) f.: Opis (nymph of Diana)
ops, -is f.: resources, power, wealth, 3
pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum: drive, push
Prīvernum, -ī n.: Privernum (Volscian town)
proelium, -iī n.: battle, 3
socius, -a, -um: allied
subitus, -a, -um: sudden, 2
superbus, -a, -um: proud, arrogant, 3
superus, -a, -um: above, higher; *subs.* god, 3
trīstis, -e: sad, sullen, dreary, 3
vēlox, vēclocis: swift, rapid, 2

Diana; iste, ‘that (of yours);’ Diana has long loved Camilla and this is not a sudden
549 **Pulsus:** PPP pellō with the father Metabus
ob invidiam... superbās: *on account of...*
rēgnō: *from...*; abl. of separation with Pulsus
540 **cum excēderet...:** *when...*; cum clause with impf. subj. excēdō: translate as impf.
Prīvernō antīquā urbe: *from...*; abl. pfw
541 **īnfantem:** *an infant*; i.e. Camilla
media inter proelia bellī: *between the middle of...*; i.e. the war to oust King Metabus
542 **exsiliō:** *in...*; abl. place where with comitem
comitem: *as a...*; acc. pred.
vocāvit (īnfantem): *called (the infant)*; add the acc. obj. from above
mātris...Casmillae: *of (her)...*; gen. modifying nōmine; Casmilla is Camilla’s mother
543 **nōmine:** abl. of means
mūtātā parte: abl. abs.; Part of the name, i.e. the letter ‘s,’ is removed and the name Camilla remains;

What We Missed: Book 8 (Aeneas visits Rome) as Imitation of the *Iliad*

At the beginning of the war in Book 8 Aeneas sets out to find allies and, guided by the river god **Tiberinus** (Tiber), comes to the future site of Rome. There, he meets the Greek **King Evander** and takes a tour of the future site of Rome, which at that time was a Greek settlement called **Pallanteum**. Evander agrees to help Aeneas and sends Greek soldiers along with his young son **Pallas**, who will be important in the final scene of the epic.

While Aeneas visits Evander, **Venus** asks **Vulcan** to prepare a shield for Aeneas. This request is a clear imitation of Book 18 of the *Iliad*, where Achilles' mother Thetis asks Hephaestus to make divine armor for Achilles to wear against Hector. Vulcan's **Shield of Aeneas** depicts figures and events in Roman history including Romulus and Remus, the Gallic sack of Rome, Catiline, and Cato. The centerpiece depicts **Caesar Augustus'** victory at Actium over Marc Antony and Cleopatra in 31 BC and his triple triumph in 27 BC. The depiction suggests that the events that led to Augustus' rule as emperor were fated by the gods. Aeneas receives the armor but does not understand the imagery.

What We Missed: Book 9 (Nisus and Euryalus) as Imitation of the *Iliad*

While Aeneas is away, Turnus and the Italians besiege the Trojan camp, just as Achilles and the Greeks besieged the Trojans in the *Iliad*. **Nisus** and **Euryalus**, two close Trojan soldiers, sneak out of the camp and carry out a night raid. They kill many unsuspecting soldiers and seize a lot of loot, but when Euryalus takes a gleaming Rutulian helmet, he draws the attention of the Italians, and the two Trojans are killed. This night raid is a clear imitation of Book 10 of the *Iliad*, where Diomedes and Odysseus perform a night raid to recover the horses of Rhesus.

What We Missed: Book 10 (Pallas and Mezentius) as Imitation of the *Iliad*

In Book 10, when Aeneas, Pallas, and the Greek soldiers return to the Trojan camp, fighting ensues. **Aeneas** becomes the foremost fighter among the Trojans and succeeds in killing **Mezentius**, the hated king of the Etruscans. **Pallas**, whom Aeneas agreed to protect, is killed by **Turnus**. Turnus takes the **war belt** off of Pallas and wears it on his own body, just as Hector kills Patroclus and takes his armor.

What We Missed: First Half of Book 11 (Defense of the City Laurentum)

In the first half of Book 11, there is a 12-day truce, and the Trojans bury and mourn **Pallas**. When the Trojans split up into two forces to attack the city Laurentum, **Turnus** and **Camilla** agree to divide up leadership. Turnus leads away Italians to ambush the force led by Aeneas, while Camilla defends the city from the second Trojan force. Camilla is treated as an equal to Turnus in leadership and in battle.

Diana tells the nymph Opis the story of Camilla's childhood over the next four lessons.

Diana (*Latonia*, l. 534) addresses the nymph **Opis** and tearfully reveals that **Camilla**, dear to Diana beyond others, will die in battle. Diana then recalls Camilla's childhood. **Metabus**, Camilla's father, was expelled as Etruscan king of the Volscian city **Privernum** and escapes with Camilla as an infant. Since Camilla's mother, **Casmilla**, died giving birth to Camilla, Metabus raises his daughter alone.

Who are the Volscians?

The Volscians (or Voslci) are an Italian tribe who lived on the western shore of Italy south of Latium. Both the city **Privernum** and river **Amasenus**, mentioned on the next page, are located in this region.

Metabus, his wife Casmilla, and daughter Camilla are **Etruscans**, an Italian people living in twelve major cities north of Rome. Metabus was therefore a foreign king when he was ousted from ruling the Volscians. His daughter Camilla regained the throne and is leading the Volscans in battle in Book 11.

Ipsē sinū prae sē portāns iuga longa petēbat	544
sōlōrum nemorum: tēla undique saeva premēbant	545
et circumfūsō volitābant mīlite Volscī.	546
Ecce fugae mediō summīs Amasēnus abundāns	547
spūmābat rīpīs: tantus sē nūbibus imber	548
rūperat. Ille, innāre parāns, īfantis amōre	549
tardātur cārōque onerī timet. Omnia sēcum	550
versantī subitō vix haec sententia sēdit.	551
Tēlum immāne manū validā quod forte gerēbat	552
bellātor, solidum nōdīs et rōbore coctō,	553
huic nātam, librō et silvestrī sūbere clausam,	554
implicat atque habilem mediae circumligat hastae;	555
quam dextrā ingentī librāns ita ad aethera fātur:	556

abundō (1): overflow from, flow over
aether, -eris m.: aether, (upper) sky, 3
Amasēnus, -ī m.: Amasenus river
bellātor, -is m.: warrior, male warrior
circumfundō -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus: spread around
circumligō (1): tie or bind around
claudō, -ere, -sī, -sum: close (in), 3
coquō, -ere, coxī, coctum: cook, bake
 ecce: behold, 3
for, fārī, fātus sum: speak, say, tell, utter, 3
forte: by chance, 3
habilis, -e: easily handled
imber, imbris m.: rain
immānis, -e: immense, huge
innō (1): swim or float in
iugum, -ī n.: (mtn) ridge; harness, 2
librō (1): balance; poise, aim
mīles, mīlitis m.: soldier
nāta, -ae f.: daughter (female born), 2
nōdus, -ī m.: knot, 2
onus, oneris n.: burden, load
parō (1): prepare, 3

544 **Ipsē (Metabus):** (*Metabus*) himself
(in) sinū: *on his chest*; ‘in the curve (of his body);’ elsewhere ‘the lap;’ abl. place where
portāns (Camillam): pres. pple
 545 **sōlōrum nemorum:** *of solitary woods*
 546 **circumfūsō...mīlite:** abl. abs.; i.e. soldier(s)
volitābant: i.e. patrolling here and there
 547 **fugae mediō:** *in...*; abl. time when and gen.
summīs rīpīs: *from...*; dat. of compound verb or abl. of separation (pfw) with abundāns
 548 **nūbibus:** *from...*; abl. pfw or place where
 549 **Ille:** *that one*; i.e. Metabus

portō (1): carry
prae: in front of, before (abl)
rīpa, -ae f.: bank, river bank, 2
rōbur, ōris n.: hard wood; oak wood, 2
rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptum: burst, break in, 2
sedeō, -ēre, sēdī: sit, 3
sententia, -ae f.: feeling, opinion
silvestris, -e: wooded, woodland
sinus, -ūs m.: bay, curve; bosom, lap, 2
solidus, -a, -um: solid, dense; a solid (coin)
spūmō (1): spume, foam, froth, spit, 2
sūber, -is n.: cork
subitō: suddenly, 3
tardō (1): slow, hinder
timeō, -ēre, timuī: be afraid, fear, 3
undique: from all sides
validus, -a, -um: strong, sturdy, 2
versō (1): turn over, think over, reflect
vix: scarcely, hardly, with difficulty, 2
volitō (1): flitter (about), flutter (about), fly
Volscus, -a, -um.: Volscian

infantis: *for...*; objective gen. with amōre
amōre: *by...*, *because of...* abl. of cause
 550 **cārō onerī:** *for his...*; i.e. infant; dat. interest
Omnia...versantī: *to (the one)...*; i.e. thinking over; pres. pple versō and dat. of interest
sēcum: cum sē
 551 **haec sententia:** i.e. the plan that follows
sēdit: *set in*; i.e. fixed itself
 552 **Tēlum immāne (erat):** (*there was*)...; ellipsis
nōdīs et rōbore coctō: *of...*; abl. of quality with solidum or tēlum; PPP coquō: fire-hardening wood removes moisture for strength

554 **huic nātam...implicat:** *on this (spear) he entwines his daughter;* dat. of compound verb; i.e. placed the spear vertically along her body
librō et silvestrī sūbere: *in bark of a woody cork;* 'bark and woody cork,' **hendiadys** (two terms denoting one object); abl. if means
clausam: *enclosed;* PPP claudō with nātam; i.e. the infant was enclosed in the bark as a cushion; the spear and bark are tied together
 555 **habilem mediae circumligat hastae;** *ties*

(her), easy to handle, around the middle of the spear; dat. of compound verb, habilem is predicative and modifies nātam understood
 556 **quam...librāns:** *brandishing which...;* or 'brandishing this...' hasta is the antecedent; pres. pple librō; he plans to throw the spear with the infant across the river but prays first
dextrā ingentī: *abl. of means; i-stem abl.*
fātur: *pres. dep. for, fārī: translate as active*
ad aethera: *i.e. to the gods in Olympus*

Metabus Dedicates his Daughter Camilla to Diana and Escapes Across a River

Diana continues to tell Opis about Metabus' escape with Camilla. When Metabus is chased by Volscians and comes to the river **Amasenus**, he ties the infant Camilla around a spear (*iaculum*). After vowing that Camilla will be a servant to the goddess Diana, he throws the spear and Camilla safely across the river and then swims across to join his daughter and flee into the wilderness.

Word Building: PELL-, PUL-, PULS- "drive" or "push"

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum: drive (out), push, 1
dēpellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum: drive out/off, 1
dispellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum: drive apart, disperse, scatter, 1
impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum: impel, push, 3
repellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum: drive back, repulse, 1
compellō (1): address, accost, speak to, 1 "drive (someone) to act" = address

Word Building: PLIC-, PLECT-, PLEX- "fold" or "bend"

duplicō (1): duplicate, double, 1
implicō, -āre, -uī, -itum: enfold, entwine, 4
multiplex, multiplicis: multiple, 1
duplex, -icis: double, twin, 1
triplex, triplicis: three-fold, triple, 1
septemplex, -icis: seven-fold, 1
supplex, -icis: suppliant (one begging), 2
amplector, -plectī, -plexus sum: embrace, enclose, 3
complector, -ī, complexus sum: embrace, 1

Word Building: LIG- "tie" vs. LEG- "pick out"

1st conj. **ligāre** verbs mean "tie," while 3rd conjugation **ligere** are compound verbs of **legere**, "pick."
ligō (1): tie down, fasten, 1
circumligō (1): tie or bind around, 1
obligō (1): bind up, 1
legō, -ere, lēgī, lectum: read; pick out, 7
colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum: gather, collect, 3
diligō, -ere, -lexī, -lectum: love, esteem, 1 i.e. pick out and value
ēligō, -ere, ēlēgī, ēlectum: choose, pick out, 1
 Derivatives of **ligāre** include ligament and ligature. Derivatives of **legere** include collect and elect.

‘Alma, tibi hanc, nemorum cultrix, Lātōnia virgō,	557
ipse pater famulam voveō; tua p̄ma per aurās	558
tēla tenēns supplex hostem fugit. Accipe, testor,	559
dīva tuam, quae nunc dubiīs committitur aurīs.’	560
Dixit et adductō contortum hastile lacertō	561
immittit: sonuēre undae, rapidum super amnem	562
īnfēlix fugit in iaculō strīdente Camilla.	563
At Metabus, magnā propius iam urgente catervā,	564
dat sēsē fluvio atque hastam cum virgine victor	565
grāmineō dōnum Triviae dē caespite vellit.	566
Nōn illum tēctīs ūllae, nōn moenibus urbēs	567
accēpēre neque ipse manūs feritāte dedisset:	568
pāstorum et sōlis exēgit montibus aevum.	569

addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum: draw/lead to, 2
aevum, -ī n.: time, lifetime, life, (old) age, 2
almus, -a, -um: nourishing, kind
amnis, -is m.: stream; river, 2
aura, -ae f.: breeze, wind, air, 3
caespes, -pitis m.: turf, clump (of grass)
committō, -ere: commit, commence, arrange, 3
contorqueō, -ēre, -torsī, -tortum: twist, hurl, 2
cultrix, -icis f.: cultivator, inhabitant
dōnum, -ī n.: gift, 3
dubius, -a, -um: doubtful, wavering, uncertain, 3
exigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum: drive, urge; spend, 3
famula, -ae f.: handmaid, maid-servant
feritās, -tātis f.: wildness, fierceness
fluvius, -iī m.: river, stream
grāmineus, -a, -um: grassy, of the grass
hastile, -is n.: spear-shaft; spear

hostis, -is m./f.: enemy, 2
iaculum, -ī n.: javelin, thrower, 2
immittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum: send on
lacertus, -ī m.: upper arm, arm
Lātōnia, -ae f.: Diana, daughter of Latona, 2
Metabus, -ī m.: Metabus (father of Camilla), 2
pāstor, pāstoris m.: shepherd
propius: nearer, closer (*comp.* prope), 3
rapidus, -a, -um: swift, grasping
sonō, -āre, -uī: sound, resound, roar, 2
supplex, -icis: suppliant (one begging), 2
testor, -ārī: attest, bear witness, 2
Trivia, -ae f.: Diana, goddess of the three roads
urgeō, -ēre, ursī: drive, push, 2
vellō, -ere, vellī, vulsum: pluck, seize
victor, -ōris m.: victor
voveō, -ēre: vow, pray

Metabus invokes Diana before throwing the spear
 557 **Alma...cultrix, Lātōnia virgō:** *Nourishing (one)...*; voc, dir. address; i.e. Diana; Alma and Lātōnia may be adjs. or nouns (substantives)
hanc: *this one*; i.e. the infant Camilla
 558 **ipse pater:** *I myself, the father*; 1s subject
famulam: *as a...*; acc. pred.
tua...tēla tenēns: (*She*)...; the infant is holding on to the spear to which she is tied
p̄ma: (*she*) *for the first time*; adj. as adv.
 559 **supplex:** *as a suppliant*; nom. pred.
testor: 1s pres. dep.: translate as active
 560 **dīva:** *goddess*; = dea; voc. direct address
tuam (famulam)
dubiīs...aurīs: *to...*; dat. ind. object, pl. aura
 561 **adductō lacertō:** *arm drawn (back)*; abl. abs.
contortum: PPP contorquō

562 **sonuēr(unt):** 3p syncopated pf. sonō
 564 **magnā...urgente catervā:** abl. abs.; enemies
 565 **dat sēsē fluvio:** i.e. enters the water; sēsē is just an emphatic reflexive sē with dat. ind. obj.
 566 **dōnum Triviae:** *as a gift to Diana*; acc. in apposition to hastam and dat. of interest
grāmineō...dē caespite: de caespite grāmineō
 567 **illum:** *that one*; i.e. Metabus
(in) tectīs...(in) moenibus: abl. place where
ūllae...urbēs: nom. subj.
 568 **accēpēr(unt):** 3p syncopated pf.
manūs...dedisset: *nor would he have given up*; past contrary to fact (past unreal potential) plpf. subj. dō; ‘manūs dare’ means ‘give up’
feritāte: *from...*; abl. of separation
 569 **exēgit...aevum:** *spent his life*
sōlis...montibus: *in the solitary mountains*

Camilla and Famula are Synonyms

Camilla is a synonym for the word “famula” (11.558). In Latin, the nouns “camillus” and “camilla” refer to servants who assist in certain sacred rites. They are priests. Compare how we today use the word “minister.” And so, while Metabus appears in historical records before the *Aeneid* and is based on a historical figure, Vergil likely made up the character **Camilla** with a name fitting for someone dedicated to be a servant (i.e. priestess) to Diana.

caput, -itis n.: head, 9
vertex, -icis m.: head, peak, top, 4

oculus, ī m.: eye, 14
lūmen, -inis n.: light, lamp; *pl.* eyes, 9
aciēs, -ēī f.: battleline; sword-edge;
 pupil, eye, 2

ōs, ōris n.: mouth; face, 10
lābrum, -ī n.: lip, 1
lingua, ae f.: tongue, language, 2



capillus, -ī m.: hair, 6
crīnis, -is m.: locks, hair, 1
crīnālis, -e: of/for the hair, 1
crīnītus, -a, -um: hairy, 1
barba, -ae f.: beard, 1

auris, -is f.: ear, 4

cervīx, -īcis f.: neck, 2
collum, -ī n.: neck, 2

Fig. 4 Head from Diana of Versailles

silva, -ae f.: woods, 1
silvestris, -e: wooded, woodland, 1
nemus, -oris n.: wood, forest, grove, 4

arbor, -oris: tree, 1
truncus, -ī m.: trunk (of a tree), 1
rāmus, -ī m.: branch, 1
folium, -ī n.: leaf, foliage, 1
frons, frondis f.: leaf, foliage, 1
liber, -brī m.: book; bark, 4
nōdus, -ī m.: knot, 2
lignum, -ī n.: wood (material), 1

caespes, -pitis m.: turf, clump (of grass), 1
grāmen, -inis n.: grass, 1
grāmineus, -a, -um: grassy, of grass, 1
herba, -ae f.: plant, grass, 1

arvum, -ī n.: field, arable land, 5
ager, agrī m.: field, land, 1
campus, -ī m.: field, 2
fluvius, -īī m.: river, stream, 1
amnis, -is m.: stream; river, 2
rīpa, -ae f.: bank, river bank, 2

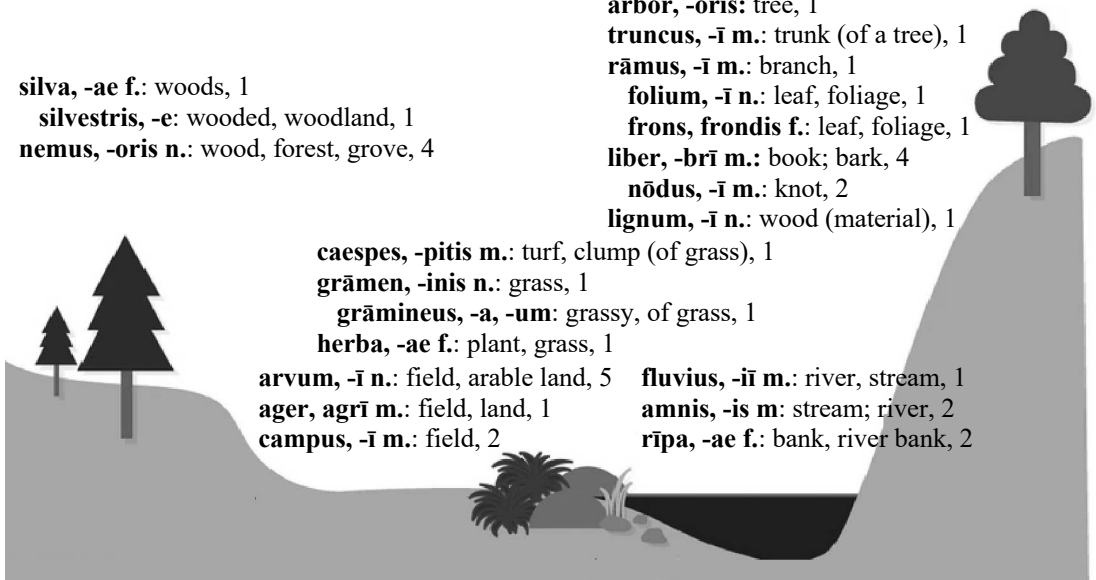


Fig. 5 Woods, Trees, Fields, Grasses, and Rivers

Hic nātam in dūmīs interque horrentia lustra	570
armentālis equae mammīs et lacte ferīnō	571
nūtrībat, tenerīs immulgēns ūbera labrīs.	572
Utque pedum prīmīs infāns vestīgia plantīs	573
īnstiterat, iaculō palmās armāvit acūtō	574
spīculaque ex umerō parvae suspendit et arcum.	575
Prō crīnālī aurō, prō longae tegmine pallae	576
tigridis exuviae per dorsum ā vertice pendent.	577
Tēla manū iam tum tenerā puerīlia torsit	578
et fundam terefī circum caput ēgit habēnā	579
Strīmoniamque gruem aut album dēiēcit olōrem.	580

ācer, ācris, ācre: sharp; fierce, 3
albus, -a, -um: white, 2
arcus, -ūs m.: arch; bow, 2
armentālis, -e: of a herd
armō (1): to arm
aurum, -ī n.: gold, 3
crīnālis, -e: of/for the hair
dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum: throw down
dorsum, -ī n.: back
dūmus, -ī m.: thorn-bush, bramble
equa, -ae f.: mare, female horse
exuviae, -ārum f.: skin, armor (that taken off), 2
ferīnus, -a, -um: wild, of a wild animal
funda, ae f.: sling-stone, sling bullet
grus, gruis m.: crane
habēna, -ae f.: leather strap or strip; rein
iaculum, -ī n.: javelin, thrower, 2
immulgō, -ere: milk into, draw milk into
īnstō, -āre, -stītī: set on, press on, urge on, 3

570 **Hic:** *this one*; i.e. Metabus
inter horrentia lustra: *amid bristling woods*,
i.e. amid uncultivated woods; horrēre means
“to stand up or stick out,” which is what
foliage does when not cut back by humans;
Camilla does not grow up near cultivated land
571 **armentālis equae:** gen. sg.; a female horse
who is breeding and therefore producing milk
mammīs et lacte ferīnō: *with wild milk*
from...; abl. of source and means respectively
573 **tenerīs...labrīs:** *into...;* i.e. of the infant
Camilla; dat. of compound verb
573 **Utque...vestigia īnstiterat:** *and when...had*
set up footprints; ‘as...’ temporal + plpf. indic.
pedum prīmīs...plantīs: *with...;* abl. of means
and gen. pl.; i.e. her first footsteps
574 **iaculō...acūtō:** abl. means
575 **spīcula:** *arrows;* ‘sharp points,’ metonymy

lābrum, -ī n.: lip
lac, lactis n.: milk
lustrum, -ī n.: wood, forest; haunts, dens
mamma, -ae f.: breast
nāta, -ae f.: daughter (female born), 2
nūtriō, -īre, -ivī, -itum: nourish, feed
olor, olōris m.: swan
palla, -ae f.: mantle
palma, -ae f.: palm, hand, 3
parvus, -a, -um: small, 3
planta, -ae f.: sole of a foot, foot, 2
puerilis, -e: of/for a child, of/for a boy
spīculum, -ī n.: sharp point; arrow
Strīmonius, -a, -um: Strymonian
tegmen, tegminis n.: cover, covering
tener, -a, -um: tender, soft, delicate, 3
teres, terefīs: smooth, rounded off
tigris, tigridis f.: tigress, wild cat
ūber, ūberis n.: udder, teat, breast

parvae: *of the small (one);* i.e. Camilla wore
them even when young
576 **Prō crīnālī aurō:** *in place of gold for the*
hair; i.e. a golden hair-pin via metonymy;
3rd decl. i-stem abl.
prō longae tegmine pallae: *in place of the*
cover of...; appositional (explanatory) gen.
577 **per dorsum:** *over (her)...*
578 **tēla...puerīlia:** i.e. proper size for a child
manū...tenerā: abl. of means
tōrsit: *she hurled;* pf. of torqueō; spears are
thrown with a twist to improve accuracy
579 **fundam...ēgit:** *drove her sling-stone*
circum caput: i.e. around and above her head
before she releases the sling
terefī...habēnā: abl. of means; i-stem abl.
580 **aut:** *or...;* joining the two acc. objects
dēiēcit: *cast down;* i.e. shot down and caught

The Development of Camilla's Character

1. Women were conspicuously absent in Camilla's upbringing

a. **lacte ferīnō**, “wild milk” (11.571): It was not uncommon for a relative or a slave, known as a “wet nurse,” to breastfeed a child in place of a mother. The fact that Camilla is fed by a female horse indicates that there is no other woman to breastfeed and serve as a role model in her childhood. The lack of sheep or goat milk reveals that she is hunting and not shepherding flocks.

b. **tigridis exuviae**, “skins of a wild cat” (11.577): It was traditionally the task of women to weave clothing from wool, and so the fact that Camilla wears a tiger skin indicates not only that she is a fierce hunter but more importantly that there were no women to teach her to weave or to make her clothing. Since there were no tigers in Italy, *tigris* likely refers to wild cats found in ancient Italy.

2. Camilla rejects marriage, the traditional role for women

c. **sōlā contenta Diānā**, “content with Diana alone” (11.582): In the next lesson Vergil will add that many mothers hoped to have Camilla as a daughter-in-law. Why does Vergil add this detail? If Camilla had never been asked to marry, her devotion to virginity and Diana would seem less noble. The fact that she had many opportunities to marry highlights her rejection of **this traditional role**.

3. Camilla was taught the weapons of hunting before she could walk

Vergil's remark that Camilla held a spear when she was taking her **prīmīs plantīs**, “first steps,” (11.573) suggests that hunting and its weapons were part of her character. These weapons include **iaculum acutum**, “a sharp javelin” (11.574), **tēla puerila**, “javelins suited for a child” (578), **arcus et spīcula**, “bow and arrows” (575), and **funda**, “sling bullets” (579).

corpus, -oris n.: body, 14

caput, -itis n.: head, 9

vertex, -icis m.: head, peak, top, 4

pectus, -oris n.: chest, breast; heart, 4

mamma, -ae f.: breast, 1

cor, cordis n.: heart, 1

sanguis, -inis m.: blood, 7

os, ossis n.: bone, 1

stomachus, -ī m.: windpipe, stomach, 1

uterus, -ī m.: belly, 2

femur, femoris n.: thigh, leg, 1

poples, poplitis m.: (back of) knee, 1

crūs, -ūris n.: leg, shin, 1

pēs, pedis m.: foot, 5

planta, -ae f.: sole of a foot, foot, 2

tergum, -ī n.: back, rear; hide, 4

dorsum, -ī n.: back, 1

umerus, -ī m.: shoulder, 6

lacertus, -ī m.: upper arm, arm, 1

bracchium, -ī n.: arm, lower arm, 0

manus, -ūs f.: hand, 14

digitus, -ī m.: finger, 1

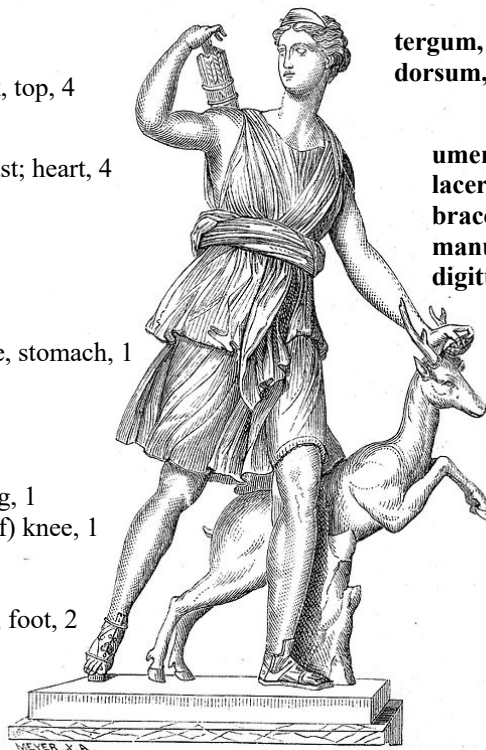


Fig. 6 Diana of Versailles

Multae illam frūstrā Tyrrhēna per oppida mātṛēs	581
optāvēre nurum: sōlā contenta Diānā	582
aeternum tēlōrum et virginitātis amōrem	583
intemerāta colit. Vellem haud correpta fuisset	584
mīlitiā tālī, cōnāta lacessere Teucrōs:	585
cāra mihi comitumque foret nunc ūna meārum.	586
Vērum age, quandōquidem fātis urgētur acerbīs,	587
lābere, nymp̄ha, polō fīnēsque invīse Latīnōs,	588
trīstis ubi īnfaustō committitur ōmine pugna.	589
Haec cape et ultrīcem pharetrā dēprōme sagittam:	590
hāc quīcumque sacrum violārit vulnere corpus,	591
Trōs Italusque, mihi pariter det sanguine poenās.	592
Post ego nūbe cavā miserandae corpus et arma	593
īnspoliāta feram tumulō patriaeque repōnam.”	594

acerbus, -a, -um: bitter, sharp
aeternus, -a, -um: eternal, everlasting, 2
cavus, -a, -um: hollow, 2
colō, -ere, coluī, cultum: farm, cultivate, 3
committō, -ere: commit, commence, arrange, 3
cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum: try, attempt
contentus, -a, -um: content, satisfied, 2
dēprōmō, -ere, -psī: draw out
Diāna (Dīāna), -ae f.: Diana (Grk. Artemis), 3
ferus, -a, -um: wild; *subs.* wild animal, 2
fīnis, -is m.: end; border, territory, 3
frūstrā: in vain, in frustration
haud: by no means
īnfaustus, -a, -um: unfortunate
īnspoliātus, -a, -um: not despoiled/stripped
intemerātus, -a, -um: unviolated, chaste, virgin
invisō, -ere: see, look upon, visit
Italus, -a, -um: Italian, 2
lābor, -ī, lapsus sum: glide, slide, slip, 3
laccessō, -ere, -īvī: provoke, harass
Latīnus, -a, -um: Latin, of Latin, 3
mīlitiā, -ae f.: military service, warfare, war
miserandus, -a, -um: pitiable; miserable,

nurus, -ūs f.: daughter-in-law
nymp̄ha, -ae f.: nymph, 3
ōmen, -inis n.: omen, auspices
oppidum, -ī n.: town, 2
optō (1): desire, choose, hope for
pariter: equally; side by side, 3
patria, -ae f.: fatherland, country, 3
pharetra, -ae f.: quiver, arrow-carrier, 3
poena, -ae f.: punishment, penalty, 2
polus, -ī m.: pole, sky, 2
quandōquidem: since indeed
quīcumque, quae-, quod-: whosoever
repōnō, -ere, -suī, -situm: put or place back, 2
sagitta, -ae f.: arrow
trīstis, -e: sad
Trōs, Trōis: Trojan, 3
tumulus, -ī m.: mound, hill
Tyrrhēnus, -a, -um: Etruscan, Tyrrhenian
ultrix, ultrīcis f.: avenging
urgeō, -ēre, ursī: drive, push, 2
violō (1): violate
virginitās, -tātis f.: maidenhood, virginity

581 **illam:** *that one;* i.e. Camilla
optāvēr(unt): 3p syncopated pf.
 582 **nurum:** *as a daughter-in-law;* acc. pred.
sōlā...Diānā: *with...;* abl. cause with contenta
 583 **tēlōrum et virginitātis:** *for...;* objective gen.
 584 **Vellem (ut) haud correpta fuisset:** *Would that she had not been seized...;* ‘I would wish that...’ Vellem introduces a subj. of wish (optative subj.), here, plpf. pass. subj. corripīō; vellem (1s impf. subj. volō) is itself a potential

subj. apodosis in a contrary to fact condition with an omitted protasis: ‘(if I were making wishes) I would wish that...’ ut is sometimes omitted. Translate as “Would that...”
 585 **mīlitiā tālī:** *by...;* abl. means, i-stem abl.
cōnāta: dep. PPP: translate as ‘having Xed’
 586 **foret nunc:** *she would now be...;* contrary to fact (pres. unreal potential); foret=esset, impf. subj. sum; fore by itself is an alternative form for fut. inf. futūrum esse, but fore + endings is

equivalent to impf. subj. sum (i.e. esset)
comitum...ūna meārum: i.e. one of the nymphs that accompanies Diana
 587 **Vērum**: *but*; adv. (adverbial acc.)
age: *come now!*; a common imperative of agō to grab attention before another imperative
urgētur: assume Camilla as subject
 588 **lābere**: *slip down*; dep. sg. imperative lābor, which is formed from a syncopated 2s (lāberis → lābere)
nymph: voc. direct address; i.e. Ōpis
polō: *from...*; i.e. Mt. Olympus; abl. place from which
invīse: sg. imperative
 589 **ubi...committitur**: *when...is commenced*; i.e. is begun; 'pugnam/proelium committere' is an idiom for 'to commence/begin a fight/battle'
īnfaustō...ōmine: *with...*; abl. of attendant circumstance or abl. abs. (add 'being' as pple)
 590 **haec**: *these things*; i.e. weapons noted below
cape...dēprōme: imperatives
pharetrā: *from...*; abl. place from which
 591 **hāc**: *with this (arrow)*; abl. means with det

quicumque...violā(ve)rit: *whosoever violates* 'will have violated' a syncopated 3s fut. pf.; translate this fut. pf. as present or pf. ('has violated') with fut. sense: the fut. pf. is a future but completed relative to the verb det.
sacrum...corpus: i.e. Camilla's
Trōs Italusque: i.e. whether Trojan or Italian; in apposition to the quicumque relative clause; it does not matter to Diana who kills her
mīhi: dat. ind. obj. or dat. of interest
 592 **det**: *let him...*; jussive pres. subj. of dō; dare poenās is an idiom for 'pay the penalty'
 593 **post**: *afterwards, later*; adv.
ego...feram...repōnam: 1s fut., ferō, repōnō
nūbe cavā: *in...*; Camilla will be concealed from human view
miserandae: *of the one (worthy) to be pitied, of the pitiable one*; i.e. Camilla; gen. sg. gerundive, with several acceptable translations
 594 **(in) tumulō**: abl. place where
 595 **patriae**: *back to...*; dat. of compound verb the patria here is the land of the Volsci, south of Latium along the western coast

Diana Blames Camilla for her own Death

In lines 584-5 Diana expresses an unfulfilled wish in which Camilla could have kept herself alive:

Vellem haud correpta fuisset
 militiā tālī, cōnāta lacessere Teucrōs

*Would that she had by no means been seized by such
 military service, having attempted to provoke the Trojans*

(1) Diana notes that, although Camilla is a hunter and the favorite of Diana, goddess of the hunt, she allowed herself to be caught up by **militiā** which is neither Camilla's nor Diana's domain of power and strength. (2) When Diana adds that Camilla attempts **lacessere**, "to provoke" the Trojans, Diana emphasizes that Camilla chose to be an aggressor and could have avoided war and death altogether.

Diana, unlike Juno, does not Attempt to Hinder Fate

Unlike Juno, who defies fate by sending the Trojans off course to Carthage in Book 1, stirs up war against the Trojans in Book 7, and intervenes on numerous occasions until the end of Book 12, Diana acknowledges the bitter fate of Camilla (*fātīs urgētur acerbīs*, 11.587) and does not defiantly resist it.

Instead, Diana finds ways within the limits of fate to honor Camilla (a) by calling on Opis to punish Camilla's killer and (b) by promising to envelope Camilla's body in a mist of invisibility so that her body will not be mistreated and she can receive a honorable burial in her homeland.

What Happens Next: Camilla's Aristeia and Death on the Battlefield (11.666-831)

An **aristeia**, "moment of excellence," is a descriptive scene in epic where a hero achieves his or her peak performance in battle. Soon after Diana sends Opis, Camilla's **aristeia** begins. When Turnus is away from battle, Camilla swiftly kills twelve (12) Trojan warriors with her javelin and battle-axe. While she is distracted by another foe, the enemy Arruns sneaks up unnoticed and kills her with his javelin. As if to show that she is the equal of Turnus, Vergil describes her death exactly as Turnus' in 12.952: "and with a groan her life fled indignant under the shades" (*vītaque...umbrās*, 11.831).

Iūnōnem intereā rēx omnipotentis Olympī	791
adloquitur fulvā pugnās dē nūbe tuentem:	792
“Quae iam finis erit, coniūnx? Quid dēnique restat?”	793
indigetem Aenēān scīs ipsa et scīre fatēris	794
dēbērī caelō fātisque ad sīdera tollī.	795
Quid struis? Aut quā spē gelidīs in nubibus haerēs?”	796
“Ventum ad suprēmum est. Terrīs agitāre vel undīs	803
Troiānōs potuistī, īnfandum accendere bellum,	804
dēformāre domum et lūctū mīscēre hymenaeōs:	805
ulterius temptāre vetō.” Sīc Iuppiter orsus;	806
sīc dea submissō contrā Sātūrnia vultū:	807
“Ista quidem quia nōta mihī tua, magne, voluntās,	808
Iuppiter, et Turnum et terrās invīta relīquī;	809

adloquor, -ī, -locūtus sum: address, speak to, 2
agitō (1): drive (repeatedly); chase, hunt
dēformō (1): deform, misshape; form, shape
dēnique: lastly, finally, 2
fateor, -ērī, fassum: confess, acknowledge
finis, -is m.: end; border, territory, 3
fulvus, -a, -um: yellow, tawny
gelidus, -a, -um: cold, icy cold
haereō, -ēre, haesī: cling, stick, adhere to (dat), 2
hymenaeus, -ī m.: wedding, 2
indigēs, -etis: native (god), deified hero
īnfandus, -a, -um: unspeakable, 2
intereā: meanwhile, in the meantime, 2
invītus, -a, -um: unwilling, 2
iste, ista, istum: that, those (of yours), 3
lūctus, -ūs m.: grief, lamentation

Bk 12: Jupiter and Juno reconcile to end the war

791 **fulvā...dē nūbe:** *down from...*;
pugnās...tuentem: (*while*)...; pres. pple
 792 **Quae...:** *What...*; interrogative with fut. sum
 794 **indigetem (esse) Aenēān:** *that Aeneas (is)...*;
 ind. disc., indigetem is the acc. pred.
ipsa: *you yourself*; 2s intensive
(tē) scīre: *that...*; ind. disc., add tē as acc. subj.
fatēris: 2s pres. dep. fateor: translate as active
 795 **(Aenēān) dēbērī caelō...tollī:** *that (Aeneas)*
is owed to the sky...; ind. disc.; pass. inf. debeō
 and tollō; i.e. owed to Olympus; dat. ind. obj.
fātis: *by...*; abl. of cause
 796 **quā spē...haerēs:** *with what hope...?*;
 Interrogative adj. with spē and abl. of cause
Jupiter continues to speak to Juno
 803 **Ventum est:** *It has come*; ‘we have come,’
 impersonal pf. pass.: translate as active

miscēō, -ēre, -uī, mīxtum: mix, 3
Olympus, -ī m.: Mt. Olympus
omnipotēns, -entis: all-powerful
ordior, -īrī, -sum: begin, undertake
restō, -āre, -stīti: remain, survive, 2
Sātūrnia, -ae f.: Saturnian one, Juno, 2
spēs, -ēī f.: hope, expectation, 3
struō, -ere, strūxī, structum: build, draw up
submitō, -ere, -mīsī: send down, lower, let go, 2
suprēmum, -a, -um: last; topmost, highmost
temptō (1): attempt; try, 2
tueor, tuērī: look on, watch, 2
ulterior, -ius: further; farther, 2
vetō, -āre, -uī, -itum: forbid, prevent
voluntās, -tātis f.: will, permission
vultus, -ūs m.: face, expression, 3

ad suprēmum: *to the end*; lit. ‘to the last’
terrīs vel undīs: *on...or on...*; abl. place where
 804 **potuistī:** 2s pf. possum; i.e. Juno
accendere, dēformāre et mīscēre: all
 complementary infs. parallel with agitāre and
 governed by potuistī
lūctū: *with...*; abl. of means
 806 **(tē) temptāre:** *that you...*; ind. disc. with vētō
orsus (est): *began*; pf. dep. ordior (not orior!)
 807 **submissō...vultū:** abl. abs.; she looks down
contrā (dīxit): *in reply*; assume a main verb
 808 **Ista quidem quia nōta (est)...voluntās:**
because that will of yours (is) known...; quia
 introduces the entire line; pf. pass. nōscō
mihī: *to...*; dat. of interest
magne...Iuppiter: voc. dir. address
 809 **et...et...:** *both...and...*
invīta: *unwillingly*; translate pred. adj. as adv.

What We Missed: Book 12.1-790

Turnus asks King Latinus to arrange a duel with Aeneas. The Rutulians and Trojans agree to settle the war with that final contest, but **Juno** intervenes yet again and urges **Juturna**, goddess of fountains and divine sister of Turnus, to help her brother. The fighting resumes. When Queen **Amata** hangs herself in despair, Turnus resolves to meet Aeneas. During the final duel, Turnus' sword breaks when he strikes Aeneas' shield, and Aeneas chases after Turnus. When Aeneas' spear misses and becomes stuck in a tree, Juturna uses the opportunity to provide Turnus with a sword. Venus also intervenes and helps free Aeneas' spear. It is at this point—while gods on both sides intervene to help Turnus and Aeneas—that Juno and Jupiter meet to reconcile their differences on Mt. Olympus.

Aeneas is Deified

The adjective **indiges** is rare, and the origin of the word remains in dispute, but it clearly refers to heroes who are deified and regarded as gods in their native land after death. The word is likely related to **indi-genus**, “native” or “born in,” from which we get the English word “indigenous.”

This is another example of **political propaganda**. Caesar Augustus and the Julian clan can claim ancestry not only from the goddess Venus but from Aeneas—who is himself worshiped as a god.

Reasons for Juno's Anger and the Conditions for Peace

Reconciliation with Jupiter allows Juno to address some, but not all, of her earlier grievances against the Trojans. Recall the reasons for Juno's anger from Book 1.22-33:

1. the future destruction of Carthage through the descendants of Troy
2. the judgment of Paris, which insulted Juno
3. the hated People (ancestors born from Jupiter's affairs)
4. the honors of kidnapped Ganymede, who rivaled Juno for Jupiter's affections

Juno must allow the descendants of Troy to destroy her beloved Carthage (#1), and she cannot change grievances #2-4, which are part of the mythical past. But, by requesting that all signs of Trojan identity—their language, their culture, and their memory—be erased over time as the Trojans intermarry with the Latins and assimilate to Latin culture, Juno offers a condition that Jupiter can readily accept and still allows Juno to preserve her honor. Since the new people will not technically be Trojans, Juno has no reason to punish them for past grievances #2-4.

nec tū mē āeriā sōlam nunc sēde vidērēs	810
dīgna indigna patī, sed flammīs cincta sub ipsā	811
stārem aciē traheremque inimīca in proelia Teucrōs.	812
Et nunc cēdō equidem pugnāsque exōsa relinquō.	818
Illud tē, nūllā fātī quod lēge tenētur,	819
prō Latīō obtestor, prō maiestāte tuōrum.	820
cum iam cōnubiīs pācem fēlicibus (estō)	821
compōnent, cum iam lēgēs et foedera iungent,	822
nē vetus indigenās nōmen mutāre Latīnōs	823
neu Trōās fierī iubeās Teucrōsque vocārī	824
aut vōcem mutāre virōs aut vertere vestem.	825
Sit Latium, sint Albānī per saecula rēgēs,	826
sit Rōmāna potēns Italā virtūte propāgō:	827
occidit, occideritque sinās cum nōmine Trōia.”	828

aciēs, -ēi f.: battleline; sword-edge; pupil, eye, 2
āerius, -a, -um: of air, airy
Albānus, -a, -um: Alban, of Alba Longa, 2
cēdō, -ere, -cessī: go (away), withdraw; yield, 2
cingō, -ere, cinxī, cinctum: belt, gird; equip, 3
compōnō, -ere, -suī: put together; calm, 2
cōnubium, -iī n.: marriage, wedlock, 3
cūctus, -a, -um: all, whole, entire
exodī, -isse, exōsus: completely hate
fēlix, -icis: happy, fortunate
fiō, fierī, factus sum: become, be made, 2
foedus, -eris n.: treaty, agreement, 2
indigena, -ae (adj.): native
indignus, -a, -um: unworthy, 2
inimicus, -a, -um: unfriendly, 3
Italus, -a, -um: Italian, 2
iungō, -ere, iunxī, iunctum: join, 2

Latīnus, -a, -um: Latin, of Latin, 3
maiestās, -tātis f.: majesty
neu (neve): nor, and not
nūllus, -a, -um: not any, no, 3
obtestor, -ārī: ask, entreat; attest, bear witness,
occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cāsus m.: fall, die, perish, 3
pāx, pācis f.: peace, 3
potēns, -entis: powerful, 2
proelium, -iī n.: battle, 3
propāgō, -inis f.: offspring, propagation
saeculum, -ī n.: age; generation, 3
sinō, -ere, sīvī, situm: allow, permit, leave, 2
trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum: drag (out), draw, 2
Trōs, Trōis: Trojan, 3
vestis, -is f.: clothing
vetus, -eris: old, former, 2
virtūs, -ūtis f.: valor, virtue, courage

810 **nec...vidērēs...stārem...traherem:** *and you would not see...I would stand...and I would draw out...;* pres. contrary to fact (pres. unreal potential) with 2s and 1s impf. subjunctive; Juno clarifies what would be happening if Jupiter’s will was not known (nōta) to her (**in**) **āeriā...sēde:** abl. place where; i.e. Mt. Olympus
mē...patī: *that I...;* ind. disc. with pres. dep. inf. patior (translate active) following vidērēs
811 **digna (et) indigna:** *things..(and) things...;* neut. acc. pl. substantives and objs. of patī
flammīs cincta: (*I*)...; PPP cingō, nom. sg. modifying Juno, the 1s subject of stārem
sub ipsā aciē: *near...*

812 **inimīca in proelia:** *into...;* acc. place to which Juno continues her speech to Jupiter
818 **cēdō equidem:** *I for my part yield/withdraw exōsa: (although) hating (it);* concessive PPP: exodī is a defective verb: translate as pres.
819 **Illud tē...obtestor:** *I ask you that thing...;* obtestor governs a double acc.
quod...tenētur: *which...;* relative with illud as the antecedent
820 **prō...prō...:** *on behalf of...;* or ‘for...’
tuōrum: *of your (people);* recall that Saturn is the ancestor of Latinus and thus the Latins
821 **cum...compōnent (et) cum...iungent:** *when they will...;* i.e. both Trojans and Latins, cum clauses with 3p fut. indicative verbs

cōnubiūs...fēlicibus: abl. means
estō: *let it be;* 3s fut. imperative sum
 823 **nē...mutāre (iubeās) neu iubeās:** *you should not...nor should you...;* neg 2s jussive subj.
vetus: 3rd decl. neut. acc. adj. with nōmen
indigenās mutāre Latīnōs...fierī...vocārī:
that the native Latīns...; ind. disc. with many
 inf. governed by iubeās; indigenās is an
 unusual 1st decl. adj. modifying the masc.
 pl. acc. subject Latīnōs
 825 **aut...mutāre virōs aut vertere:** *or that the men...or...;* ind. disc. governed by iubeās but
 with virōs as acc. subject; vertere = mutāre

vocem: *language;* the Trojan language and
 style of dress will not be adopted
 826 **Sit...Sint...Sit:** *Let there be...let there be...
 let... be...;* i.e. exist; jussive pres. subj. sum
Italā virtūte: *in...;* abl. of respect
 828 **occidit...Trōia:** *Troy fell, Troy perished;*
 3s pf. (the pres. and pf. stems are identical)
occideritque sinās...: *and you should allow
 (that) it stay fallen...;* ‘(that) it fell,’ 2s jussive
 pres. subj. sinō governing an ind. command
 with pf. subj. and missing ‘ut;’ Juno wants the
 the name and culture of Troy to die along with
 the physical city

Jussive Subjunctives in 12.824-8

Jussives are (a) in the present subjunctive and (b) express a command with “let” or “should.”

iubeās	<i>You should order...</i>
sinās	<i>You should allow...</i>
sit, sint	<i>Let...be...</i>
occiderit	<i>Let...fall already</i>

The perfect subj. is unusual but emphazies that it has already happened and Juno wishes it to continue to happen in the present (i.e. Troy has fall and let it remain fallen).

Word Building CING-, CINCT- “belt” “equip”

cingō, -ere, cinxī, cinctum: belt, gird; equip, 3
accingō, -ere, -cinxī, cinctum: belt, gird; equip, 1
cingula, -ae f.: belt, 1
balteus, -ī m.: belt, 1 (synonym)

The verb **cingere** means “put on a belt,” or “gird (oneself)” but also includes the associated activities of “tucking in clothes,” “preparing” to complete a task, and “equipping” oneself with items tied to the belt such as swords and weapons. Consider the English expression “let’s pull up our belts and get to work!” That is the activity **cingere** can express. Notice that the examples below

<u>accingunt</u> omnēs operī	<i>all prepare for the work</i>	2.235
	lit. “all put on their belts, tuck in, and prepare for the work”	
nostrīs nēquīquam <u>cingitur</u> armīs	<i>she is equipped with our weapons to no purpose</i>	11.536
	lit. “she has put on a warbelt attached with our weapons”	
(ego) flammīs <u>cincta</u>	<i>I, having been equipped with flames.</i>	12.811
	lit. “having put on a warbelt attached with flames as weapons”	

Classics scholars often use the translation “gird (oneself)” for cingere (e.g. “all girded themselves for the work” or “she was girded with our weapons”), but if “gird” is not a word that you will remember, “put on a belt” “prepare” and “equip” are the alternatives.

Notice that derivatives **suscinct**, “clearly and concisely expressed,” from **suscingō** “tuck up under the belt,” and **cinch**, “encircle or fasten with a belt” are ways to remember this stem.

Cingula and **balteus** are used as synonyms to describe Pallas’ warbelt and are both used with great significance in the final lines of the *Aeneid*.

Cūctantī telum Aenēās fatāle coruscat,	919
sortitus fortūnam oculīs, et corpore tōtō	920
ēminus intorquet. Mūrālī concita numquam	921
tormentō sīc saxa fremunt nec fulmine tantī	922
dissultant crepitūs. Volat ātrī turbīnis īnstar	923
exitium dīrum hasta ferēns ōrāsque reclūdit	924
lōricae et clipeī extrēmōs septemplexis orbēs;	925
per medium strīdēns transit femur. Incidit ictus	926
ingēns ad terram duplicātō pōplite Turnus.	927
Consurgunt gemitū Rutulī totusque remūgit	928
mōns circum et vōcem lātē nemora alta remittunt.	929

clipeus, -ī m.: (round) shield, 3
concieō, -ēre, -ī, -cītum: rouse, stir up
cōnsurgō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum: rise up
coruscō (1): brandish, move quickly
crepitus, -ūs m.: crackle, crack, clatter, crash
cūctor, -ārī, -ātus sum: delay, hesitate, 3
dīrus, -a, -um: dire, dreadful, 2
dissultō (1): jump, from, leap from
duplicō (1): fold in two, duplicate, double
ēminus: at a distance, out of hand's reach
exitium, -ī n.: destruction, ruin
fātālis, -e: deadly, fatal, 3
femur, femoris n.: thigh, leg
fortūna, -ae f.: fortune, chance, luck, 2
fremō, -ere, -uī, -itum: roar, 2
fulmen, -inis n.: thunderbolt, lightning bolt
iciō, -ere, icī, ictum: strike, hit
incidō, -ere, -cīdī: fall, fall upon, 3

Aeneas and Turnus engage in a final duel

919 **Cūctantī:** *for (the one)...*; i.e. Turnus; dat. of interest
telum fatāle: i.e. a hasta, "spear" (see l. 924)
 920 **sortitus:** dep. PPP, translate as 'having Xed'
fortūnam: *good fortune*; i.e. a good spot on Turnus' body to strike with the spear
oculīs: abl. of means
corpore tōtō: i.e. with all of his strength; abl. of means
 921 **(telum) intorquet:** weapons are hurled with a twist or spiral to make them fly straight and more accurately
mūrālī...tormentō: *by...*; abl. of means
 a catapult designed to throw rocks at walls
concita: PPP concieō with saxa
Numquam...sīc: *never in this way, never thus*; advs. modifying fremunt and dissultant
 922 **fulmine:** *from...*; abl. of source

īnstar n.: image, likeness; like + gen.
intorqueō, -ēre, -torsī, -tortum: hurl, twist, 2
lōrica, -ae f.: lorica (breastplate+backplate)
mūrālis, -e: of a wall, mural
numquam: never, 3
orbis, -is m.: coil, circle (of a shield); sphere, 3
poples, poplitis m.: knee, (back/hollow of) knee
reclūdō, -ere, reclūsī: open, disclose, reveal
remittō, -ere, -mīsī: send back, let go, 2
remūgiō, -ire: bellow/moo/echo back
Rutulī, -ōrum m.: Rutuli, Rutulians (Latin tribe)
saxum, -ī n.: rock
septemplex, -icis: seven-fold
sortior, -ī, sortītus sum: obtain (by luck or lot)
tormentum, -ī n.: catapult
trānseō, -īre, -īī, -itus: go across, cross, pierce
turbō, -binis m.: whirlwind
volō (1): fly, 3

tantī...crepitūs: nom. pl. subject
 923 **ātrī turbīnis īnstar:** *like* + gen.; or 'in the image of' + gen.
 924 **hasta:** *the spear*; subject of volat and reclūdīt
ōrās loricae: *borders of the lorica*; i.e. edges of the body armor; Vergil notes the impact on the body armor before the impact on the shield
 925 **extrēmōs...orbēs:** *the outermost of the circular layers*; i.e. the outer rim of the shield or (b) 'the furthest layer,' i.e. the spear pierced through all the multiple layers of the shield and out the back to strike Turnus
 926 **per medium...femur:** neut. acc.
ictus: PPP icīō modifying Turnus
 927 **duplicātō pōplite:** abl. abs., i.e. his knees buckle and he falls to his knees
 928 **gemitū:** *with...*; abl. of manner
 929 **circum:** *around*; adv.
lātē: adv. from lātus

What We Missed: 12.889-919

Jupiter accepts Juno's condition that the Trojan name, language, and culture be erased as the Trojans intermarry and assimilate with the Latins. In one final intervention, Juno has Juturna, goddess of fountains and sister of Turnus, refrain from helping Turnus and remove herself from the battlefield.

In the duel, Turnus throws an immense boulder which barely misses Aeneas. Aeneas in the facing page throws his spear and strikes Turnus in the thigh.

The Final Simile of the *Aeneid* in 12.921-3

When Aeneas hurls the spear that strikes Turnus, Aeneas' throw is likened to the (1) propelling of a rock from a siege machine against a city-wall and (2) the throwing of a thunderbolt.

Cūctantī telum Aenēās fatāle coruscat,	919
sortitus fortūnam oculīs, et corpore tōtō	920
ēminus intorquet. Mūrālī concita numquam	921
tormentō sic saxa fremunt nec fulmine tantī	922
dissultant crepitūs.	923

Note how appropriate these similes are. Aeneas' killing of Turnus occurs (a) while the Trojans besiege the Latin city of Laurentum and (b) after Jupiter has reconciled with Juno in Aeneas' favor. Aeneas' throw symbolizes the fall of Laurentum and the approval of thunderbolt-throwing Jupiter.

What's that Sound?

Below are words denoting sound in the commentary. Six of those words (*)—an unusually high number—are found in 12.919-29 on the facing page.

crepitus, -ūs m.: crackle, crack, clatter, crash, 1 *	conclamō (1): cry out together, shout, 1
fremō, -ere, -uī, -itum: roar, 2 *	clāmor, -ōris m.: shout, cry, scream, 2
gemitus, -ūs m.: groan, sob, lament, 4 *	fragor, -ōris m.: crash, fall
ingemō, -ere, -uī: groan, sob, sigh, 1	quirītātus, -ūs m.: scream, wail, 1
remūgiō, -īre: bellow/moo/echo back, 1 *	sībilus, -a, -um: hissing, 1
mūgītus, -ūs m.: mooing, bellowing, 1	sonō, -āre, -uī: sound, resound, roar, 2
strīdēns, -ntis: whirring, hissing, screeching, 4 *	sonitus, -ūs m.: sound, noise, clang, 2
vōx, vocis f.: voice, word, 9 *	strepitus, -ūs m.: noise, uproar, 1

Word Building: Armor and Weapons

arma, -ōrum n.: arms; weapons; tools, 10	arcus, -ūs m.: arch; bow, 2
exuviae, -ārum f.: skin, armor (that is taken off), 2	sagitta, -ae f.: arrow, 1
galea, -ae f.: helmet, 2	spīculum, -ī n.: sharp point; arrow, 1
lōrīca, -ae f.: lorica (breastplate+backplate), 1	pharetra, -ae f.: quiver, arrow-carrier, 3
clipeus, -ī m.: (round) shield, 3	gladius, -ī m.: sword, 0
scūtum, -ī n.: shield, long shield, 1	ferrum, -ī n.: iron; sword, 5
tēlum, -ī n.: spear, arrow, projectile, 8	
hasta, -ae f.: spear, 5	
hastile, -is n.: spear-shaft; spear, 1	
cuspis, -idos f.: point, spearpoint, 2	
iaculum, -ī n.: javelin, thrower, 2	

Ille humilis supplex oculōs dextramque precantem	930
prōtendēns “Equidem meruī nec dēprecor” inquit:	931
“Ūtere sorte tuā. Miserī tē sī qua parentis	932
tangere cūra potest, ōrō (fuit et tibi tālis	933
Anchīses genitor) Daunī miserēre senectae	934
et mē, seu corpus spoliātum lūmine māvis,	935
redde meīs. Vīcistī et victum tendere palmās	936
Ausonīi vīdēre; tua est Lāvīnia coniūnx,	937
Ulterius nē tende odiīs.” Stetit ācer in armīs	938
Aenēas volvēns oculōs dextramque repressit;	939

ācer, ācris, ācre: sharp; fierce, 3

Anchīsēs, -ae (acc. ēn) m.: Anchises, 2

Ausonīi, -ōrum m.: Ausonians, Italians

Daunus, -ī m.: Daunus (father of Turnus)

dēprēcor, -ārī, -ātus sum: pray/beg against

genitor, -ōris m.: begetter, father, 2

humilis, -e: on the ground; humble, 2

Lāvīnia, -ae: Lavinia (King Latinus' daughter)

mālō, mālle, māluī: prefer, 2

mereō, -ēre, -uī: deserve, merit, earn, 3

misereor, -ērī: pity, have compassion for, 2

odium, -iī n.: hatred

930 **Ille:** *that one*; i.e. Turnus

humilis: *on the ground*; nom. sg. adj.; humus is a common word for ‘ground’ in Latin

supplex: *as a suppliant*; nom. pred.

dextram precantem: *his right hand praying*; pres. pple; i.e. gesturing for all to see

931 **Equidem meruī:** *I for my part...*; supply a vague object, e.g. “it”

dēprēcor: this verb is used for prayers or begging that something not happen. Turnus here claims that he is not begging to dissuade Aeneas

932 **Ūtere:** sg. dep. imperative ūtor here ‘enjoy’ or ‘employ’ governing an abl. obj.

sorte tuā: *your lot*; i.e. your fate as victor

sī qua...cūra: *if any concern...*; after sī, nisi, num, and nē the indefinite pronoun aliquī, aliquae ‘any’ or ‘some’ loses the prefix alī-: qua is here an indefinite adj. modifying cūra
miserī...parentis: *for...*; objective gen. modifying cūra

933 **ōrō:** *I beg (you)*

fuit: pf. sum.

et: *also*; adv.

tibi: dat. of interest or possession

934 **miserēre:** *take pity on* + gen.; pres. sg. dep.

palma, -ae f.: palm, hand, 3

precor, -ārī, -ātus sum: pray, beg, 2

prōtendō, -ere, -dī: stretch forth, extend

reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditum: give back, 3

reprimō, -ere, -pressī: repress, restrain

senecta, -ae f.: old age

seu (sīve): whether, or if, 3

spoliō (1): despoil, plunder

supplex, -icis: suppliant (one begging), 2

tangō, -ere, tetigī, tactum: touch

ulterior, -ius: further; farther, 2

ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum: use; enjoy, employ (*abl.*), 3

imperative misereor governs a gen. obj.

935 **seu...māvis:** *or if...*; = sī-ve; 2s pres. mālo, which is a compound of magis + volō, velle; the first imperative suggests that Turnus be returned alive, while the second option asks that, if killed, he be returned for burial
spoliātum: PPP with 3rd decl. neut. corpus
lūmine: *from light (of life)*; metonymy and abl. of separation

936 **redde:** sg. imperative + acc. **mē** above
meīs: *to my own (people)*; i.e. family and community; dat. ind. obj.

Vīcistī: 2s pf. vincō

(mē) victum tendere palmās: *that (I)...*; ind. disc. governed by vīdēr(unt); PPP vincō modifies the understood acc. subject mē. Extending one’s hand is a gesture of surrender.

937 **vīdēr(unt):** 3p syncopated pf.

tua est Lāvīnia coniūnx: the war was fought, in part, to decide who would marry Lavinia and *de facto* become king of the Latins

938 **nē tende:** *Don’t...*; a negative imperative; ulterius is a comparative adv. of adj. ulterior

odiīs: *with...*; abl. of manner

939 **stetit:** pf. stō, stāre

Turnus Surrenders Publicly and Pleads for his Life

After Turnus speaks, Aeneas restrains his right hand and hesitates from killing him. Turnus' speech proves to be effective and deserves a careful reading. Note that the hand gestures, "dextram precantem" in 12.930 and "victum tendere palmās" in 12.936, signal to the Rutulians and Trojans who are watching the duel that Turnus has publicly surrendered, and the acknowledgement "tua est Lāvīnia coniūnx" proves that Turnus no longer poses any threat to Aeneas.

Aeneas as Achilles, Turnus as Hector

Vergil imitates the *Iliad* throughout Books 7-12, and this final duel is no different. This exchange between Turnus and Aeneas recalls a similar scene after the duel between **Hector** and **Achilles** in Book 22 of the *Iliad*. Achilles had just stabbed Hector with a spear in the neck, and as Hector lies dying, he pleads with Achilles to return his body to his parents for burial. Achilles refuses and, after Hector perishes, ties Hector's body behind his chariot and drags it around the walls of Troy daily.

Word Building: PREC- "pray"

precor is translated as "pray" or "beg" depending on whether the person addressed is a god or a human. **dēprecor** means to **pray** that something not happen. Note the concentration of three verbs of prayer in the first four lines 12.930-33.

precor, -ārī, -ātus sum: pray, beg, 2 *

dēprēcor, -ārī, -ātus sum: pray/beg against, 1 *

precēs, -um: prayer, entreaty, 1

ōrō (1): plead, beg; pray for, 6 *

voveō, -ēre: vow, pray, 1

"Pray" and "self-deprecating" are common derivatives that will help you retain the verb **precor**.

Deponent Imperatives

Deponent imperatives use the present tense 2nd person sg. and pl. forms, but in the singular the final -is (e.g. *ūteris, miserēris*) is shortened to -e. The form looks like an infinitive but it is not.

<i>ūtor, ūtī</i>	ūtere	ūtemini	<i>enjoy/use (abl.)!</i>	12.932
<i>lābor, lābī</i>	lābere	lābemini	<i>slip/glide down</i>	11.588
<i>misereor, miserēri</i>	miserēre	miserēmini	<i>take pity on (gen.)!</i>	12.934

Deponent imperatives are used 4 times in this commentary. **Miserēre** is also used in 4.318 (p. 100).

Word Building: VOL-, VUL- "want"

mālō, "prefer," is formed from **magis + volō**, "want more." **Māvīs** is 2nd sg. present (*māgis + vīs*).

volō, velle, voluī: want, wish, be willing, 7

mālō, mālī, māluī: prefer, 2

nōlō, nōlle, nolūī: not want, 0

Volō and its compound verbs have an irregular present tense.

volō, velle: want

mālō, mālī: prefer (want more)

1st *vōlō* *volumus*

mālō *mālumus*

2nd *vīs* *vultis*

māvīs *māvultis*

3rd *vult* *volunt*

māvult *mālunt*

Et iam iamque magis cūctantem flectere sermō	940
coeperat, infēlix umerō cum apparuit altō	941
balteus et nōtis fulsērunt cingula bullīs	942
Pallantis puerī, victum quem vulnere Turnus	943
strāverat atque umerīs inimīcum īnsigne gerēbat.	944
Ille, oculīs postquam saevī monimenta dolōris	945
exuviāsque hausit, furiīs accensus et irā	946
terribilis: “Tūne hinc spoliīs indūte meōrum	947
ēripiāre mihi? Pallās tē hōc vulnere, Pallās	948
immolat et poenam scelerātō ex sanguine sūmit.”	949
Hoc dīcēns ferrum adversō sub pectore condit	950
fervidus; ast illī solvuntur frīgore membra	951
vītaque cum gemitū fugit indignāta sub umbrās.	952

appareō, -ēre, -uī, -itum: appear, 3
balteus, -ī m.: belt
bullā, -ae f.: button, knob, stud (on belt)
cingula, -ae f.: belt
cūctor, -ārī, -ātus sum: delay, hesitate, 3
dolor, -ōris m.: pain, grief, 3
exuviae, -ārum f.: skin, armor (that taken off), 2
fervidus, -a, -um: glowing hot, fiery, raging
flectō, -ere, -xī, -ctum: bend, turn, 3
frīgus, -oris n.: cold, 2
fulgeō, -ēre, -fulsī: flash, shine, 2
furia, -ae f.: madness, fury
hauriō, -īre, hausī: drain, exhaust, 3
immolō (1): sacrifice, immolate
indignor, -ārī, -ātus sum: be indignant/resentful

940 **iam iamque:** *just now*; or ‘again and again’
the repetition of iam makes it emphatic
magis cunctantem: *the (one)...*; i.e. Aeneas,
941 **(in) umerō...altō:** *on...*; i.e. Turnus’
cum apparuit...: *when...*; temporal cum clause
942 **nōtis...bullīs:** *with its well-known knobs*; abl.
means; bronze knobs recognizable as Pallas’
943 **Pallantis puerī:** gen. modifying bullīs
victum quem...strāverat...: *whom...*; relative
clause with plpf. sternō and PPP vincō
944 **strāverat:** *had laid low*; plpf. sternō
(in) umerīs
gerēbat: *(Turnus) was wearing*
945 **Ille:** *that one*; i.e. Aeneas
postquam hausit: *after he consumed*; i.e. saw
946 **furiīs:** abl. means; furia, ‘madness,’ or ‘fury’
is often contrasted directly with piētās, ‘piety’
or ‘devotion’ throughout the epic
accensus: PPP accendō

induō, -ere, -duī, -dūtum: put on, clothe, 3
inimīcus, -a, -um: unfriendly, 3
īnsignis, -e: distinguished, marked, 2
membrum, -ī n.: limb, 2
monimentum (monumentum), -ī n.: reminder
ne (-ne): (indicates a yes/no question), 3
Pallās, Pallantis m.: Pallas (male), 3
poena, -ae f.: punishment, penalty, 2
postquam: after, 2
scelerātus, -a, -um: wicked, criminal, 2
spolium, -ī n.: spoils, plunder
sūmō, -ere, sumpsī, sumptum: take, spend, 2
terribilis, -e: terrible, terrifying, 2
vīta, -ae f.: life, 3

irā: *with...*; abl. of cause with **terribilis**
947 **Tūne...ēripiār(is):** *Are you to be...*;
deliberative subj. with syncopated 2s pres.
pass. subj.; ēripiō means ‘snatch away’ but is
often, as here, interpreted as ‘rescue’
spoliīs: *in...*; dat. of compound verb
indūte: *having been clothed*; PPP induō, and
voc. dir. address
meōrum: *of my own (people)*; i.e. Pallas
948 **mihi:** *from...*; dat. of compound verb with
ēripiār(is)
hōc vulnere: abl. means, the wound to come
949 **poenam...sūmit:** *exacts punishment*
950 **Hoc:** i.e. the words quoted above; neut. acc.
condit: *buries*; the verb means ‘puts away’
or ‘buries’ in addition to ‘found’ or ‘establish’
951 **ast:** *but*; adversative, equiv. to the word ‘at’
illī: *that one’s*; i.e. Turnus; dat. of possession
solvuntur: *are loosened*; i.e. grow slack

The Significance of the Armor: an Imitation of the *Iliad*

In the *Iliad*, young Patroclus puts on Achilles' armor and joins the battle when Achilles, angry at the Greek King Agamemnon, refuses to fight. Both Trojans and Greeks think that Patroclus is Achilles, until Patroclus is killed, and his identity is revealed. After Hector kills Patroclus in Book 16, he puts Achilles' armor on himself and wears it for the remainder of the *Iliad*. And so, when Achilles finally rejoins the battle with the sole purpose of killing Hector and avenging young Patroclus, the armor that Hector wears in the duel (Book 22) serves as a provocation for Achilles' murderous rage.

Pallas' belt (**balteus**, **cingula**) serves a similar purpose for Aeneas.

Turnus' Death is not a Predictable Imitation of the *Iliad*

As we mentioned on p. 81, Vergil's imitation of the *Odyssey* and *Iliad* is an example of originality in art and literature that was quite common in the Greco-Roman world. Many authors would imitate their predecessors in large and small ways and then offer variations or twists to distinguish their own work from what came before. Vergil uses the imitation not only to embed the *Aeneid* in the tradition of Homer's epics but also to make intelligible how the *Aeneid* rivals and surpasses its predecessors.

Turnus's death was not predictable for Vergil's readers. Those familiar with the *Iliad* know that the duel between Hector and Achilles in Book 22 is not the end of the epic. In Book 24, the Trojan King Priam sneaks through the Greek camp at night to Achilles' tent to plead for the return of Hector's body. In a very moving conversation between Priam and Achilles, both men recognize their common suffering as fathers and sons (Priam lost Hector; Achilles will never see his father Peleus). Achilles shows respect by sending King Priam off safely with Hector's body, and the last line of the epic describes Hector's burial.

In short, the *Iliad* ends with **reconciliation** and the **recognition of common suffering between enemies**. Turnus' speech hints at this possible ending when he asks Aeneas to take pity on his father Daunus and reminds Aeneas of his own father Anchises. And so, readers of the *Iliad* have some expectation that Aeneas will show the same restraint that Achilles shows toward Priam.

Furia vs. Pietās

Furia, often translated as "madness," "rage," or simply "fury," is an unrestrained emotion that leads to a lack of self control and actions that are the opposite of **pietas**, "a devotion to family, community, and the gods." *Furia* and *pietas* are key terms in the *Aeneid*, but are surprisingly rare in the selections chosen for this commentary. *Pietas* is a defining feature for Aeneas as a Roman epic hero, while *furia* frequently leads individuals in the epic—whether it is Dido, Juno, Turnus or even Aeneas—to behave in ways contrary to *pietas*.

It is not surprising, therefore, to see the word *furia* or *pietas* appear in the closing of the epic. The sight of the belt leads Aeneas to be motivated by *furia* before he offers a final speech and kills Turnus:

furiīs accensus et irā terribilis *enflamed by madness and terrible in anger* 12.946

Furia is not just a synonym for "very angry." By giving into *furia*, Vergil is suggesting that Aeneas is acting contrary to the ideal of *pietas* that Aeneas strove to uphold throughout the epic.

Glossary

	<u>1st Declension</u>		<u>2nd Declension (m.)</u>		<u>2nd Declension (n.)</u>	
Nom.	terra	terrae	oculus	oculī	fātum	fāta
Gen.	terrae	terrārum	oculī	oculōrum	fātī	fātōrum
Dat.	terrae	terrīs	oculō	oculīs	fātō	fātīs
Acc.	terram	terrās	oculum	oculōs	fātum	fāta
Abl.	terrā	terrīs	oculō	oculīs	fātō	fātīs
	<u>3rd Declension (m/f)</u>				<u>3rd Declension (n.)</u>	
Nom.	amor	amorēs			corpus	corpora
Gen.	amoris	amorum			corporis	corporum
Dat.	amorī	amoribus			corporī	corporibus
Acc.	amore m	amorēs			corpus	corpora
Abl.	amore	amoribus			corpore	corporibus
	<u>4th Declension (m/f)</u>				<u>4th Declension (n.)</u>	
Nom.	manus	manūs			cornū	cornua
Gen.	manūs	manuum			cornūs	cornuum
Dat.	manuī	manibus			cornū	cornuibus
Acc.	manum	manūs			cornū	cornua
Abl.	manū	manibus			cornū	cornuibus
	<u>5th Declension (m/f)</u>					
Nom.	diēs	diēs				
Gen.	diēī	diērum				
Dat.	diēī	diēbus				
Acc.	diem	diēs				
Abl.	diē	diēbus				

3rd I-Stem Adjectives and Nouns

	omnis, omne: every, all			ignis, is f.: fire		mare, -is n.: sea	
	m/f.		neut.				
Nom.	omnis	omnēs	omne	omnia	ignis	ignēs	mare maria
Gen.	omnis	omnium	omnis	omnium	ignis	ignium	maris marium
Acc.	omnī	omnibus	omnī	omnibus	ignī	ignibus	marī maribus
Acc.	omnem	omnēs	omne	omnia	ignem	ignēs	mare maria
Abl.	omnī	omnibus	omnī	omnibus	ignī	ignibus	marī maribus

Demonstrative

Nom.	is	<i>he</i>	ea	<i>she</i>	id	<i>it</i>
Gen.	eius	<i>his</i>	eius	<i>her</i>	eius	<i>its</i>
Dat.	eī	<i>to/for him</i>	eī	<i>to/for her</i>	eī	<i>to/for it</i>
Acc.	eum	<i>him</i>	eam	<i>her</i>	id	<i>it</i>
Abl.	eō	<i>with/from him</i>	eā	<i>with/from her</i>	eō	<i>with/from it</i>
Nom.	eī	<i>they</i>	eae	<i>they</i>	ea	<i>they</i>
Gen.	eōrum	<i>their</i>	eārum	<i>their</i>	eōrum	<i>their</i>
Dat.	eīs	<i>to/for them</i>	eīs	<i>to/for them</i>	eīs	<i>to/for them</i>
Acc.	eōs	<i>them</i>	eās	<i>them</i>	ea	<i>them</i>
Abl.	eīs	<i>with/from them</i>	eīs	<i>with/from them</i>	eīs	<i>with/from them</i>

* *is, ea, id* is a demonstrative and is often translated as “this/that” in the singular and “these/those” in the plural.

Relative Pronoun

Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae	<i>who, which, that</i>
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	<i>whose, of whom/which</i>
Dat.	cuī	cuī	cuī	quibus	quibus	quibus	<i>to whom/which</i>
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae	<i>whom, which, that</i>
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus	<i>by/with/from whom/which</i>

Demonstrative Pronouns

Nom.	ille	illa	illud	<i>that</i>	hic	haec	hoc	<i>this</i>
Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus	<i>of that</i>	huius	huius	huius	<i>of this</i>
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	<i>to/for that</i>	huic	huic	huic	<i>to/for this</i>
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	<i>that</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc	<i>this</i>
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	<i>with/from that</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	<i>with/from this</i>
Nom.	illī	illae	illa	<i>those</i>	hī	hae	haec	<i>these</i>
Gen.	illōrum	illārum	illōrum	<i>of those</i>	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	<i>of these</i>
Dat.	illīs	illīs	illīs	<i>to those</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs	<i>to these</i>
Acc.	illōs	illās	illa	<i>those</i>	hōs	hās	haec	<i>these</i>
Abl.	illīs	illīs	illīs	<i>with/from those</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs	<i>with/from these</i>

Regular Degrees of Adjectives and Adverbs

Decl.	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
1 st /2 nd	altus, -a, -um <i>high</i>	altior, altius <i>higher</i>	altissimus, -a, -um <i>highest, very high</i>
adv.	altē <i>deeply</i>	altius <i>more deeply</i>	altissimē <i>very deeply</i>
3 rd	fortis, forte <i>brave</i>	fortior, fortius <i>braver, more brave</i>	fortissimus, -a, -um <i>bravest, most brave, very brave</i>
adv.	fortiter <i>bravely</i>	fortius <i>more bravely</i>	fortissimē <i>very bravely</i>

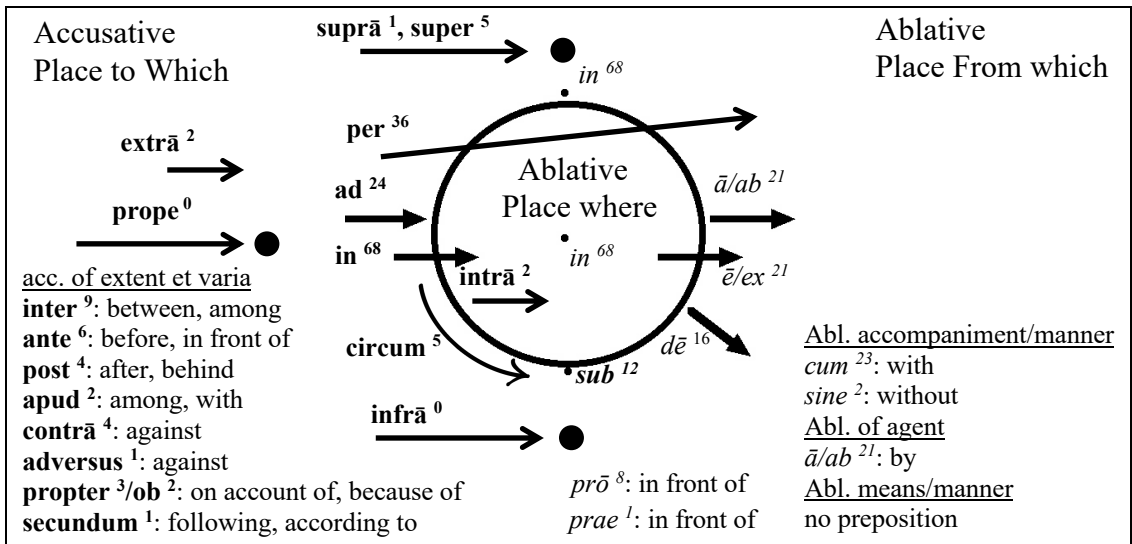
Irregular Degrees of Adjectives and Frequencies

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bonus, -a, -um ¹ <i>good</i>	melior, melius ¹ <i>better</i>	optimus, -a, -um ⁰ <i>best</i>
malus, -a, -um ⁶ <i>bad</i>	peior, peius ⁰ <i>worse</i>	pessimus, -a, -um ⁰ <i>worst</i>
magnus, -a, -um ¹⁷ <i>great</i>	maior, maius ¹ <i>greater</i>	maximus, -a, -um ⁴ <i>greatest</i>
parvus, -a, -um ³ <i>small</i>	minor, minus ⁵ <i>smaller</i>	minus, -a, -um ⁰ <i>smallest</i>
multus, -a, -um ¹⁶ <i>much, many</i>	plus. plūris ³ <i>more</i>	plurimus, -a, -um ² <i>most</i>

Irregular Adjectives (rare or no positive degree)

(no Positive adj.)	Comparative	Superlative
~prae ¹ <i>in front of</i>	prior, prius ³ <i>former, first</i>	p̄rimus, -a, -um ²⁰ <i>first, foremost</i>
~ultrā ¹ <i>beyond</i>	ulterior, ulterius ² <i>farther, further</i>	ultimus, -a, -um ² <i>farthest, furthest, last</i>
~prope ⁰ <i>near</i>	propior, proprius ³ <i>nearer</i>	proximus, -a, -um ⁴ <i>nearest</i>
~intrā ² <i>inside</i>	interior, interius ¹ <i>inner</i>	intimus, -a, -um ⁰ <i>innermost</i>
~extrā ² exterus ¹ <i>outside</i>	exterior, exterius ⁰ <i>outer</i>	extrēmus, -a, -um ⁴ <i>outermost</i>
~suprā ¹ , superus ³ <i>high, above</i>	superior, superius ¹ <i>higher, upper</i>	suprēmus, -a, -um ¹ summus, -a, -um ⁸ <i>highest, upmost, top of</i>

Prepositions

prepositions with accusative

ad: to, toward, at, near, about (*acc.*), 24

adversus: against, 1

ante: before, in front of (*acc.*), 6

apud: with, among, at the house of, 2

circum: around, about (*acc.*), 5

contrā: opposite, facing (*acc.*), 4

extrā: outside, beyond (*acc.*), 2

inter: between, among (*acc.*), 9

intrā: inside, within (*acc.*), 2

per: through, over, 36

post: after, behind (*acc.*), 4

secundum: following, according to (*acc.*), 1

super: above, over, on top; upon (*acc.*), 5

suprā: above, over (*acc.*), 1

prepositions with ablative

ā, ab, abs: from, away from, by (*abl.*), 21

cum: with; when, since, although, 23

dē: (down) from, about, concerning, 16

ē, ex: out of, from (*abl.*), 21

in: in, on, among (*abl.*); into, against (*acc.*), 68

prae: in front of, before (*abl.*), 1

prō: before; for, in behalf of (*abl.*), 8

sine: without (*abl.*), 2

sub: under (*abl.*); underneath (*acc.*), 12

amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum: to love

	active		translation	passive		translation
Indicative						
Pres.	amō	amāmus	<i>I love</i>	amor	amāmur	<i>I am (being) loved</i>
	amās	amātis		amāris	amāminī	
	amat	amant		amātur	amantur	
Impf.	amābam	amābāmus	<i>I was loving</i>	amābar	amābāmur	<i>I was (being) loved</i>
	amābās	amābātis		amābāris	amābāminī	
	amābat	amābant		amābātur	amābantur	
Fut.	amābō	amābimur	<i>I will love</i>	amābor	amābimur	<i>I will be loved</i>
	amābis	amābitis		amāberis	amābiminī	
	amābit	amābunt		amābitur	amābuntur	
Perf.	amāvī	amāvimus	<i>I have loved</i>	amāta sum	amātae sumus	<i>I have been loved</i>
	amāvistī	amāvistis		amāta es	amātae estis	<i>was loved</i>
	amāvit	amāverunt		amāta est	amātae sunt	
Plpf.	amāveram	amāverāmus	<i>I had loved</i>	amāta eram	amātae erāmus	<i>I had been loved</i>
	amāverās	amāverātis		amāta erās	amātae erātis	
	amāverat	amāverant		amāta erat	amātae erant	
Fut. Pf	amāverō	amāverimus	<i>I will have loved</i>	amāta erō	amātae erimus	<i>I will have been loved</i>
	amāveris	amāveritis	<i>loved</i>	amāta eris	amātae eritis	<i>loved</i>
	amāverit	amāverint		amāta erit	amātae erunt	

Subjunctive

Pres.	amem	amēmus	same as indicative	amer	amēmur	same as indicative
	amēs	amētis		amēris	amēminī	
	amet	ament		ametur	amentur	
Impf.	amārem	amārēmus		amārer	amārēmur	
	amārēs	amārētis		amārēris	amārēminī	
	amāret	amārent		amāretur	amārentur	
Perf.	amāverim	amāverīmus		amāta sim	amātae sīmus	
	amāverīs	amāverītis		amāta sīs	amātae sītis	
	amāverit	amāverint		amāta sit	amātae sint	
Plpf.	amāvissē	amāvissēmus		amāta essem	amātae essēmus	
	amāvissēs	amāvissētis		amāta essēs	amātae essētis	
	amāvisset	amāvissent		amāta esset	amātae essent	

Imperative

amā amāte *love!*

Participle

Pres.	amāns (<i>gen. amantis</i>)	<i>loving</i>			
Perf.				amātus, -a, -um	<i>having been loved</i>
Fut.	amātūrus, -a, -um	<i>going to love</i>		amandus, -a, -um	<i>going to be loved</i>

Infinitive

Pres.	amāre	<i>to love</i>	amārī	<i>to be love</i>
Perf.	amāvisse	<i>to have loved</i>	amātum esse	<i>to have been loved</i>
Fut.	amātūrum esse	<i>to be going to loved</i>		

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum: to hold

	active	translation	passive	translation
Indicative				
Pres.	teneō tenēmus tenēs tenētis tenet tenent	<i>I hold</i>	teneor tenēmur tenēris tenēminī tenētur tenentur	<i>I am (being) held</i>
Impf.	tenēbam tenēbāmus tenēbās tenēbātis tenēbat tenēbant	<i>I was holding</i>	tenēbar tenēbāmur tenēbāris tenēbāminī tenēbātur tenēbantur	<i>I was (being) held</i>
Fut.	tenēbō tenēbimus tenēbis tenēbitis tenēbit tenēbunt	<i>I will hold</i>	tenēbor tenēbimur tenēberis tenēbiminī tenēbitur tenēbuntur	<i>I will be held</i>
Perf.	tenuī tenuimus tenuistī tenuistis tenuit tenuērunt	<i>I have held</i>	tenta sum tentae sumus tenta es tentae estis tenta est tentae sunt	<i>I have been held was held</i>
Plpf.	tenueram tenuerāmus tenuerās tenuerātis tenuerat tenuerant	<i>I had held</i>	tenta eram tentae erāmus tenta erās tentae erātis tenta erat tentae erant	<i>I had been held</i>
Fut. Pf.	tenuerō tenuerimus tenueris tenueritis tenuerit tenuerint	<i>I will have held</i>	tenta erō tentae erimus tenta eris tentae eritis tenta erit tentae erunt	<i>I will have been held</i>

Subjunctive

Pres.	teneam teneāmus teneās teneātis teneat teneant	same as	tenear teneāmur teneāris teneāminī teneatur teneantur	same as indicative
Impf.	tenērem tenērēmus tenērēs tenērētis tenēret tenērent		tenērer tenērēmur tenērēris tenērēminī tenērētur tenērentur	
Perf.	tenuerim tenuerīmus tenuerīs tenuerītis tenuerit tenuerint		tenta sim tentae sīmus tenta sīs tentae sītis tenta sit tentae sint	
Plpf.	tenuissem tenuissēmus tenuissēs tenuissētis tenuisset tenuissent		tenta essem tentae essēmus tenta essēs tentae essētis tenta esset tentae essent	

Imperative

tenē tenēte *hold!*

Participle

Pres.	tenēns (<i>gen. tenentis</i>)	<i>holding</i>		
Perf.			tentus, -a, -um	<i>having been held</i>
Fut.	tentūrus, -a, -um	<i>going to hold</i>	tenendus, -a, -um	<i>going to be held</i>

Infinitive

Pres.	tenēre	<i>to hold</i>	tenērī	<i>to be held</i>
Perf.	tenuisse	<i>to have held</i>	tentum esse	<i>to have been held</i>
Fut.	tentūrum esse	<i>to be going to hold</i>		

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum: to lead

	active		translation	passive		translation
Indicative						
Pres.	dūcō dūcis dūcit	dūcimus dūcitis dūcunt	<i>I lead</i>	dūcor dūceris dūcitur	dūcimur dūciminī dūcuntur	<i>I am (being) led</i>
Impf.	dūcēbam dūcēbās dūcēbat	dūcēbāmus dūcēbātis dūcēbant	<i>I was leading</i>	dūcēbar dūcēbāris dūcēbātur	dūcēbāmur dūcēbāminī dūcēbantur	<i>I was (being) led</i>
Fut.	dūcam dūcēs dūcet	dūcēmus dūcētis dūcent	<i>I will lead</i>	dūcar dūceris dūcētur	dūcēmur dūcēminī dūcentur	<i>I will be led</i>
Perf.	dūxī dūxistī dūxit	dūximus dūxistis dūxērunt	<i>I have led</i>	ducta sum ducta es ducta est	ductae sumus ductae estis ductae sunt	<i>I have been led</i>
Plpf.	dūxeram dūxerās dūxerat	dūxerāmus dūxerātis dūxerant	<i>I had led</i>	ducta eram ducta erās ducta erat	ductae erāmus ductae erātis ductae erant	<i>I had been led</i>
Fut.. Pf.	dūxerō dūxeris dūxerit	dūxerimus dūxeritis dūxerint	<i>I will have led</i>	ducta erō ducta eris ducta erit	ductae erimus ductae eritis ductae erunt	<i>I will have been led</i>

Subjunctive

Pres.	dūcam dūcās dūcat	dūcāmus dūcātis dūcant	same as indicative	dūcar dūcāris dūcātur	dūcāmur dūcāminī dūcantur	same as indicative
Impf.	dūcerem dūcerēs dūceret	dūcerēmus dūcerētis dūcerent		dūcerer dūcerēris dūcerētur	dūcerēmur dūcerēminī dūcerentur	
Perf.	dūxerim dūxeris dūxerit	dūxerimus dūxeritis dūxerint		ducta sim ducta sis ducta sit	ductae simus ductae sitis ductae sint	
Plpf.	dūxissem dūxissēs dūxisset	dūxissēmus dūxissētis dūxissent		ducta essem ducta essēs ducta esset	ductae essēmus ductae essētis ductae essent	

Imperative

dūc(e) dūcite *lead!*

Participle

Pres.	dūcēns (<i>gen. dūcentis</i>)	<i>leading</i>		
Perf.			ductus, -a, -um	<i>having been led</i>
Fut.	ductūrus, -a, -um	<i>going to lead</i>	dūcendus, -a, -um	<i>going to be led</i>

Infinitive

Pres.	dūcere	<i>to lead</i>	dūcī	<i>to be led</i>
Perf.	dūxisse	<i>to have led</i>	ductum esse	<i>to have been led</i>
Fut.	ductūrum esse	<i>to be going to lead</i>		

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum: to know

	active		translation	passive		translation
Indicative						
Pres.	sciō scīs scit	scīmus scītis sciunt	<i>I know</i>	scior scīris scītur	scīmur scīminī sciuntur	<i>I am (being) known</i>
Impf.	sciēbam sciēbās sciēbat	sciēbāmus sciēbātis sciēbant	<i>I was knowing</i>	sciēbar sciēbāris sciēbātur	sciēbāmur sciēbāminī sciēbantur	<i>I was (being) known</i>
Fut.	sciam sciēs sciet	sciēmus sciētis scient	<i>I will know</i>	sciar sciēris sciētur	sciēmur sciēminī scientur	<i>I will be known</i>
Perf.	scīvi scīvistī scīvit	scīvimus scīvistis scīvērunt	<i>I have known</i>	scīta sum scīta es scīta est	scītae sumus scītae estis scītae sunt	<i>I have been known</i>
Plpf.	scīveram scīverās scīverat	scīverāmus scīverātis scīverant	<i>I had known</i>	scīta eram scīta erās scīta erat	scītae erāmus scītae erātis scītae erant	<i>I had been known</i>
Fut. Pf.	scīverō scīveris scīverit	scīverimus scīveritis scīverint	<i>I will have known</i>	scīta erō scīta eris scīta erit	scītae erimus scītae eritis scītae erunt	<i>I will have been known</i>

Subjunctive

Pres.	sciam sciās sciat	sciāmus sciātis sciant	same as indicative	sciar sciāris sciātur	sciāmur sciāminī sciantur	same as indicative
Impf.	scīrem scīrēs scīret	scīrēmus scīrētis scīrent		scīrer scīrēris scīrētur	scīrēmur scīrēminī scīrentur	
Perf.	scīverim scīverīs scīverit	scīverīmus scīverītis scīverint		scīta sim scīta sīs scīta sit	scītae sīmus scītae sītis scītae sint	
Plpf.	scīvissem scīvissēs scīvisset	scīvissēmus scīvissētis scīvissent		scīta essem scīta essēs scīta esset	scītae essēmus scītae essētis scītae essent	

Imperative

scī scīte *know!*

Participle

Pres.	sciēns (gen. scientis)	<i>knowing</i>		
Perf.			scītus, -a, -um	<i>having been known</i>
Fut.	scītūrus, -a, -um	<i>going to know</i>	sciendus, -a, -um	<i>going to be known</i>

Infinitive

Pres.	scīre	<i>to know</i>	scīrī	<i>to be known</i>
Perf.	scīvisse	<i>to have known</i>	scītum esse	<i>to have been known</i>
Fut.	scītūrum esse	<i>to be going to know</i>		

Sum, esse, fuī, futūrum: to be			possum, posse, potuī, -- : to be able, can		
		translation			translation
Indicative					
Pres.	sum es est sumus estis sunt	<i>I am</i>	possum potes potest possumus potestis possunt		<i>I am able, can</i>
Impf.	eram erās erat erāmus erātis erant	<i>I was</i>	poteram poterās poterat poterāmus poterātis poterant		<i>I was able, could</i>
Fut.	erō eris erit erimus eritis erunt	<i>I will be</i>	poterō poteris poterit poterimus poteritis poterunt		<i>I will be able</i>
Perf.	fuī fuistī fuit fuimus fuistis fuērunt	<i>I have been, I was</i>	potuī potuistī potuit potuimus potuistis potuērunt		<i>I have been able, I was able, could</i>
Plpf.	fueram fuerās fuerat fuerāmus fuerātis fuerant	<i>I had been</i>	potueram potuerās potuerat potuerāmus potuerātis potuerant		<i>I had been able</i>
Fut. Pf.	fuerō fueris fuerit fuerimus fueritis fuerint	<i>I will have been</i>	potuerō potueris potuerit potuerimus potueritis potuerint		<i>I will have been able</i>
Subjunctive					
Pres.	sim sīs sit sīmus sītis sint	same as indicative	possim possīs possit possīmus possītis possint		same as indicative
Impf.	essem essēs esset essēmus essētis essent		possem possēs posset possēmus possētis possent		
Perf.	fuerim fuerīs fuerit fuerīmus fuerītis fuerint		potuerim potuerīs potuerit potuerīmus potuerītis potuerint		
Plpf.	fuissem fuissēs fuisset fuissēmus fuissētis fuissent		potuissem potuissēs potuisset potuissēmus potuissētis potuissent		
Imperative					
	xxx		xxx		
Infinitive					
Pres.	esse	<i>to be</i>	posse		<i>to be able</i>
Perf.	fuisse	<i>to have been</i>	potuisse		<i>to have been heard</i>
Fut.	futūrum esse	<i>to be going to be</i>	----		

sum, esse, fuī, futūrum: be, 96

adsum, -esse, -fuī: be present, assist (*dat.*), 1

dēsum, -esse, -fuī: fail, be lacking, 2

insum, -esse, -fuī: be in, 1

intersum, -esse, -fuī: be in, take part in, 2

possum, posse, potuī: be able, can, 16

eō, ire, iī, itūrum: go

	active	translation
Indicative		
Pres.	eō īmus īs ītis it eunt	<i>I go</i>
Impf.	ībam ībāmus ībās ībātis ībat ībant	<i>I was going</i>
Fut.	ībō ībimus ībīs ībitis ībīt ībunt	<i>I will go</i>
Perf.	iī iimus īstī īstis iit iērunt	<i>I went, have gone</i>
Plpf.	ieram ierāmus ierās ierātis ierat ierant	<i>I had gone</i>
Fut. Pf.	ierō ierimus ierīs ieritis ierīt ierint	<i>I will have gone</i>

Subjunctive

Pres.	eam eāmus eās eātis eat eant	same as indicative
Impf.	īrem īrēmus īrēs īrētis īret īrent	
Perf.	ierim ierimus ierīs ieritis ierīt ierunt	
Plpf.	īssem īssēmus īssēs īssētis īsset īssent	

Imperative

ī īte

Participle

Pres.	iēns (euntis)	<i>going</i>
Perf.	---	
Fut.	itūus, -a, -um	<i>going to go</i>

Infinitive

Pres.	īre	<i>to go</i>
Perf.	īsse	<i>to have gone</i>
Fut.	itūrum esse	<i>to be going to go</i>

Compound verbs

eō, ire, iī, itum: go, come, 7
abeō, -ire, -iī, -itus: go away, 3
adeō, -ire, iī, itus: go to, approach, 4
obeō, -ire, -iī, -itus: go to/against, die, 1
praetereō, -ire, -iī: go pass, pass, 1
redeō, -ire, -ivi: go back, return, 1
subeō, -ire, -iī, -itus: approach, undergo, 2
trānseō, -ire, -iī, -itus: go across, cross, 1

Uses of the Subjunctive in *College Pliny and Vergil*

There are **90 dependent and 12 independent subjunctive constructions labeled in this commentary**. To make it less overwhelming, classify these subjunctives into four major groups: (1) 39 Ut clauses (purpose, result, ind. command) use pres. and impf. subj. with modal “**may/might**” just in purpose clauses. (2) 14 Contrary to fact constructions use impf. and plpf. subj. with modal verbs “**were/would**” or “**had/would have**.” (3) 23 relative/interrogative clauses (ind. question, relative clause of characteristic) use all tenses of subjunctive: ind. questions have no special translation, but rel. of characteristic uses the modal “**would**.” Finally, (4) the 8 cum and concessive clauses are easy to identify by the conjunctions (cum, quamvis, licet) and have no special translation.

<u>Dependent Clauses</u>	<u>Independent Clauses</u>
14 Contrary to Fact	4 Cum clause
14 Indirect Question	4 Concessive clause
13 Purpose	3 Indirect exclamatory sentence
10 Relative Clause of Characteristic	2 Anticipatory clause
8 Indirect Command	2 General condition/relative
8 Result Clause	1 Future less vivid
8 Subordinate Verb in Ind. Disc.	

How to identify

special translation?

1. Contrary to Fact¹⁴ **si impf./plpf. subj., impf./plpf. subj.** *if were/had..., would/would have*

This can be a conditional (if-then clause) or potential subj. main verb describing something contrary to reality (e.g. viciissem, I would have won!). The subjunctive in the past indicates an action that did not happen.

sī resēdisset (page 10); sī (esset) longior...mora,...negārētur (14); sī quiēsceret (22); opertī (essēmus) aliōquī atque...oblīstī essēmus (32); Possem glōriārī...nisi...crēdidissem (32); sī Domitiānus...vixisset (48); Equidem...dēsīderārem (63); sī fāta...fuisset, impulerat...stāret...manērēs (82); Sī...peterēs...et...manēret... peterēt (98); sī...suscepta fuisset (et) sī...lūderet... vidērer (102); sī paterent, colerem...manērent...posuissem (104); manūs... dedisset (126); foret (130); nec...vidērēs... stārem...traherem (134)

2. Indirect Question¹⁴ **interrogatives + subj.** **no special translation**

paulum an retrō flecteret (page 9); intrā tēcta subsistant an in apertō vagentur (14); ecquid iam mare admitteret (16); quōs... metūs...pertulerim (20); cōstantiam vocāre an imprudentiam dēbeam (22); esse... putēs an (36); seu quis...seu quis...vellet (40); (ut) ēruditiōnem tuam intendās (50); an...possit (54); ex quō nomō sit (60); quid vīribus (et) quid corpusculō apparārēs (62); ecquid...trāsmittērēs (63); quidve dolēns...impulerit (68)

3. Purpose Clause¹³ **ut/quō/nē + pres./impf. subj.** *so that she may/might see*

quō possīs (page 2); utque...lēnīret (10); nē...obterāmur (29); ut paulum exspectāret (44); nē...dēmīttās (50); ut dubitāre dēsinerem (50); nē...perveniat (52); nē...ēveniat (53); ut...possim (59); nē quid...morārētur (59); ut... mittam (60); ut oculis meis crēderem (62); Tyriās...quae verteret arcēs (70)

4. Relative of Characteristic¹⁰ **relative + subj.** *which Pliny would/might see*

For a fuller description, see the information box on page 31.

cuius...expresserit (page 4); quod scriberem (7); erant (illī) quī...precārentur (30); dēfuerunt illī quī...augērent (30); quam diū...cōnsiderēs (50); cui...faciās (50); dē eō quem...diligās (63); quī...laeserit...intorsit (86); quibus...esset (89); quī...referrent (102)

5. Indirect Command⁸ **verb of commanding + ut/nē + subj.** *she asked that Pliny see*

The main verb can be a strong command (e.g. imperō, ‘I order that’) but is very often a weak command (e.g. rogō, ‘I ask that’).

ut scribam (page 2); ut ita faceret (9); (ut) tribuās (11); quōquō modo fugerem (28); ut...iubeant (44); (ut) dēs (56); ut timōrī meō...cōsulās (63); occiderit (135)

6. Result Clause⁸ **tam, tantus, sic, ita + ut/ut nōn + subj.** **no special translation**

Adverbs such as **tam/ita/sic**, “so,” or adjective **tantus**, “so much/many/great” are often found in the main clause preceding a result clause.

ut...dictāret enōtāretque (8); ut...negārētur (14); ut...omnia...crēderentur (20); ut...nostrae cōsulērēmus (26); ut esse crēdam (36); ut...habeant (52); ut...obligārē (59); ut (mē) torqueat (64)

How to identifyspecial translation?**7. Subordinate Verb in Ind. Disc. ⁸ subj. in ind. disc.****no special translation**

Subordinate clauses (e.g. relative clauses, conditions) in indirect discourse are automatically made subjunctive.

sī celebrētur (page 2); sī vellem (6); sē...moritūram (esse), sī...nōn fuisset (page 28); quod mē morētur (28); quoniam esset Aegyptius (59); quod teneās...(et) collocēs (64); sī quā...sinant (70); cui...dignētur (96)

8. Cum Clause ⁴**cum + subj.****when + no special translation**

Translate cum as circumstantial (when/after), causal (since/because) or concessive (although) with subjunctive.

cum crēsceret (page 10); cum mihi cōsulendī causa fuerit (50); Cum...impetrāverīs (60); cum excēderet (122)

9. Concessive Clause ⁴**quamvīs/licet + subj.****although + no special translation**

Both quamvīs and licet can be translated as ‘although’ in this construction.

quamvīs occiderit (page 2); quamvīs condiderit (2); Licet...disputēs (50); Licet hoc... dēlectet (64)

10. Indirect Exclamatory ³**ut + subj.****how + no special translation**

Ind. exclamatory behaves just as an ind. question and employs subj. to indicate that it is not a real exclamation.

ut rēgius ostrō vēlet honōs lēvēs umerōs (page 121); ut fībula crīnem...aurō internecta (121); ut gerat (121)

11. Anticipatory Subjunctive ²**dum + subj.****until + no special translation**

Dum can govern indicative or subjunctive. It governs a subjunctive to denote an anticipated future action.

dum conderet...inferretque (page 68); An...dum...dēstruat...dūcat (101)

12. Past General Condition or Past General Relative Clause ²**if (ever), who (ever) + no special translation**

Also known as iterative subjunctive, this subjunctive expresses a repeated or customary action in the past.

quō proprius accēderent (page 9); sī attenderēs ācrius (39)

13. Future Less Vivid condition ¹ sī pres. subj., pres. subj.**if she should..., she would...**

This ‘should-would’ condition expresses less certainty about the future than future more vivid (sī fut., fut.)

sī...stet (page 110)

Independent Subjunctives

Most of the independent subjunctives occur in lessons 60-67 (pp. 120-135), and so readers should revisit this section later and not worry about it through much of the commentary.

16. Jussive ⁶**pres. subj. main verb (neg. nē)****let...X, you should X**

A jussive (*iubeō*, ‘order’) is a command often in the 2nd or 3rd person. Translate with ‘let’ or ‘should.’

det (page 131); nē...iubeās (135); Sit (135); Sint (135); Sit (135); sinās (135)

17. Potential subjunctive ²**impf./ plpf. subj.****she would have Xed (but did not)**

Potential subjunctives use the modal verbs “would” or “might,” and the tense is important. A present or perfect subj. expresses possibility in the future (videam, ‘I would see’ in the future), imperfect expresses present potential (vidērem, ‘I would see’ at present), and plpf. expresses past potential (vīdissem, ‘I would have seen’ but I did not).

We call impf. and plpf. potential subjunctive (a) (unreal) potential or (b) contrary to fact when it expresses potential that is contrary to what actually happened. Many of the subjunctives labeled in this commentary as contrary to fact are just potential subjunctives where the potential was not realized (hence ‘unreal’).

Audīrēs (page 30); velim scīre (page 36); Illa vel...volāret...nec...laessisset (120); el (illa)... ferret iter...nec tingeret (120); Vellem (ut) haud correpta fuisset (130)

18. Deliberative subjunctive ² interrogative + main verb**What are we to X? What should she X?**

A subjunctive in a direct question can express doubt or, more often, invite deliberation in a conversation.

Deflectāmus (page 29); Tūne...eripiār(is) (140)

Rhetorical Devices

Below is a list of the rhetorical devices, otherwise known as “rhetorical figures” or “stylistic devices,” readers will discover in the text and commentary. As you encounter these devices in the readings, consider how each one enhances the poetry and what would be lost if the device were removed.

allegory: an extended metaphor, prolonged use of an image to express meaning

alliteration: repetition of consonant sounds at the beginning of a series of words

Peter Piper picked a peck of pickled peppers.
vastōs volvunt ad litora flūctūs (I.86)

anaphora: repetition of a word or words at the beginning of successive clauses

We shall go on to the end. We shall fight in France, we shall fight on the seas.... (Winston Churchill)
Mīrātur mōlem Aenēās...mīrātur portās (I.421)

anastrophe: inversion of usual word order (i.e. prepositions and objects)

Up the hill went Jack and Jill.
maria omnia circum. “around all seas” (I.32)

aposiopesis: breaking off in the middle of a sentence

I am so angry. Oh, you can go to...
Quos ego ---! Sed motos praestat componere fluctus. (*Aeneid* I.135)

apostrophe: sudden turn to address a person or object who is present or absent

Twinkle, twinkle, little star. How I wonder what you are.
O patria, O divum domus Ilium! (*Aeneid* 2.241)

asyndeton: omission of conjunctions

But in a larger sense, we cannot dedicate, we cannot consecrate, we cannot hallow this ground...(Lincoln)
saevus ubi Aeacidae tēlō iacet Hector, (et) ubi ingēns Sarpedon, (et) ubi tot Simoīs... (I.99-101)

chiasmus: an “a-b-b-a” arrangement of words, often used with pairs of nouns and adjectives

Ask not what your country can do for you, ask what you can do for your country
Nāvem in cōnspectū nūllam, trēs lītore cervōs (noun, adj., adj. noun) I.184)

ecphrasis: extended description of a work of art or scene of nature

ellipsis: omission of words easily understood in context

She is enrolled in Latin; he, in Spanish.
Haec sēcum (dixit)... “(she said) these things with herself” (I.37)

enjambment: continuation of a clause beyond the end of one line and into the beginning of the next

litora, multum ille et terris iactatus et alto
vi superum, (I.3-4)

golden line: synchysis (interlocking word order) with a verb in the middle

Tantane vos generis tenuit fiducia vestri? (I.132)

hendiadys: expressing a single idea with two nouns joined by a conjunction

It sure is nice and cool today! (for “nicely cool”)
Molemque et montes (for “mass of mountains”) (*Aeneid* I.61)

hyperbaton: distortion of normal word order (e.g. separation of words meant to be together)

This I must see!
Omnem miscet agēns tēlīs nemora inter frondea turbam (I.190-1)

hyperbole: exaggeration

I must have translated a million lines today.
clamores simul horrendos ad sidera tollit “he raised horrible shouts to the stars” (2.222)

hysteron proteron: reversal of the natural order of events

Put your shoes and socks on!

summersāsque obrue puppēs “rush over the sunken ships” (I.69)

interlocking word order (synchysis): ABAB order often used with pairs of nouns and adjectives

saevae memorem Iunonis ob iram (Adj.₁ – Adj.₂ – Noun₁ – Noun₂) (I.4)

litotes: use of a negative (often, a double negative) to express something positive

She is not a bad singer. (i.e. She’s a good singer.)

Neque enim ignari sumus., “We are not ignorant of evils...” (1.198)

metaphor: expression of meaning through another image

Don’t count your chickens before they’re hatched!

spumas salis aere ruebant “they turned over the foam of the sea with bronze” (i.e. ships are plows, I.35)

metonymy: the use of one noun or image to suggest another

The pen is mightier than the sword. (the pen suggests discourse; the sword suggests violence.)

Arma virumque cano. (arma suggests war) (I.1)

onomatopoeia: use of words that sound like their meaning

click, clack.

magno cum murmure montis (I.55)

personification: attribution of human characteristics to something not human

Mother nature cares for us all.

Fāma...ingrediturque solo et caput inter nubila condit (4.173-94)

pleonasm: the use of superfluous words to enrich the thought

I saw the UFO with my own eyes. (as opposed to someone else’s eyes?)

Āmēns animi “mindless in his mind” (4.203)

polysyndeton: use of more conjunctions (Gr. *syndeton*) than are needed

He ran and laughed and jumped for joy.

Eurusque Notusque ruunt creberque procellis Africus (I.85-6)

simile: explicit comparison using words “like” or “as” (*sicut, similis, velut, quālis, quam*)

Just as the sands in the hourglass, so are the days of our lives.

Quālis apēs...exercet labor... “just as work busies the bees” (I.430-6)

synecdoche: the use of the part to express the whole, a type of metonymy

I drove a new set of wheels off the lot today. (wheels = car)

summersāsque obrue puppēs “rush over the sunken ships” (decks suggest ships, I.69)

synchysis (interlocking word order): ABAB order often used with pairs of nouns and adjectives

saevae memorem Iunonis ob iram (Adj.₁ – Adj.₂ – Noun₁ – Noun₂) (I.4)

tmesis: the separation of a compound word into two parts

I didn’t want that comic book any-old-how.

Bis collo squamea circum terga dati. (=circumdati) (2.218-19)

transferred epithet (enallage): the transfer of an adjective from its proper object to a related object

saevae memorem Iunonis ob iram (*Juno, not the anger, is mindful*) (I.4)

Alphabetized Core Vocabulary (4 or more times)

The alphabetized list includes all 333 words in the Pliny and Vergil selections that occur four or more times. The number at the end of each entry indicates how many times the word occurs in the commentary. These same dictionary entries are found in an running core list in the introduction.

- ā, ab, abs:** from, away from, by (*abl.*), 21
abeō, -īre, -iī, itum: go away, 4
ac: and, 5
accendō, -ere, -ī, ēnsum: kindle, enflame, enrage, 4
accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: receive, 6
ad: to, toward, at, near, about (*acc.*), 24
adeō, -īre, iī, itum: go to, approach, 4
adhūc: still, yet, so far, 8
adversus, -a, -um: facing, opposing, unfavorable; against + *acc.*, 5
Aenēās, -ae, acc. ān m.: Aeneas, 10
aequor, -oris n.: sea, the level (sea), 4
agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum: drive, lead, do; give, 10
alius, -a, -ud : other, another, else, 22
altus, -a, -um: high, tall; deep; the sea (the deep), 18
amīcus, -ī: friend, 4
amor, -ōris m.: love, 10
an: or (in questions), 6
animus, -ī m.: mind; spirit, courage; anger, 10
annus, -ī m.: year, 8
ante: before, in front of (*acc.*), 6
aperiō, -īre, -uī, apertum: open, 4
aqua, -ae f.: water, 6
ārdeō, -ēre, arsi, arsum: burn, be eager, 7
arma, -ōrum n.: arms; weapons; tools, 10
arvum, -ī n.: field, arable/cultivated field, 5
arx, arcis f.: citadel, (fortified) hilltop, 6
at, ast: but; at least, 4
āter, ātra, ātrum: dark, black, 5
atque: and, 16
audiō, -īre, -ivī, -itum: hear, listen to, 11
auris, -is f.: ear, 4
aut: or; **aut...aut:** either...or, 29
avunculus, -ī m.: uncle, 8
bellum, -ī n.: war, 9
C.: G(aius), 9
caelum, -ī n.: sky, 6
Camilla, -ae f.: Camilla, 4
capillus, -ī m.: hair, 6
capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum: take, seize, catch, 5
caput, -itis n.: head, 9
cārus, -a, -um: dear, 5
cāsus, -ūs m.: misfortune; chance, 6
caterva, -ae f.: group, retinue, band, troop, 5
causa, -ae f.: reason, cause; for the sake of (*gen.*), 9
certus, -a, -um: sure, reliable, 5
cinis, cineris m.: ashes, 6
circum: around, about (*acc.*), 5
cīvitās, -ātis f.: city-state; citizenship, 7
coepī, coepisse, coeptum: begin, 4
comes, -itis m/f: comrade, companion, 4
condō, -ere, condidī, -ditum: found; hide, 7
coniūnx, -iugis m./f.: spouse, husband, wife, 7
contrā: opposite, facing (*acc.*), 4
corpus, -oris n.: body, 14
corripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptum: snatch (up), 5
crēdō, -ere, -didī: believe, trust (*dat.*), 13
cum: with; when, since, although, 23
cūra, -ae f.: care, concern, anxiety, worry, 5
cursus, -ūs m.: course, running; haste, 6
Danaus, -a, -um: Danaan, Greek, 4
dē: (down) from, about, concerning, 16
dea, -ae f.: goddess, 5
dēbeō, -ēre, dēbuī: ought, owe, 5
dēserō, -ere, -ruī, -rtum: desert, abandon, 6
deus, -ī m.: god, 12
dexter, -tra, -trum: right (hand), 6
dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum: say, speak, tell, 8
Dīdō, -ōnis f.: Dido, 8
diēs, diē m./f.: day(light), 14
dignus, -a, -um: worthy, worthy of (*abl.*), 5
dīvus, -a, -um (dīus): divine; god(dess); sky, 9
dō, dare, dedī, datum: give; grant, 18
dominus, -ī m.: master, sir, 5
domus, -ūs f.: house(hold), home, 14
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum: lead, draw, 7
dulcis, -e: sweet, pleasant, 4
dum: while, as long as, until, 6
ē, ex: out of, from (*abl.*), 21
effundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum: pour/spread out, 4
ego, meī, mihi, mē, mē: I, 62
ēgredior, -ī, -gressus sum: go out, disembark, 4
enim: for, indeed, 16
eō, īre, iī, itum: go, come, 7
epistula, -ae f.: letter, 5
equidem: indeed, I for my part, 6

- ēripiō, -ere, -uī:** rescue, snatch from, 4
et: and; also, even, too, 186
etiam: also, even, 20
excitō (1): wake up, rouse up, raise, 4
extrēmus, -a, -um: farthest, outermost, 4
faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum: do, make, 9
fāma, -ae f.: fame, rumor, reputation, 4
fātum, -ī n.: fate, 11
fēmīna, -ae f.: woman, 4
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum: carry, bring; endure, 10
ferrum, -ī n.: iron; sword, 5
figūra, -ae f.: figure, shape, form, 5
figō, -ere, finxī, fictum: make up, imagine, 6
flamma, -ae f.: flame, 6
flūctus, -ūs m.: wave, 5
fortis, -e: strong, brave, 7
fuga, -ae f.: flight; haste, 6
fugiō, -ere, fūgī: flee, escape, 9
gemitus, -ūs m.: groan, sob, lament, 4
gēns, gentis f.: people, clan, 6
genus, -eris n.: birth, lineage; people, kind, 4
gerō, -ere, gessi, gestum: carry on, wear, wage, 6
gravis, -e: heavy, serious, severe, 5
habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum: have, hold; consider, 5
hasta, -ae f.: spear, 5
hīc: here, in this place, 4
hic, haec, hoc: this, these, 54
hinc: hence, from this place, 4
horreō, -ēre, -uī: shudder, stand on end, bristle, 4
iaceō, -ēre, iacuī: lie (down), 4
iam: now, already, 34
ibi: there, in that place, 5
īdem, eadem, idem: same, 10
ignis, -is m.: fire; lightning, 8
ille, illa, illud: that, those, 54
imāgō, -inis f.: image, ghost, 5
Imperātor, -ōris m.: Emperor; commander, 4
imperium, -ī n.: power, command, 5
implicō, -āre, -uī, -itum: enfold, entwine, 4
in: in, on, among (*abl.*); into, against (*acc.*), 68
incertus, -a, -um: uncertain, unsure, unreliable, 5
incipiō, -ere, incēpī, inceptum: begin, take on, 4
īnfāns, -ntis m./f.: infant, 4
īnfelix, -īcis: unlucky, unfortunate, 4
ingēns, -entis: huge, immense, 10
inquam, inquis, inquit: say, 4
intendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum: stretch out, aim, 4
inter: between, among (*acc.*), 9
ipse, -a, -um: himself, herself, itself; very, 23
īra, -ae f.: anger, rage; passion, 6
is, ea, id: he, she, it, they; this, that, these, those, 31
ita: so, thus, 6
Ītalia, -ae f.: Italy, 5
iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum: order, 11
Iūnō, Iūnōnis f.: Juno, 4
Iuppiter, Iovis m.: Jupiter, 4
lacrima, -ae f.: tear, 4
Lāocoōn m. Grk. acc. -onta: Laocoon, 4
Latium, -ī n.: Latium, 6
lātus, -a, -um: wide, 5
legō, -ere, lēgī, lectum: read; pick out, 7
lēx, lēgis f.: law, decree, 4
liber, -brī m.: book; bark, 4
libertus, -ī m.: freedman, 4
līmen, -inis n.: threshold, doorway, 4
lītus, -oris n.: shore, coast, beach, 8
locus, -ī m. (pl. locī, loca): place, 9
longus, -a, -um: long, distant; far, 13
lūmen, -inis n.: light, lamp; *pl.* eyes, 9
magis: more, rather, 10
magnus, -a, -um: great, large, 17
malus, -a, -um: bad, wicked, 6
maneō, -ēre, mānsī: stay, remain, 5
manus, -ūs f.: hand, 14
mare, -is n.: sea, 8
māter, mātris f.: mother, 8
maximē: very greatly, especially, 4
medius, -a, -um: middle of, middle, 15
mēns, mentis f.: mind; intent, purpose, 4
metus, -ūs m.: dread, fear, 10
meus, -a, -um: my (own), mine, 27
minor, minus: smaller, less, 5
Mīsēnum, -ī: Misenum, 6
miser, -era, -rum: miserable, wretched, 6
mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum: send, 4
moenia, -ium n.: walls; city-walls, 7
mōns, montis m.: mountain, 6
moror, -ārī, -ātus sum: delay, linger, 5
mors, -rtis f.: death, 7
moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum: move, motivate, 5
mox: soon, 6
multus, -a, -um: much, many, 16
mūrus, ī m.: wall, 5
mūtō (1): change, mutate, 4
nam: for; indeed, truly, 11
narrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum: narrate, 4
nāvis, -is f.: ship, 4
nē: lest, that not, 15

- nec**: nor, and not; **nec...nec**, neither...nor, 20
nemus, -oris n.: wood, forest, grove, 4
neque: nor, and not; **nec...nec**, neither...nor, 4
nihil: nothing, 7
nisi: if not, unless, 4
nōmen, -inis n.: name, 5
nōn: not, 37
nōs, nōbīs, nōs, nōbis: we, 8
nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtum: learn; *pf.* know, 5
noster, -ra, -rum: our (own), ours, 7
novus, -a, -um: new, recent; **novissimum**, last, 6
nox, noctis f.: night, 14
nūbēs, -is f.: cloud, 9
nunc: now, 16
Ō: O! oh! ah!, 6
oculus, ī m.: eye, 14
omnis, -e: all, every, whole, 24
opus, -eris n.: work; **opus est**, there is a need, 13
ōra, -ae f.: shore, coast, border, 4
ōrō (1): plead, beg; pray for, 6
ōs, ōris n.: mouth; face, 10
parēns, -entis m/f: parent, 4
pars, -tis f.: part, side, direction; floor, 7
pater, -tris m.: father; ancestor, 6
patior, -ī, passus sum: suffer, endure; allow, 7
paulus, -a, -um: little, small; *adv.* -um, 4
pectus, -oris n.: chest, breast; heart, 4
pendeō, -ēre, pependī: hang, hang down, 4
per: through, over, 36
peregrīnus, -ī m.: foreigner, non-citizen, 4
perīculum, -ī n.: danger, risk, 10
pēs, pedis m.: foot, 5
petō, -ere, -īvī: seek, ask, head for, 11
Plīnius, -ī m.: Plinius, Pliny, 10
populus, -ī m.: people, 4
poscō, -ere, poposcī: ask, request, demand, 4
possum, posse, potuī: be able, can, 16
post: after, behind (*acc.*), 4
premō, -ere, pressī, -sum: press, repress/hide, 4
prīmus, -a, -um: first; leading, as leader, 20
prō: before; for, in behalf of (*abl.*), 8
proximus, -a, -um: nearest, very close, 4
puer, -ī m.: boy, child, 4
pugna, -ae f.: fight, 4
pulcher, -chra, -chrum: beautiful, 5
putō (1): think, 4
quālis, -e: which sort, just as, 7
quamquam: although, 7
quasi: as if, 8
-que: and, 185
quī, quae, quod (quis?quid?): who, which, what, that, 138
quia: because, 6
quidem: indeed, certainly, 16
quiēscō, -ere, -ēvī, -ētum: rest, 5
quoque: also, 6
referō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum: report; say, 8
rēgīna, -ae f.: queen, 4
rēgnum, -ī n.: kingdom, kingship, rule, 7
regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum: rule, lead, 4
relinquō, -ere, -liquī, -lictum: leave, abandon, 7
residō, -ere, -sēdī: sit back, settle, 5
respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -nsum: answer, 4
retrō: back, backward, 1
rēx, rēgis m.: king, 5
rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum: ask, question, 5
Rōmānus, -a, -um: Roman, 9
rūrsus: again, 10
sacer, -cra, -crum: sacred, holy; sacrifice, rite, 4
saevus, -a, -um: savage, fierce, 6
salutō, s. (1): greet, 5
sanguis, -inis m.: blood, 7
sciō, -ire, -īvī, -ītum: know (how), 5
scribō, -ere, scripsī, scriptum: write, 13
sē, suī, sibi (sēsē): him-, her-, it-, themselves, 22
sed: but, 19
sēdēs, -is f.: seat, home, settlement, foundation, 5
sequor, -ī, secūtus sum: follow, pursue, 8
sermō, -mōnis m.: conversation, talk, 4
sī: if, 26
sīc: thus, so, in this way, 6
sīdus, -eris n.: star, constellation, 10
similis, -e: like, similar, (*dat., gen.*), 6
sōlus, -a, -um: alone, only, sole, lonely, 10
solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum: loosen; set sail, break up, 4
somnus, -ī m.: sleep, 5
sors, sortis f.: lot, luck, 4
spīritus, -ūs m.: breath, exhalation, spirit, 4
statim: immediately, 4
sternō, -ere, strāvī, strātum: lay (low), 4
stō, -āre, steti, statum: stand, stop, 8
strīdēns, -ntis: whirring, hissing, screeching, 4
sub: under, 12
sum, esse, fuī, futūrum: be, 96
summus, -a, -um: top of, highest, 8
super: above, over, on top; upon (*acc.*), 5
surgō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum: rise, surge, 5
suspendō, -ere, -pendī, -pensum: hang up, 5

- suus, -a, -um:** his, her, its, their own, 17
tālis, -e: such, 9
tamen: however, nevertheless, 15
tandem: finally, at length, pray, 4
tantus, -a, -um: so great, so much, 16
tēctum, -ī n.: roof, shelter; house, 9
tellūs, -ūris f.: land, earth (~terra), 4
tēlum, -ī n.: spear, arrow, projectile, 8
tendō, -ere, -dī, tentum: stretch; extend, strive, 6
teneō, -ēre, -uī, -tum: hold, 10
tergum, -ī n.: back (of body), rear; hide, 4
terra, -ae f.: land, ground, earth, 19
Teucus, -a, -um: Teucrian, Trojan, 8
tīmor, -ōris m.: fear, dread, 6
tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum: raise; destroy, 9
torqueō, -ēre, torsi, tortum: twist; torture, 4
tot: so many, 6
tōtus, -a, -um: total, entire, whole, 6
Traiānus, -ī m.: Trajan, 5
tremor, -ōris m.: tremor, shaking, 4
Troia, ae f.: Troy, 7
Troiānus, -a, -um: Trojan, 5
tū, tuī, tibi, tē, tē: you, 47
tum, tunc: then, at that time, 16
Turnus, -ī m.: Turnus, 5
tuus, -a, -um: your(s), your own, 26
ubi: where, when, 10
ūllus, -a, -um: any, any one, 5
umbra, -ae f.: shade, shadow; ghost, 5
umerus, -ī m.: shoulder, 6
unda, -ae f.: wave, 6
ūnus, -a, -um: one, alone; **ūnā,** together, 8
urbs, urbis f.: city, 15
ut: that, so that; how; as (+ indic.), 38
uterque, utraque, utrumque: each (of two), 4
valeō, -ēre, -uī: fare well, be strong, 6
vel, -ve: or, and even; **vel...vel,** either...or, 12
veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum: come, go, 14
vērō: in truth, actually, in fact, 5
vertex, -icis m.: head, peak, top, 4
vertō, -ere, vertī, versum: turn; change, 6
vērus, -a, -um: true, real, 10
vestigium, -ī n.: footprint, tracks, 4
videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum: see, 23
vīncō, -ere, vīcī, victum: conquer, 6
vinculum, -ī n.: chain, 5
vir, -ī m.: man, husband, 12
virgō, virginis f.: maiden, unmarried woman, 6
vīs, vīs f.: force, power; *pl.* **vīrēs,** strength, 5
vocō (1): call, 6
volō, velle, volū: want, wish, be willing, 7
volvō, -ere, -ī, volūtum: revolve, roll, churn, 4
vōx, vocis f.: voice, word, 9
vulnus (volnus), -eris n.: wound, 4